

A B D R U S C H I N

RESONANCES  
TO THE  
GRAIL MESSAGE

1







ABDRUSCHIN / RESONANCES I



NACHKLÄNGE ZUR GRALSBOTCHAFT  
ENGLISH EDITION

# RESONANCES

TO

THE GRAIL MESSAGE

BY

ABDRUSCHIN

BAND I



*Printed in U.S.A. in 2016.*

*The wisdom  
of God reigns over the world!  
Struggle, mankind,  
to divine His greatness  
in this recognition!*



## The Holy Word.

**H**oly is the Word! So holy that I would like to withdraw It once more from mankind on earth, because they have no conception, not even the faintest idea of Its magnitude! I feel urged to protect the Word, to veil It, so that It would never come into contact with the wanton conceit and indifference of these human souls, who in their spiritual indolence have become so incredibly narrow-minded and therefore devoid of knowledge.

What do they still know about holiness! Of the holiness of God and also of His Word! It is pitiful! One could despair and lose heart at *this* realization. I feel urged to choose from all mankind only a few to whom I would continue to proclaim the Word, ten or twenty only. Yet, even these few would not arrive at a concept of true Holiness, nor therefore the right attitude towards the greatness and value of my Word!

To give this Holy Word to mankind is the *hardest* thing for me to fulfill.

What that means and what is contained in these Words is something you are not capable of comprehending! Thus I stand before you in the awareness, that even the best among you here *on earth* will never really understand me; will not grasp a tenth part of what comes to them with my Word. You hear It, you hold It in your hands, but you do not make use of Its value for yourselves! I see how Its high values, Its immense powers remain unheeded, while instead you reach out for things that are no more than the most insignificant speck of dust, in comparison with the Word that you have.

I stand before you with this knowledge. Every time it is with a reluctant spirit that I permit you access to the High Grail

Festivals, whose meaning, whose seriousness and purest power you will never come to understand *anyhow*. So many do not even make a genuine effort to at least *think* of the meaning in the right way! Furthermore, the acts of sealing and Holy Meal! The sealing! Trembling, you would throw yourselves into the dust if you could recognize and consciously see even the smallest part of the infinite life activity in these acts!

Although many a human soul will be gripped by an unfamiliar, blissful sense of the Power of the Light from the proximity of God, all this is quickly obliterated by the intrusion of trivial everyday worries, everyday joys and pleasures.

It is only when a human soul enters the Ethereal Realm, that it does *then* gradually come to a new understanding of all that it was permitted personally to experience, here on earth.

Although this too, is but a shadow of the mightiness of the real happening, it is nevertheless enough to shake every human soul to its very depths! So great is the Grace of God that is revealed to it in these happenings, that it can hardly believe that it has been *permitted* to experience all this. Filled with this, it would like to shake and jolt the human beings on earth, to make them break through their superficiality and exert themselves here and now to perceive these blessings more fully than in the past.

But a quite useless effort! It is through his own doing that man on earth has become far too obtuse. He has rendered himself incapable of it, through the most zealous efforts on his wrong paths. Therefore, every soul that has awakened in the Ethereal Realm will turn away with bleeding heart, realizing with deep remorse, that while here on earth it was no different itself, and that it can hardly expect anything better from those who are still on earth.

Thus when I think that I must now allow this Holy Message to be spread abroad by my disciples, everything in me opposes it; for I know that not a single one among mankind will ever really know *what* he receives with It, or what an immeasurably high Grace of God lies in being *permitted* to hear It! In face of

this ignorance, indifference and pretended knowledge of such men, I am to allow something to be offered that comes in purity from the steps of God's Throne! It is an inner struggle which requires a great effort! Every hour anew!

However there is one consolation for me! In every case of scorn, of derision, in every dismissive comment or sign of indolent indifference by men there is this satisfaction: my knowledge that in his thoughts and deeds each one of them *judges* himself in the Word, the greatness of which he will not see and will carelessly pass by. It is consolation to me to know that with every word man speaks about my Message he pronounces his *own judgment*, bringing him destruction or life!

*This* knowledge allows me to endure everything, overcome everything! Not one soul can escape. As this Sword of Judgment, now I hurl the Word at you in fulfillment of the Final Judgment! This lifts the sorrow from me! No matter how much people strain against it they only injure themselves. They can scoff at it, mock it or shake their heads... everything will strike only them in very quick reciprocal action!

Years have passed since I first became horrified as I observed the human spirits, and began to realize from this, the fate awaiting them in accordance with the Primordial Law of Creation.

I was appalled, because I saw that it would be impossible to help men other than by showing them *the way* that they must travel in order to escape destruction.

This made me inexpressibly sad, for with men as they are today, there can be but *one* end: the certainty that the greater part of the entire humanity must inevitably be lost, as long as they remain free to make all their own decisions!

In accordance with the Law in Creation, however, the human spirit can never be deprived of the *free will to make decisions*! It is an intrinsic part of the spirit! And *through this*, that is, through themselves, the great mass of mankind will now fall during the present Judgment!

Every single decision made by mankind determines the roads

he must journey along in Creation, as also here on earth. The little things connected with his profession and the needs of everyday life are only of minor importance, and often still the conclusion of voluntary decisions made a long time ago. Yet only the *decision* is free for a human spirit! With the decision, the automatic lever that permits the Laws of God in Creation to work according to the nature of the decision, is set in motion! *Such* is the free will that the human spirit possess! It lies solely in the absolute freedom of decision. The spiritual decision, however, immediately releases and sets in motion a hitherto mysterious automatic activity in Creation, which, without the human spirit's knowledge, continues to develop the kind of volition contained in the decision, bringing it to maturity and so to redemption, which will one day suddenly appear in accordance with the strength of the original decision and the degree to which it has been increased and strengthened by other decisions of a like nature on its way through Creation.

Every man must then patiently bear the final effects of every one of his decisions. He cannot and must not feel this to be unjust; for in the final manifestation, it is always only what lay in his decision. It makes no difference if this decision was intended for someone else; the final effect will strike *only* its *originator*. Very often, when the final effect strikes, the original decision has long since been forgotten by the author, whose present volition and decisions may then be entirely different from or even contrary to what they formerly were; but the consequences of his earlier decision are quietly running their lawful automatic course to the end, even without his knowledge.

Man always stands amid the consequences of *all* his decisions, many of which he no longer knows or thinks of, and he then often regards it as unjust when this or that final effect strikes him unexpectedly. However he may rest assured that nothing will strike him which he has not, at some former time, caused to come into existence, or which he has not literally once brought to life through one of his decisions, that is,

“placed” into Creation to take effect under the laws, be it through his thoughts, words, or actions! *He* has moved the lever for it. For all this, *his* original volition is required, and every volition brings a decision!

Men continually lament about injustice and ask where is the much-vaunted free will of man, because they do not recognize the Laws of Creation! Scholars write and speak about it, while in reality it is quite simple! After all, a free will can only rest in the capacity to make free decisions, and in nothing else. And this is, and always will be, maintained for the path of the human spirit in Creation. In this connection, man always forgets or overlooks just one important fact: that despite all this, he is and remains only a creature, a fruit of this Subsequent Creation, which has come into being out of its eternal and unchangeable laws, and he can therefore never circumvent or disregard these laws! They will take effect, whether he wishes it or not, whether it suits him or not. He is *nothing* therein; like a child wandering off alone he can *choose* any road at will, but remains subject to that *particular* path, no matter whether it is smooth or rough, or whether it leads to a beautiful goal or to an abyss.

With every new decision, man produces a new path and with it, a new thread in his carpet of fate. But the old still unresolved paths continue to stretch *ahead* of the newer ones, until they have been completely passed through. These are not yet cut off when a new one is formed, but must be lived through and travelled to the end. Thus, old and new roads sometimes cross each other, thereby producing new turning points.

All this, man has to work out in the experiences of his life, and then he often wonders how this or that can happen to him; for he is no longer conscious of his former decisions, whereas he remains subject to their consequences until these have been lived through and thereby “lived off”! They cannot be removed, except by the originator himself. He cannot turn away from them, because they remain firmly bound to him until they are completely settled.

Thus, all the consequences of every single decision must be carried through and settled to the end, before they fall away from their originator and cease to exist. If the threads of new good decisions intersect with the still existing tracks of old evil decisions, then the effects of these old bad consequences will be correspondingly weakened, through being crossed by what is new and good. They may even be completely dissolved if these new and good decisions are very strong, so that their evil consequences in the World of Gross Matter need only be redeemed symbolically. This too is perfectly lawful, and in accordance with the Will of God in Creation.

All this is living activity in Creation, without man's ever being able to alter any of it; for it is an activity around and above him. Thus man stands in and under the Law of Creation.

In my Message, you will find the way that leads you safely through the maze formed by the consequences of your decisions, to the Luminous Heights!

However, one serious obstacle lies in your path! It is this obstacle that horrified me; because you must do all this *yourselves*, each one for himself alone.

This condition lies in the inherent lawfulness of your free will to make decisions, and in the ensuing automatic activity that takes place in Creation and within you!

The volition within the decision forms a path, which leads either upwards or downwards, according to the nature of the volition. However, at the present time men's volition is leading you for the most part *only* downwards, and this downward trend, which you are quite unable to perceive, simultaneously narrows and lessens the power of your ability to understand. Therefore the range of your comprehension, thus of your horizon, is diminished, and for that reason you always imagine that you are nevertheless still on the same high level as before; because for *you* this limit really is the *actual* highest level! You are unable to conceive of a wider boundary, nor to understand what lies beyond your own, and therefore you reject it all with skepticism, and are quick to call it false or even non-existent.

This is also why you do not readily cast aside your faults! You see them in others, but not in yourselves. No matter how plainly I try to make you understand this, you do not apply it to yourselves. You believe everything I say, as long as it concerns others, but the faults I find in *you*, which often drive me to despair, you cannot grasp, because all the walls around your dear “ego” have become too narrow! This is the point at which so much fails, and where I cannot help you; for *you yourselves* have to burst these walls from within with absolute faith in the mission which I must fulfill.

But that is not as easy as you think. Often you stand before me with troubled faces, and with love in your hearts for the great task. On that account, you feel sorry for all those, who either refuse to or who are unable to recognize their faults, and I know that many of these faults, which you criticize so severely in others, and over whose actions you despair, are anchored to a far greater degree *in you*. That is the worst thing of all! That, too, is anchored in the freedom of decision, and is something that must be left to you, because it is anchored in the spiritual. Although I can condemn you or approve of you, can lift you up or strike you down through the power of the Light, depending on your honest volition, I can never *force* anyone to take the path that leads to the Luminous Heights! That lies solely in the hands of each individual.

Therefore I admonish you, and show you once more what actually happens: With every step downwards, your ability to comprehend becomes ever more limited, without you yourselves becoming conscious of it! Therefore, you would never believe me when I tell you this, because you cannot grasp it, and so I cannot help you there, unless a new, great and voluntary decision arises out of an intense longing or through faith.

Only *there* can I mediate power for the victory! The victory over yourselves, by which the walls and the narrow confines will quickly be broken through by the awakening spirit who wishes to swing itself upward towards the Heights. I show you

the way and, if you have the right volition, give you the necessary power for it. *Thus* I can help wherever there is a genuine volition and genuine request for it.

But another obstacle then bars man's path. It is the fact that this power can *only* benefit him if he not merely absorbs it, but *uses* it aright! He *himself* must use it in the right way and not let it rest within him; otherwise it will strive away from him to return to its source. Thus, obstacle after obstacle arises, if a man does not exercise an honest volition with all his strength! Only a very few people can overcome these obstacles. Humanity has already grown too spiritually indolent, whereas ascent is only possible through continuous movement and alertness!

This happening is *natural*, simple and great. A wonderful, perfect justice lies anchored in it which now releases the Judgment.

It is impossible for a human spirit to be saved without humility! Its conceit about its knowledge stands in the way and hinders true humility. Conceit about a knowledge that is no knowledge; for in comparison with his abilities man can really be described as the most stupid of all creatures of this Subsequent Creation, because he is too conceited to receive anything in humility.

There is no point in arguing about this, for it *is* so. But man does not perceive it. He does not *want* to believe it. This also is a result of his boundless conceit, which is always the inevitable outcome of stupidity. Only stupidity begets conceit, for where there is real knowledge there is not room for conceit. It can only arise within the narrow confines of an inferior imagination, nowhere else.

Where knowledge begins, conceit ends. And since today, the greater part of mankind is living *only* in conceit, there is no knowledge.

Man has altogether lost the concept of genuine knowledge! He no longer knows what knowledge is! Not without reason does the old adage say: "Only in the highest knowledge of a

man there arises the wisdom of the conviction of the fact that he *knows nothing!*"

Therein lies the truth! When man has attained to this conviction, conceit will die in him and he can begin to receive true knowledge.

All learning through studying has nothing to do with knowledge! An eager student can become a *scholar*, yet be a long way from being called a knowing one. Therefore, the expression *knowledge* in the sense in which it is used today, is wrong. Even man of today can speak of erudition, but not of *knowledge!* What he acquires in universities is merely erudition, as the climax and crowning point of learning! It is something *acquired*, and not his *own!* Only what is one's own is knowledge! Knowledge can come only from experience, not from learning!

Thus, in my Message I only show the way, so that the one who follows it may go through the experiences, which will bring him *the knowledge*. Man must first "experience" Creation, if he really wants to *know* of it. Through my knowledge, I make it possible for him to experience it, since I myself continually experience Creation!

In the future, therefore, we shall have learned ones and knowing ones. The scholars can and must learn from the knowing ones!

There will be no more conceit in the new Kingdom, in the coming generation! Conceit is the greatest impediment to ascent. It plunges millions of people that will not or cannot let go of it into annihilation! But this is as it should be; for Creation will thus be cleansed of all useless creatures who only take food and space from others. They spread their weight around without offering the slightest benefit. Then there will be fresh air for useful human spirits!

## In the land of twilight.

Let me take you a step into the Ethereal Realm, soul of man! We will hurry through the Land of Shadows without stopping, for I have already spoken about this. It is *that* plane where *those* must linger who are still too stupid to use their ethereal bodies properly, particularly those who while on earth considered themselves especially clever. In the Ethereal Realm they are dumb, blind and deaf because the earthly intellect, as a product of their gross material body, could not accompany them into the beyond. Being earthbound it remained in the narrow confines of the World of Matter, which it can never overstep.

The first consequence of this great error becomes immediately clear to a human soul after earthly death, for it stands useless in the Ethereal Realm, helpless and weak, much worse than a newly-born child on the gross material earth. Therefore they are called *shadows*, souls which still sense their existence but which cannot be conscious of it.

Let us leave these foolish ones behind us, those who, in their conceited belief that they know everything better, prattled enough trivial nonsense on this earth, and who must now be silent. *We are now entering the plane of twilight!* A whispering reaches our ears, in complete accord with the dim twilight around us, in which we can vaguely recognize the outlines of hills, meadows and bushes. Thus *everything* here corresponds to the state of *twilight*, which *may* be followed by an awakening. This only *may* be so, not necessarily must be so!

No happy cheerful sound, no clear vision is possible here. Only twilight or a restriction which conforms to the condition of the souls sojourning here. These drag themselves sluggishly about, tired and indifferent, except for an indefinable urge

driving them in one direction, towards a faint roseate glow which seems to rise in the distance and which, like a harbinger of light, affects these seemingly tired souls like sweet enchantment. They only *appear* to be tired. Actually they are *indolent* in spirit, and *therefore* their ethereal bodies are *weak*. —

The roseate glow in the far distance beckons them onward, full of promise! Hope awakens within them and they are stirred to quickened movement. Their desire to reach this glow gives fresh strength to their ethereal bodies; their eyes reflect a keener consciousness, and they step out towards it with ever greater assurance. —

*We accompany them.* The number of souls around us increases; everything grows more active and distinct; the speaking becomes somewhat louder, swelling to a strong murmuring. Soon we discern words, words that evolve into prayers uttered by those jostling forward, uttered unceasingly, hastily, feverishly. The crowds now grow ever more dense. The forward movement becomes spasmodic, and whole groups in front of us come to a halt. They are being thrust back by those ahead of them, only to push forward again. Thus the jammed masses surge to and fro. Cries of despair, frightened entreaties, timid demands, and here and there a suppressed whimpering of utter helplessness arise from the prayers! —

Quickly we swing ourselves above this struggle of millions of souls. We see that before them, inflexible and cold, an obstacle checks their advance; an obstacle against which they hurl themselves, and which they wet with their tears in vain.

A series of high, strong and closely-set bars relentlessly halts their forward movement! —

More brightly gleams the roseate glow in the distance, and still stronger grows the longing for it within those who have made it their goal. Beseechingly they stretch out their hands, still convulsively clasping their rosaries and letting one bead after another slip through their fingers as they continue to stammer their prayers! The barrier, however, stands rigid and

immovable, separating them from their beautiful goal!

We walk past the dense crowds, which seem to be endless. Not hundreds of thousands, but millions! All faithful “believers”, at least so they thought while on earth. How different they had imagined everything to be! They thought they would be joyfully awaited and welcomed with respect.

Call out to them: “Of what use are your prayers, you believers, if you did not allow the Word of the Lord to become active *within yourselves*, as natural conviction!

The roseate glow you see in the distance is the longing for the Kingdom of God burning within you! You carry this longing within yourselves, but you blocked the road leading there with the rigid forms of your false opinions, which are represented in the bars of the fence you now see obstructing you! Discard all the false views you accepted, and those you yourselves built up in addition during your time on earth! Throw them aside and boldly step out for the Truth *as it is* in its great and simple naturalness! Then you are free to attain the goal you long for!

But see, you dare not. You are in constant fear that it might perhaps be wrong, because you have thought differently up to now! But you only hinder yourselves through this and must remain where you are until it becomes too late to stride onward, and you are bound to be drawn along into perdition! Nobody can help you with this unless *you* yourselves begin to leave behind all that is wrong!”

Call out to them! Point out the way of salvation to these souls! You will see it is utterly in vain. The noise of their endless prayers only grows louder and *prevents* them *from hearing* a single word that might help them to stride forward towards the roseate glow and the Light. In spite of many a good volition they must now perish as victims of their indolence, which prevented them from recognising and absorbing anything *more* than the *externals* connected with their churches, temples and mosques. —

Sad at heart, we want to move on. — But there before us we notice the soul of a woman, whose face suddenly takes on an

expression of peace and calm; her eyes lose their troubled, anxious look and shine more brightly. As she attains to greater consciousness her body becomes more erect and more transparent... a strong volition of purest hope helps her to raise her foot... and then, uttering a sigh of relief, she stands *on the other side* of the barrier! To the soul of this woman the bars no longer formed any obstacle, for through deep meditation and delicate intuition she became convinced that all she had hitherto thought must have been wrong, and with a joyous belief in the love of God she fearlessly cast aside all her mistaken ideas.

Now she is astonished when she realizes how easy it was! Gratefully she raises her arms, her supreme happiness makes her want to sing with joy! But the magnitude of the experience overwhelms her and her lips remain mute! She trembles slightly, her head sinks down upon her breast, and she closes her eyes as big tears course slowly down her cheeks. She clasps her hands in prayer, but this time she prays in a *different* way. A prayer of thanks, and a heartfelt intercession on behalf of all those who are still behind these hard bars because of the false opinions they refuse to surrender!

A sigh of profound sympathy swells her breast, and it is as if the last of her fetters falls away. Now she is free, free to tread the path to the goal she inwardly longs for!

Lifting her eyes she sees a guide standing before her, and joyfully she follows him into the new, unknown land, towards the roseate glow which becomes ever brighter! —

Thus many a soul still detaches itself from these masses which must wait behind the bars erected by their erroneous opinions for their own decision; for their own resolution which may lead them onward or which retains them till the hour strikes when everything that cannot brace itself to cast off that which was formerly wrong will be destroyed. Few only will still be able to free themselves from the clutches of their false views, in which they are too deeply entangled! The bars that prevent their progress toward ascent are as rigid as their own

stubbornness in clinging to these erroneous views. It is impossible to lend them a helping hand to overcome this obstacle, because it is absolutely necessary that the initiative should come from the souls *themselves*. It is their inner *personal* experiencing which activates their limbs. Thus an ominous curse falls upon all those who teach mankind wrong conceptions about the Will of God in Creation, which was at that time to be found in the Word of the Saviour. But it was not purely preserved in the Word of the Bible, still less in earthly explanations.

Let them in their rigidity continue to prattle their prayers under the delusion that the number thereof can and must help them because the church has taught them so, as if some bargain could be driven with the Will of God.

Let us continue our journey in the Land of Twilight. The stronghold of bars seems to stretch endlessly into the distance, and the multitude it imprisons reaches far beyond our gaze. —

But here we see other groups holding Bibles in their hands instead of rosaries, and desperately searching through the pages. They gather round a few souls who try to give instruction and information by continually reading passages from the Bible. Here and there various souls lift their Bibles in a demanding manner. Others kneel and raise them as if in prayer... however, the bars remain immovable, preventing all possibility of advance.

Many souls point to their Biblical knowledge; others demand their right to walk into the Kingdom of Heaven! But the bars do not budge!

Then we observe the soul of a man smilingly forcing his way through the multitude. Triumphantly he waves his hand.

“You fools,” he cries, “why did you not want to listen? I spent half my time on earth studying the other world, which for us is now this life. The bars in front of you will quickly disappear through one act of your will, they are the product of your imagination. Just follow me, I will lead you! I am already familiar with all this!”

The souls around him give way. He strides towards the bars as if they do not exist, but instantly staggers back with a cry of pain. The impact was too hard and very soon convinced him that the bars were real enough. He puts both hands to his forehead. The bars before him stand immovable. In a fit of rage he seizes them and shakes them violently.

Angrily he cries out: "Then the medium has deceived me! And year after year I devoted to studying this!"

He does not realize that it was *he* who originated and spread these errors both verbally and through his writings, after interpreting the pictures transmitted to him by the medium according to *his* ideas, and without first studying the Laws of God in Creation.

Do not try to help this man or others. They are all so wrapped up in themselves that they have no wish whatever to listen to any but their own perceiving. They must first become weary of their plight, must recognize or comprehend its futility, for this alone holds the possibility of escape from the entanglement of wrong convictions after long wanderings in the Land of Twilight.

These are not bad persons, but those who in their seeking have merely clung tenaciously to false conceptions, or who were too lazy to ponder over everything thoroughly, when they should have examined what they accepted with the most careful intuition to see whether it could be considered correct, or whether it contained flaws which their own healthy intuition must reject as unnatural. Therefore drop all empty superficiality!

The human spirit should reject all mysticism, because it can never be of any value to him. Only that which he himself enters into with his intuitive perception, thereby bringing it to personal experience within himself, will be useful to him in the maturing of his spirit.

The word "*Awake!*" which Christ used so frequently means "*Experience!*" Do not go through life on earth sleeping or dreaming! "Pray and work" means: "Make your *work* a prayer",

spiritualise the work of your hands! In its performance every task should become a reverential worship of God, in gratitude that God has given you the chance to accomplish something extraordinary among all the creatures of this Subsequent Creation, *if only you so wish!*

Begin timely with this awakening, with this personal experiencing of everything, including what you read and hear, which is the same as consciously perceiving it, so that you do not have to remain in the Land of Twilight, of which I have explained only a very small part today.

---

## Resurrection Morn!

**R**esurrection Morn! These words cast a magic spell that strangely moves every soul. The spirit intuitively perceives sunlit meadows full of flowers, gurgling brooks, the sound of distant bells, peace everywhere! A happy, free sigh of relief in Nature! — —

And resurrection morn it shall be for *those* human souls found worthy to experience the Kingdom of God here on earth. The others will remain behind in the Darkness that today still surrounds the earth, and along with the Darkness they will be hurled forth onto the course leading to inescapable disintegration, to spiritual death!

Already the rosy dawn glows in the ethereal sky as a sign that the day now approaches!

Awake, you souls who are waiting for redemption, waiting in the *right* way! There is but a short time now to the hour that must find you fully prepared. Do not let yourselves be found asleep at the last moment!

Dreadful is the Darkness that envelops the earth ethereally. It would be impossible now for any human soul to break through it. — — —

Unless from the rising to the setting in the Universe a dazzling flash of Divine Truth forcibly pierces the sultry night of the spiritual, the human spirit, falling asleep as it is, will be lost in this Subsequent Creation.

For all the wisdom brought by Called Ones, which was meant to prepare the way that would make it possible for earthmen to ascend spiritually towards the Luminous Heights, has always been exploited by the followers of these Called Ones, mainly for earthly purposes! It did not remain as it was, free and natural, intended for the benefit of *all* men; but trained human

cleverness polished it over and over again until there was nothing left of the original form in all its simplicity.

Thus the self-complacent reformers had achieved something futile and disastrous, in which millions of human souls have become entangled.

It all became a business out of which the craving for power gradually developed. Under the guidance of the intellect, which as Lucifer's fruit proved itself to be excellent, there arose only caricatures of what true wisdom was intended to call forth. And the Darkness made shrewd use of this, so that the unsuspecting victims had to fall blindly into its arms, while their indolent spirits were deluded into thinking that they were striving towards the Light.

Nor was it otherwise later on with the Luminous *Truth* which the Son of God brought to earth, in order *thereby* at last to clear the path for the necessary ascent of men to the Kingdom of God, and finally to sever them from the toils of the Darkness, which arose from the distortions of the hitherto existing wisdom.

In the knowledge that He gave them Christ demanded spiritual activity *by every single one*, and therewith worship of the Most High through the deed!

Man should know everything that is contained in Creation, so as to recognize the fundamental laws working therein which bear the Will of God; for only through *this* knowledge can man so adapt himself as God demands. Then, living accordingly, he can gladden and further everything around him, which in turn will bring him ascent and *that* maturity which, as a human being, he can and should find in accordance with God's Will, if he wishes to "pass". To "pass" before God means not having to fall into disintegration.

All the Laws of God are adjusted to the sole *purpose* of promoting up-building and progress! Through Christ the whole of humanity was given the opportunity to become free in spirit at last. — —

But churches arose which went to much trouble to dissect the

Word of the Lord behind monastery walls, even to conceal part of It, and only to issue *that* which they had expounded according to their own interpretations, in such a way as suited their own designs and purposes.

Thus once more the greater part of the gift sent by God to the individual human being was withheld from him in order to prevent men from becoming too spiritually active, too free. And so contrary to what Christ had wanted!

The churches sought adherents, riches and power. To this end no one was allowed to realize that he could find his way quite by himself into the Kingdom of God without assistance from the church! The thought must not occur to him that God does not need a church between Himself and His creatures, whom indeed He had *created* without a church.

And this succeeded. Slowly but surely the church thrust itself and its demands divisively between men's longing for the Light and their God! To increase the number of adherents, the church offered ease and comfort as an enticement to the indolent human spirit! It even went so far that for one purpose or another people could have prayers said in the churches for money. For payment the church relieved the individual of taking the trouble of doing it himself, and therewith also debased prayer, the only means by which the human spirit should approach his God. But nobody noticed the senseless and degrading nature of such outrageous practices. It was comfortable, and thereby the number of "believers" grew.

As the church grew larger it became more ruthless, in the end even to some extent discarding its mask. Acting against all the Laws of God, it undermined everything that refused to acknowledge it. It agitated and slandered, even murdered if it could not otherwise attain its goal. At first this was done secretly but later on, as its earthly power increased, quite openly. It did not shrink from using the Name of God as a shield.

Here no man can speak of an error. Such a deed bears all too plainly the stamp of the basest Darkness! It is in the sharpest

contrast to what Christ Jesus taught! Hostile blows were thus directed against every word that He had uttered. There is nothing on the entire earth that has dared to *oppose* Christ and His Word *more* than the church has done from the very beginning!

Nothing could be more dangerous! Through the very pretence of wanting to serve God, the effect for mankind was dreadful! Lucifer could not have had a better helper in his hostile work against God. Here his subtle prompting of the earthly intellect had achieved its greatest triumph! It had produced a misleading falsification of all that *should* actually have come into existence as willed by God! The pretence at genuineness was successful. What was most valuable and should have led *to* God, he had turned in the opposite direction through those who represented themselves as, and very often considered themselves to be, God's servants; he let it become an obstacle that was bound to hinder mankind from advancing joyfully towards the longed-for Light! A move unequalled in its audacity. —

And thus the Darkness enveloped the earth, and became the deepest night of the soul! — —

Now, however, the evil is being checked! All mankind will be rudely aroused from their delusion! A few to redemption, many to destruction! The final settlement for Golgotha is at hand! But in a sense different from what men have hitherto imagined! —

Just as mushrooms spring up from the earth during a sultry summer night so, as has been foretold, will false prophets arise from the masses so that through themselves they may fulfill the Word and be judged; for the earth is to be cleansed of them!

And you little flock, let it rage, let it storm! Before a Spring morning violent gales *must* blow! Let millions of people be torn away; it is good and in accordance with the inflexible Will of the most High! Each will receive what he deserves! Hypocrisy, corruption and the pseudo-knowledge of man must come to an end.

Soon the momentous words: "It is finished!" will once again ring out loudly and jubilantly throughout the worlds!

Then resurrection morn will dawn, and a resplendent sun will usher in a new day for you! The Lord and God will grant a new era to those of His creatures who humbly submit to His Will!

Then will each soul breathe a great free sigh of relief, which as a thanksgiving, as a prayer, will ascend to the Throne of the Highest, as a vow to serve HIM as *HE* wills! May God grant it!

---

## Ponderers.

**T**he man who spends his days on earth in pondering about himself can never ascend, but remains hampered.

So many people live in the belief, however, that just such pondering and self-observation is something specially great which helps them to ascend. They have many words for it that veil its true nature. One person ponders in repentance, another in humility; still others ponder assiduously in order to discover their faults and the way to avoid them, and so on. But it all remains a continuous pondering which seldom or never permits them to experience true joy.

*That* is not what is willed. It is a false road and never leads upwards to luminous and free realms. For through this pondering man *binds* himself! He directs his gaze forcibly upon himself only, instead of upon a high, pure luminous goal!

Cheerful, hearty laughter is the strongest antidote to darkness. Only it must not be a laugh of malicious pleasure!

On the other hand pondering weighs a person down, and this alone is enough to explain that it keeps *down* and also pulls down. —

Nor is the real basis of continual pondering a good volition, but only vanity, ambition and conceit! It is not the pure longing for the Light that gives cause to this pondering, but a craving for self-esteem that kindles it ever anew and perpetually nourishes it!

The continued concentration of his thoughts upon himself is a form of self-torment. He zealously observes the alternate pros and cons working within his soul, feeling vexed at times and then finding solace again, so that finally he can personally note with a deep breath of quiet self-satisfaction that once more he

has “overcome” something and gone a step forward. I purposely say “*personally note*”, for it is really he alone who does most of the observing, and such personal observations are invariably nothing but self-delusions. In reality he has not advanced a *single* step, but goes on making the same mistakes over and over again, although he imagines they are no *longer* the same. But they *are* the same, always the old mistakes, only their form changes.

Such a man never advances in this way, although his personal observations give him cause to imagine that he is overcoming one fault after another. But he always revolves in a circle around himself, while the basic evil hidden within him does nothing but continuously create new forms.

A man who is always observing and pondering over himself is the personification of the fighter against the nine-headed snake. No sooner is each head cut off than it grows afresh, making the struggle endless, with nothing to mark in the way of progress on the fighter’s side.

As a matter of fact this is also the ethereal process resulting from the activity of a ponderer. In the last Antiquity, when men considered everything not gross material to be gods, demigods or other kinds of entities, they were still able to see this. —

Only a man of cheerful volition who keeps his gaze freely concentrated *upon a sublime goal*, instead of continually focusing all his attention upon himself, only *he* will advance and ascend towards the Luminous Heights. No child learns to walk without frequently tumbling, but it almost invariably gets up with a smile until it is able to walk in safety. *That* is what man must do on his path through the world. Do not despair, lament or complain when you sometimes fall. Get up briskly and try again! You must learn the lesson from each fall through your *intuitive perception*, however, and not through mental observation. Then there will quite suddenly come a time when you need no longer fear another fall, because you have inwardly absorbed everything the previous ones have taught you.

Thus man can only absorb through actual *experiencing* and not through observation. A ponderer never comes to the point of experiencing. Through his observing he always places himself *outside* every experience; looking at himself with his dissecting and analytic mind as if at a stranger, instead of exercising his intuitive perception to the full on his own behalf. If he *looks* at himself he *must* stand *beside* the intuitive perception. The very words to look at oneself, to observe oneself, imply this!

This also explains that he is but serving *the intellect*, which not only hinders every genuine experience *with the intuitive perception*, but utterly eliminates it. He prevents the effect of every outward happening in the material world from penetrating further than the frontal brain where it is first received. There it is arrested, presumptuously dissected and analysed, so that it does not reach the intuitional brain, through which alone the spirit could accept it for experiencing.

For mark my words: just as the human spirit must direct its activity from within outwards, i.e., in proper sequence over the intuitional brain to the intellectual brain, so the effects of outward happenings can only take the reverse course if they are to be absorbed by the human spirit as experiences. Thus the impression of outward happenings in the material world must, in coming from the outside, always go through the intellectual frontal brain and thence via the intuitional back brain to the spirit, not otherwise. And the activity of the spirit must take exactly the reverse direction towards the outside, because the intuitional brain alone has the ability to absorb *spiritual* impressions. The ponderer, however, clings convulsively to the impression of an outward happening in his intellectual frontal brain. There he dissects and analyses it, and does not pass it on to the intuitional brain in its full value, but only partly. In addition these parts are distorted through excessive intellectual activity, and thus it is no longer as real as it was.

For this reason there can be no progress for him, no spiritual maturing, which can only come about through the real experiencing of outward happenings.

Be like children in this. Absorb everything fully and experience it immediately within yourselves! Then it will again stream back through the intuitional brain to the intellectual brain. From there it can either serve for a strong and successful defence or increase the receptive capacity, depending on the nature of the outward happenings, the radiations of which are called influences or impressions from without.

Man will receive his training for this during the Millennium, which shall become the Kingdom of Peace and Happiness, the Kingdom of God on earth. Owing to his *exacting desires* man again misunderstands what this means, because in his conceit he can no longer form anything in the right and healthy way. The expression the Kingdom of God on earth calls forth a tremulous joy in the ranks of all those hoping for it. They really think of it as a gift of joy and happiness which will fully correspond to their longing for tranquil enjoyment. Actually however, it will be a time of the strictest obedience for all mankind!

Today nobody is willing to accept the fact that therein lies a demand! The expression "The Kingdom of God on Earth", however, means nothing other than that only *God's Will* prevails there, absolutely and unalterably! That man's volition and desires *must* at last completely subordinate themselves to the Will of God!

Peace and happiness will then ensue because all disturbing elements will be *forcibly* removed from the earth, and will be kept away from it in the future. To these in the first place belongs the man of today, for he alone caused the disturbances in Creation and here on earth. But after a certain hour has struck no disturbing one will be able to live on this earth any longer.

This will come about through the transforming of the radiations,

which takes place through the Son of Man and His Star. Peace will be *enforced*, not come as a gift, and to keep the peace will then be demanded, firmly and relentlessly!

Such will be the Kingdom of Peace and Happiness, the Kingdom of God on earth, in which man must be *deprived* of ruling by *his* volition, which he was permitted to keep hitherto; for being spiritual among the developed ones upon this earth he must, as the highest creature, therefore rule in strict accordance with the Primordial Laws of Creation. With the entrance of the Will of God into Subsequent Creation, however, the predominance of man's volition will be automatically disabled.

In future there will be only able to exist *that* man and all those creatures which voluntarily adjust themselves to the Will of God! Those which live and think and work accordingly! *This* alone offers the possibility to live in the coming Millennium!

Impress it upon yourselves once more, as clearly as you can. It is the foundation for everything, indeed, for your entire existence! So that you, little flock, will stand inwardly firm on this new ground from the beginning!

---

## Voluntary martyrs, religious fanatics.

**M**en who voluntarily inflict pain and privation upon themselves in order to become pleasing to God are repulsive! None of them will ever attain to the Kingdom of Heaven!

Instead of showing gratitude for their existence by enjoying the beautiful Creation, they torment and torture their bodies, which before were often quite healthy, in the most wanton manner, or harm them by various self-imposed privations and renunciations only... in order to be considered great *in the eyes of men*, or to achieve personal satisfaction and exaltation under the delusion that they have accomplished quite an exceptional feat.

All this is nothing but an evil and obnoxious outgrowth of the most gross and base conceit! The desire by every means and at all costs to pass for something before others! Generally such persons fully realize that they can never command attention in any other way, thereby clearly perceiving their inability to distinguish themselves by achieving something great. They have become convinced of their insignificance.

In their self-delusion they consider this conviction as to their insignificance to be humility! But it is not humility, and they immediately prove it by their desire to attract attention! Only self-complacency and vanity drive them to such repugnant acts. These are not pious ones or humble servants of God, nor should they be considered saints, but only wilful *sinner*s – sinners who even expect to be admired for their sins and to be rewarded for their indolent attitude towards work!

If it never dawns upon many of them that this is a great sin, because in striving for “self-exaltation” they themselves do not wish to recognize it as such, this does not alter the fact that

ultimately every action remains always and only what it *really* is, and not what man wishes to make himself and others believe it is.

Such men are nothing but *sinners* before God, because by their wilful or stubborn behaviour they oppose His Primordial Laws of Creation. They do not give the bodies entrusted to them the necessary nourishment and care in order to develop that strength which will enable them to provide a strong soil for the spirit on earth, and to make healthy and vigorous tools for defence and reception, serving the spirit powerfully both as shield and as sword at the same time.

Wilfully to oppose the Laws of Nature in order to stand out and attract attention is nothing but the result of a diseased brain. For a healthy man will never imagine that he can change or improve the Will of God expressed in the Primordial Laws of Creation, even by as much as a hair's breadth, without harming himself.

How foolish, how childishly wayward or ridiculous does it appear when a man spends a lifetime in a hollow tree, when he allows a limb of his body to become completely paralysed, or when he lacerates or defiles himself!

Let man exert himself as he will to find a reason which would justify such behavior, or which would even offer some sense for it; it is and remains a crime against the body entrusted to him, and therefore a crime against the Will of God!

To these also belong the innumerable martyrs to vanity and fashion!

Pay no further attention to such people! You will see how quickly they change, how shallow are their convictions.

A fanatic ruins himself by his stubbornness! He is not worth grieving over, for such a human spirit never has any *values* to show.

And just as thousands of people severely maltreat their physical bodies in this manner, therewith maliciously turning against the Will of God, so is it also done in a thousand ways against the soul!

---

Great is the number of those, for instance, who continually live under the self-imposed delusion that they are outcasts in the world, bereft of happiness, neglected by their fellow-men, and so on. Yet they themselves make demands upon their fellow-men which are far from justified; their envy has a disintegrating effect upon their surroundings, whereby they heap an ever-growing and heavy burden of guilt upon their shoulders. These comprise the vermin which must be crushed under foot in the Judgment, so that undimmed peace, joy and happiness may at last reign among men.

However, not only do they torment their neighbours with their moods, but they also injure *their own* soul bodies in much the same way as religious fanatics harm their physical bodies. In so doing they *especially* transgress against the Divine Laws, for they recklessly injure all those necessary cloaks which are entrusted to their spirit, so that they cannot be used by the spirit in their fresh health and full vigour.

Far-reaching indeed are the consequences of such deeds on the part of those who thus abuse their physical or soul bodies! Their spirits are hampered and harmed in their urgent and necessary development, and may even be led into eternal disintegration, into perdition. But even as they fall they will still suffer from the delusion that they are the victims of injustice!

Basically, however, they are only contemptible creatures, unworthy to enjoy any happiness!

Disregard and avoid them, therefore, for they do not merit even one good word!

---

## Servants of God.

Without any reason to justify it many people have hitherto assumed that servants of churches, temples and religious movements in general must also be regarded as the equivalent of servants of God.

This idea was disseminated at the time of the founding and development of all sorts of cults by the servants of these cults, who thereby sought to gain respect for themselves, which they would hardly have been able to generate personally. And it has been retained ever since without anybody attempting to realize the fact that this is harmful instead of beneficial to mankind and, most important of all, that it leads to a wrong conception of God!

A man standing in Creation with an alert spirit, one who does not remain closed to the delicate intuitive vibrations of his soul, will never be able to accept as true that the Great and Living God can really be served through the practices of cults, through the begging that men call “praying”, or through mortification of the flesh! With these practices you do not *give* anything to your God! You do not offer Him anything! What then is your real aim? You yourselves do not know how to answer this question when you stand before the Judgment Seat of God! You will have to remain silent, for you have done all this only *for yourselves*, for *your* inner composure and exaltation, or in despair and affliction.

But I say unto you: Only *that* man who stands aright in the Creation of his God, who recognizes himself as a part of Creation and *lives accordingly*, only he is the true servant of God, no matter in what way he earns his necessary living on earth. As a part of Creation he will always strive to adjust himself to *those* laws that have a *furthering* effect therein.

Thus he himself furthers Creation, and serves his God in the only right way. For through the right adjustment *only* happiness, joy and further progress can arise!

*For this reason he must naturally become familiar with Creation.*

And this is something you badly need! To *recognize* the Will of God resting in Creation and its constant self-acting effects therein! But so far you have never troubled yourselves to do just this in the correct manner. And yet it is the same for all of you, namely, that you stand and must move in the midst of a mighty mechanism, so to speak, without ever being able to alter or improve upon it.

Unless you stand and move in it *aright*, however, danger threatens you from all sides. You are sure to hit yourselves, and may fall and be torn to pieces. Exactly as in a gigantic machine-shop, with numerous driving belts constantly moving in all directions, confusing the eye and seriously threatening at every step all those not acquainted with it, but only of real service and use to the expert. It is no different for man in Creation!

At last learn to understand its mechanism *aright*, then you may and shall use it for your own happiness! But to do this you must first become an apprentice, as in everything! The greatest of all works, this Creation, is no exception; the same applies here as with all men's productions. Even an automobile gives pleasure only to the *expert*. It brings death, however, to him who does not know how to control it!

There are thousands of such minor examples available to you! Why have you never learned anything from them as yet?

All this may be recognized in such a simple and natural way! But just in this matter you stand as if before a wall! Apathetic, indifferent and with an inexplicable stubbornness. After all it is your life, your entire existence, which is at stake here!

Only the constructor himself can explain the working of a machine to you, or a man whom *he* has trained for the task. It

is the same in Creation as here on earth! But it is just in regard to Creation that men, who are themselves only a part of it, imagine that they of themselves know everything better than their Master, and refuse to be trained in the use of the mechanism! They themselves want to teach the basic laws, which they try to establish through superficial observation of the very faint, last ramifications of what is great and true, to the *perception* of which they always kept themselves closed. Thus there can never be any question of knowledge.

And yet the possibility of recognition was already lovingly offered to you initially in clear outline through the laws which Moses was able to transmit, then even by the Son of God, who tried to teach you through parables and pictures.

However, their meaning was not grasped, but instead by insisting that they knew better men badly distorted, darkened and perverted it.

Now for the third and final time you are again granted the opportunity through the Grail Message clearly to see the Laws of God in Creation, so that men may become true servants of God, fully conscious and in joyous and cheerful activity, as the true worship of God requires!

*Joy* and happiness can exist in all Creation. You men alone bring about distress and sorrow, disease and crime, for right up to the present day you did not *want* to recognize the source of the vast power which was given to you for your journey through all the worlds, in which by your own desire you must all wander for your development.

If only you adjust yourselves aright this power will forcibly bring sunshine and happiness into your lives. Unless you do this you stand small and helpless in the all-embracing mechanism, yet still boasting with big words of yourselves and your knowledge, until finally you must fall through these faults, which arose only out of your ignorance and unwillingness to learn anything!

Wake up at last! First start *learning* in order to acquire the *knowledge*, otherwise you will never make any progress.

In the eyes of the Creator you are now far less than an insect. An insect faithfully fulfils its allotted task, while you as human spirits fail! You fail through your vain pseudo-knowledge that is no knowledge. Your schools founded on this sham knowledge are fetters that hold you firmly bound, even choking every attempt at spiritual ascent, because the teachers in these schools cannot set about this spiritual ascent themselves!

Thank the Lord that the possibility of continuing to live on such an empty and thoroughly detrimental basis will now be forcibly taken from you. Otherwise you would never recognize the contemptibleness surrounding you everywhere today, which must bring ridicule upon you throughout Creation for being empty, grotesquely dressed-up dolls, whose spirits are asleep within them!

---

## The instinct of animals.

Men are often struck with admiration when they observe the instinctive actions of animals. They ascribe a special sense to animals which mankind either lack completely or which they have allowed to degenerate.

They are perplexed, for example, when they see a horse, a dog or some other animal suddenly refusing to pass a certain place on a road it is accustomed to and which it has perhaps taken daily, and when they subsequently learn that an accident occurred on that very spot shortly afterwards.

Quite often the lives of one or more persons have been saved through such incidents. So many of these cases have been published that there is no need to go into the matter more deeply here.

Instinct or unconscious presentiment are the terms man has used to describe this characteristic of the animal. Having found a name for a thing men are usually well satisfied. They envisage something in their imagination and accept it as fact, irrespective of whether they are right or wrong. It is the same with this.

The reason for such actions on the part of an animal, however, is quite a different one. It possesses neither the quality nor the ability of instinct as man understands the word! In such incidents it merely heeds a warning that is given to it. These warnings can be *seen* quite well by the animal, whereas only a few people are able to observe them.

As I have already explained in one of my earlier lectures, the soul of an animal does not originate in the Spiritual Sphere from which man comes, but from the Animistic Sphere. The elemental beings also originate there, such as the gnomes, elves, nixies, and so on, whose field of activity lies in what men

usually call Nature, i.e., water, air, earth and fire. The same applies to other beings which occupy themselves with the development and growth of stones, plants and the like. All these elemental beings originate in another section of the Animistic Sphere to that of the animal souls. However, the mutual homogeneity of their origin provides a greater possibility for them to recognize each other. Thus an animal is far better equipped to recognize these elemental beings than is man, whose origin lies in the Spiritual Sphere.

The elemental beings know exactly when and where sudden changes in Nature are about to take place, such as landslides, rocks being dislodged from mountains, trees falling, the caving-in of land undermined by water, the bursting of a dam, sudden water eruptions, volcanic and fire eruptions, tidal waves and floods, earthquakes, and everything else coming within the same category, because they themselves are occupied with the preparation and bringing about of such changes, which men call disasters and catastrophes.

If such a happening is imminent it may well be that an animal or a person approaching the spot is warned by these elementals. They block the way and try, through vehement motions, shouting to induce them to return. The animal sees these beings more or less clearly, is startled, its hair bristles, and it energetically refuses to continue, quite contrary to its usual behaviour, so that often as an exception even the best-trained animal disobeys its master. *This* is the reason for the striking behaviour of the animal in such cases. Man, however, does not see these elemental beings and very often runs into the danger, thereby perishing or suffering great harm.

For this reason man should pay more attention to animals so that he learns to understand them. Then animals will truly become man's friends, able to fill gaps and thus be much more useful to him than they have been in the past.

---

## The kiss of friendship.

There has been much discussion on this subject all over the world. Both in poetry and prose the kiss of friendship has been beautified and exalted to a high position in the world of thoughts. However, all this is only a fantasy far removed from what is natural.

It is a pretty little cloak which, as with so many things, earthman has manufactured in order to admire himself or others in it. Yet admiration is absolutely out of place, for in reality it is nothing but hypocrisy, a shameful attempt to disarrange and distort the Laws of Creation, and thus divest them of their glorious and simple naturalness!

It is true that the intention behind a kiss often varies, but this does not alter the fact that each kiss as such remains a kiss, i.e., a physical contact which, according to the Natural Laws, causes a feeling that can never be other than merely physical! He who knows my Message is aware of this already. Man must not always behave in such a cowardly manner in his efforts to deny the *true nature* of his deeds! On the contrary he must remain clearly conscious of them at all times. A hypocrite is even worse than an evil-doer!

The term “kiss of friendship” definitely presupposes the age of maturity.

The kiss between a man and a woman who have reached a mature age, however, is subject to the vibrations of the Primordial Laws in Creation, no matter how pure their intentions! It is ridiculous to make excuses. Man knows very well that the Laws of Nature do not ask for his opinion. The kiss given by a friend, a brother, or a father to a mature girl or woman always remains a kiss between the different sexes, despite the strongest self-delusion. It is no different with the

kiss given by a mother to her son as soon as he has reached a mature age. The Laws of Nature neither know of nor grant any distinction in these matters. Every person must therefore practice much greater self-restraint!

Only man's mania for wishing to adapt the Natural Laws to his own desires creates ideas so *opposed* to those laws, such as kisses of friendship, embracing among relatives, and the many other trespasses existing in these matters. Under the most hypocritical cloaks man often tries to sin, even *deliberately*!

Because many people believe they are acting quite harmlessly with such transgressions, and imagine their intentions to be absolutely pure, this does not alter the fact that such behaviour is contrary to the Laws of Nature! It is and remains a distortion of the purest Laws of Nature when they are robbed of their beautiful simplicity by false interpretation! Only what is unhealthy arises from this, because every abuse and distortion only devalues, defiles and debases the original soundness of the law!

Therefore away with such hypocrisy! At last honor the Laws of Nature as they really are in their simple and thus sublime greatness! Adjust *yourselves* to them and live accordingly. Also adjust all your thinking, your actions and your habits to them, both within your families and outside. Therefore become natural in the purest sense and you will then also be happy and thus pleasing to God! Every unhealthy aspect of life will then fall away from you. Honesty will be the rule among you, and you will be spared many unnecessary inner conflicts, which only result from such foolish illusions, and often molest and torment you all through your earthly lives!

The unhealthiness of this injurious toying, this wrongful caressing, which invariably indicates a purely physical basis, can be most clearly observed in immature and guileless children of a *tender* age. Children who are continually showered with or, to put it quite frankly, "molested" by these family caresses always have an unhealthy appearance. Besides nearly every child shows an intuitive repulsion against such

obtrusive fondling and never any desire for it, because in reality a child is “naturally innocent”! To start with, it must first always be trained to tolerate and return caresses! Such training, however, is only desired by the grown-ups, who through the maturity of their physical bodies instinctively feel the need for it! But it is not the wish of the child! All this shows clearly enough the dangerous coercion which is being insidiously brought to bear upon the child! Gradually, however, it gets accustomed to this fondling and finally comes to desire it out of sheer habit, until the maturing body itself awakens in the instinct!

Shame on a mankind which continually tries to hide their base desires and personal weaknesses under a cloak of hypocrisy, or which acts thoughtlessly in such matters!

Man must *know* that genuine love is of the soul only! Everything else is merely instinct! Psychic love, however, has nothing to do with the physical body, nor has it any physical desires, for the separation between all the species in Creation always remains complete. Spiritual is spiritual, psychic is psychic, and physical is and always remains only physical!

When the physical body dies not a single particle of the soul dies with it. This proves in all simplicity that everything stands on its own, that no intermingling occurs.

A soulful kiss, for example, exists only in the imagination, because every kiss is and always remains merely a gross material act. What a man experiences in his soul thereby is an entirely separate matter. Psychic love goes *beside* the physical instinct, not with it or even in it.

Any other conception is a gross self-deception because it does not correspond with the Laws of Nature. It was only the intellect which invented differences therein to serve as an excuse, and in order to create a new caricature with which to mutilate the Truth. In its pure form the Truth should bring mankind to awakening and recognition, thus to purity and truthfulness of character, and finally to ascent towards the Light.

Now at last, man, have the courage to be *true* in all you do!  
Also in regard to the kiss. Break through the deceptive images  
your vanity and sensual lust have created! Wake up!

---

## The woman of subsequent Creation.

These words touch upon the sorest spot in Subsequent Creation. *That* spot which needs the greatest change, the most lasting purification.

Although man of Subsequent Creation has made himself the slave of his own intellect, woman has transgressed to a far greater extent.

Equipped with the greatest delicacy of intuitive perceptions, she should easily swing herself up to the purity of Luminous Heights, and form the bridge to Paradise for all humanity. *Woman!* Streams of Light should flow through her. Her entire physical, gross material nature is adapted to this. Woman only needs to will honestly, and all the offspring from her womb *must* be strongly protected and encompassed by the power of the Light even before birth! It could not possibly be otherwise, because every woman through the wealth of her intuitive perception can almost entirely alone influence the spiritual nature of the fruit! Therefore she remains *primarily* responsible for all her descendants!

In addition she has been richly endowed with unlimited possibilities to influence the entire people, indeed even the whole of Subsequent Creation. Her starting-point of the greatest power is, for her, home and hearth! There alone lies her strength, her unlimited might, but not in public life! In home and family her abilities make her queen, at the speakers' podium, however, she is a caricature. From the quiet, intimate home her incisive virtue extends through the whole people, present and future, and pervades everything.

There is nothing upon which her influence cannot absolutely be brought to bear, if she stands *in that place* where her inherent *womanly* abilities fully unfold to blossom. But only if

woman is truly *womanly* does she fulfill the mission which is assigned to her by the Creator. Then she is completely what she can and should be. And it is only genuine womanliness that silently educates the man who, supported by this quiet activity containing undreamt-of power, is able to storm the heavens. Out of an inner naturalness he will then gladly and joyfully seek to protect true womanhood as soon as it only shows itself to be *genuine*.

But womankind of today trample underfoot their real power and their high mission, they blindly overlook them, wantonly destroy all the sacred gifts they carry within them, and instead of being an upbuilding influence they bring about disintegration, thus being the most poisonous element in Subsequent Creation. They push man as well as children down with them into the abyss.

Look at the woman of today! Just let a ray of Light fall upon her with all the relentlessness and dispassion which are always accompanying conditions of Purity.

You will hardly recognize the high qualities of genuine womanhood, those in which there can be unfolded that pure might which is given only to the finer sensitiveness of womanhood, to be used solely as a *blessing*.

A man can never develop this pervading nature. The silent weaving of that invisible power which the Creator allows to move through the Universe, *first* and completely seizes *the woman* with her more delicate intuitive perception. Man receives it only partially, and then converts it into deeds.

And just as the Living Power of the Creator remains invisible to all men, while yet upholding, nourishing, moving and driving the whole Universe, *so* the weaving of all genuine womanhood is intended to be; it is *that for* which she has been created, and *that* is her high, pure and wonderful goal!

The Queen of Primordial Creation is *woman*! All-Mother is another name for her. She is the high ideal of genuine womanhood.

It is ridiculous to use the expression "weak woman", for woman is psychically stronger than man. Not in herself, but through being more closely connected with the Creative Power, which grants her the more delicate intuitive faculty.

And this is just what the woman tries to hide today; she exerts herself to coarsen or suppress it altogether. In boundless vanity and stupidity she surrenders the most beautiful and valuable gift bestowed on her. Through this she makes herself an outcast from the Light, to whom the way back will remain closed.

What has thereby become of these images of queenly womanhood! One must turn away from them with horror. Where does one still find in the woman of today the genuine feeling of shame, which is the expression of the most delicate intuitive perception of *noble* womanhood. It is so grossly distorted that it must be exposed to ridicule.

The woman of today is certainly ashamed to wear a long dress if fashion decrees a short one, but she is not ashamed to expose almost three-quarters of her body, offering it to the glances of all on festive occasions. And of course not only to their glances but also, when dancing, unavoidably to their hands! Without hesitation she would also uncover still more if fashion required it, probably even everything judging by present experiences!

This is no exaggeration. For hitherto we have had enough of this disgraceful conduct. It was not a wrong but, alas, only too true a saying that "woman begins to *dress* herself when she retires for the night"!

Besides, delicate intuitive perceptions also demand a sense of beauty! Unquestionably. But if today the delicacy of womanly intuitive perceptions is still to be assessed on that basis, then affairs are in a deplorable state. Indeed, the type of dress often and plainly enough tells the opposite, and these thinly-stockinged legs of a woman, or even of a mother, are very difficult to reconcile with womanly dignity. Bobbed hair and modern sports for women are no less harmful to genuine

womanhood! Coquetry is the inevitable accompaniment of vain fashion follies, which result in grave dangers for body and soul, to say nothing of the simple domestic happiness. Often enough many a woman prefers the coarse and really insulting flattery of some idler to the faithful labour of her husband.

Thus much, very much more could be cited as visible evidence that a woman of today is lost to her *real* task in this Subsequent Creation! And likewise all the high values entrusted to her, of which she must now give an account. Accursed be these empty human beings! They are not the victims of circumstances, but they have forced these circumstances into being.

All this talk about progress does not alter the fact that these zealots of progress, together with their faithful followers, only sink deeper, ever deeper. Already they have all buried their real values. The majority of womankind no longer deserve to bear the name of honor, woman! And they can never represent nor become men, thus in the end they remain nothing but drones in Subsequent Creation, which must be exterminated according to the inflexible Laws of Nature.

Of all the creatures in Subsequent Creation, woman stands least in the place where she should stand! In her way she has become the saddest figure among all creatures! She simply *had* to become corrupt in soul, since she wantonly sacrifices her most noble intuitive perception, her purest power, to outward, absurd vanity, thereby ridiculing and scorning the decree of her Creator. With such superficiality there can be no salvation; for these women would reject words, or be no longer able to understand and grasp them at all.

Thus out of the horrors the new, true woman must first arise, who has to become the mediator, and therewith also provide the foundation for the new God-willed life and human activity in Subsequent Creation, the woman who will have become free from poison and corruption!

## The distorted tool.

The greatest burden with which the human soul has encumbered itself, and which will hinder every possibility of ascent, is vanity! It has spread ruin throughout the entire Creation. Vanity has become the most powerful poison for the soul, because man has cherished it as a shield and mask for all his shortcomings.

Like a narcotic it always helps to overcome psychic shocks easily. It is of no consideration to earthmen that this is merely an illusion, so long as it affords them satisfaction and therewith the possibility to attain some earthly goal, if only a few minutes of ridiculous self-complacency. It does not need to be genuine, a mere semblance will suffice.

People speak of this vanity, of conceit, spiritual arrogance, malicious joy and so many characteristics of all earthmen in a benevolent and glossing-over way as being snares of the Lucifer principle. All this, however, is nothing but feeble self-excuse. Lucifer had no need whatever to exert himself so very much. It sufficed for him to tempt man to enjoy the fruit of the "tree of knowledge", and thus to indulge in the knowledge, thereby inducing him to over-develop his intellect. All that followed was brought about by man himself.

As the worst outgrowth of the intellect, which is earthbound and gaining the upper hand, vanity must be disposed of. Vanity which is the root of so many evils, such as envy, hatred, slander, and the craving for all kinds of earthly pleasures and possessions. Everything that is ugly in this world is really anchored in vanity, which expresses itself in a great variety of ways.

It was the urge towards outward sham which produced the “caricature of man” so predominant today! The sham being who does not deserve to be called “man”, because in his vanity he undermined the possibility of the necessary spiritual ascent for the sake of sham, stubbornly blocking all the natural connecting lines given to him for his activity and spiritual maturing, and wantonly burying them entirely against the Creator’s Will.

The effect of raising the earthbound intellect to the position of an idol was in itself sufficient to change the entire course which the Creator had designed for man in His Creation.

Lucifer claimed it as a triumph for himself that the human soul had ventured to interfere with its physical body in such a manner as to make it utterly impossible for the soul to fulfill its willed activity in Creation. In order to sharpen the intellect man feverishly promoted the one-sided cultivation of *that* part of the brain which is exclusively devoted to working in the World of Gross Matter, namely the frontal brain. This resulted in the automatic repression and curtailment of the activity of the spiritually *receiving* part of the human brain. Consequently the ability to comprehend spiritual things was rendered more difficult, and in the course of thousands of years earthman even entirely lost *spiritual* understanding. Thus he now stands forsaken and *useless* in Creation. Cut off from the possibility of spiritual recognition and ascent, and consequently also cut off from God!

*That* is the work of Lucifer. He had no need to do anything more. He could then leave earthman to himself, watching him sink from one step to another and thus remove himself further and further from God, all as a consequence of this single act.

For those men who make the genuine effort to *think* objectively just for once, it is not at all difficult to observe this. It is easily understandable that intellectual activity also bears within itself the conceit which comes of an insistence on knowing better, the obstinate perseverance in everything which such activity considers right, for man has “thought” as

far as he was able to think in these matters. He has reached *his* limit in thinking.

Man cannot know that this limit is a *low* one because of the earthbound condition of his frontal brain, and that therefore he *cannot* penetrate any further with his intellect. For *this reason* he will always believe and aver that with *his* limit he has also achieved what is *right*. If he hears something different he will always give greater credence to and consider right what *he* has thought out. This remains the peculiarity of every intellect, and thus of all intellectuals.

As I have already pointed out once, it is the task of one portion of the brain substance *to receive what is spiritual like an antenna*, while the other portion, which produces the intellect, transforms what has been received for use in the Gross Material World. Conversely the frontal brain which produces the intellect is likewise supposed to take in all the impressions from the World of Matter, and so transform them that the back brain can receive them and use them for the further development and maturing of the spirit. Both parts, however, are intended to work *together*, for it has been so decreed by the Creator.

Due to the intervention caused by the one-sided cultivation of the frontal brain, the latter became over-dominating in its activity, thus disturbing the necessary harmonious co-operation between the two brains, and consequently all healthy activity in Creation. The development of the portion meant to receive spiritual impressions lagged behind, while the frontal brain, which became more and more active through training, had long since ceased to receive through the back brain the pure vibrations from Luminous Heights necessary for its work, and for transmission into the World of Gross Matter. Instead it absorbs its working substance for the most part from its material environment and from thought-forms only, which it sends out again remodelled as its own production.

There are only a few people today whose *receptive* portion of the brain co-operates harmoniously at least *to some extent* with

the frontal brain. These people rise above the ordinary level and distinguish themselves through great inventions or through an amazing reliability in their capacity to perceive intuitively, which enables them quickly to grasp many things that can only be attained by others through laborious study.

These are the people of whom it is enviously said that they “receive it in their sleep.” They confirm the saying: “The Lord gives it to His own in their sleep!”

By “His own” are meant those who still use their implements in accordance with the Creator’s decree, i.e., those who are what He wills them to be and who, like the wise virgins, continually replenished the oil in their lamps; for these alone can “recognize” the Bridegroom when He comes. Only they are really “awake”. All the others are “asleep” in their self-imposed limitations. They rendered themselves incapable of “recognising” because they did not keep the requisite “tools” in proper order. Without the *harmonious* co-operation of that portion of the brain meant to receive spiritual impressions, the frontal brain is like a lamp without oil.

Persons of mediumistic ability *cannot* so easily be included in the above category. While it is true that the receptive part of their brain necessarily functions more or less well, during this receptive activity the frontal brain of such mediums, which is meant for the earthly transmission of what is received, becomes fatigued. Due to the determined volition of some dweller in the beyond, the proceedings bring exceptional pressure to bear upon the receptive portion of the medium’s brain, and this consequently calls for a more powerful counter-pressure, which in turn automatically draws blood from the frontal brain, i.e., the warmth which is engendered by movement, with the result that the frontal brain comes to a partial or complete standstill. It co-operates only sluggishly or not at all. This withdrawal of blood would not be necessary if the receptive brain had not been seriously weakened by the suppression.

This gives the cause why the transmission of a medium,

either verbally or in writing, does not appear to be *so well* remodelled for earthly comprehension as it must necessarily be if it is to be *correctly* understood by earthly conceptions, such as computation of space and time.

This also gives the cause why mediums who often foresee earthly events, catastrophes or the like, can rarely in their utterances or writings forecast the earthly time accurately.

A medium receives the *ethereal* impression and passes it on verbally or in writing with little or no alteration at all for the Gross Material World. This naturally results in misunderstanding on the part of those who view things from a purely gross material standpoint. The ethereal impression differs from the gross material effect which manifests later on. For in the World of Ethereal Matter the contrasts are sharper and richer, with corresponding effects. Now it frequently happens that mediums depict nothing but ethereal things without alteration, because the frontal brain cannot follow up with its work of remodelling and is quiescent. Then the *picture* of an event and the *times* given differ, for ethereal conceptions of time also differ from earthly conceptions.

Consequently predictions and descriptions of the same happening will sound different from almost every mediumistic person, depending on the degree of co-operation possible by their frontal brain, which can only in very rare cases achieve the complete transformation necessary for earthly conceptions.

If those dwelling in the beyond, however, are striving to re-establish connection between the World of Ethereal Matter and the World of Gross Matter, which had been severed by earthmen, then no exactions or ridiculously presumptuous judgments on the part of ignoramuses and intellectuals shall be further tolerated, for such efforts must be taken with absolute seriousness, so that what has been spoiled by conceited vanity can again be restored.

All dreamers, zealots and mystics must also be excluded from participating, for in reality they are even more detrimental than the intellectuals.

If both parts of the brain of earthmen could co-operate harmoniously, as the Creator ordained they should, then the transmissions of the mediums would be given in conceptions of time suitable to the World of Gross Matter. As it is, however, the more or less extensive withdrawal of blood from the frontal brain causes derangements and distortions. To correct them requires diligent study through observation. But it deserves neither the ridicule nor the aspersion of fraudulent intentions, such as the spiritually indolent love to suggest.

As in all fields so also in this there will naturally always be people with a pretence to knowledge who bask in their proficiency in these things, and who make themselves completely ridiculous, not to mention others with sordid aims. But such can be found everywhere, and it affords no justification for besmirching the work itself or those seriously engaged upon it in such a flagrant manner.

This kind of conduct which disparages everything that cannot yet be understood is again nothing but an expression of ridiculous vanity, a sign of irresponsible stupidity which has become habitual among these people. But there is nothing that is great or sublime which has *not* in the beginning incurred the enmity of mankind. Not excluding the utterances of Christ Jesus, Who fared no differently Himself!

Such scoffers show only too clearly that they go through life blindfolded, or at least with obvious narrow-mindedness.

Let us take a glance around us. He who goes on his way scoffing at the previsions and forecasts of terrible happenings which accumulate from all sides, and who refuses to see that many of them are already being fulfilled, that natural catastrophes are increasing from one week to the next, *is* either narrow-minded or does not yet want to recognize anything because of a certain fear!

These are the narrow-minded or cowardly who dare not face the facts! In any case they are harmful creatures.

He who does not yet wish to recognize the great economic distress which steadily increases in every country on earth, nor

see in the consequent confusion and helplessness a disastrous blow of fate, just because he himself still happens to have enough to eat and drink, such a person no longer deserves to be called man, for he must be inwardly corrupt and blunted to the suffering of others.

“All this has already happened before!” That is what they thoughtlessly reply! It is true that such events have taken place before, *but singly*, and not in the same conditions as today, not with all this knowledge men boast of and with all the precautionary measures which can now be taken! That is as different as day is from night!

Above all there was never such an *accumulation* of events. In past times a gap of years occurred between natural catastrophes. Such happenings excited all civilised nations and were talked and written about for months, while today they are dismissed from the mind within a few hours at a dance or in everyday conversation. This is a difference which people do not want to see on account of a fear which manifests itself in frivolity! In a wanton refusal to understand.

“The people must not be disturbed!” That is the order which has gone forth. Not out of love for humanity, however, but only for fear that mankind might make demands with which no one could cope any longer!

The attempts made to calm the public are often so crude that none but the *indifferent* humanity, with that obtuseness that prevails today, can listen to them in silence. Nobody bothers to recognize and remonstrate against these efforts as being antagonistic to the Sublime Will of God.

God *wills* that men should recognize these warnings which speak so plainly to them in the march of events! They *are meant* to awaken out of their irresponsible spiritual lethargy in order to reflect and retrace their steps in time, before it becomes necessary that they themselves must experience all the afflictions they can still see their fellow-men suffering. It is rebellion against God on the part of those who try to prevent this with comforting words!

Unfortunately, however, mankind are only too susceptible to every word which tends to absolve them from personal spiritual activity, hence they like to listen to the most peculiar utterances, accept them faithfully, and in fact *desire* to have them; even spread and advocate them rather than be disturbed from their peace and comfort.

And beloved vanity beats time to this, proving the best support of all those weeds which, like vanity itself, grow as the fruit of the intellectual domination which is hostile to God.

Vanity will never permit the recognition of the Truth, no matter where it is to be found. What it achieves in this respect is proved by the attitude of this mankind to the life on earth of the Son of God which, in its true and great simplicity, does not satisfy the vain minds of men. The believer wants “his” Saviour only in accordance with *his own* ideas. Therefore he embellishes the earthly mission of the Son of God, Christ Jesus, with events of his own fabrication!

According to man’s opinion and solely because of his “humility” towards all that is Divine, this Saviour, being the Son of God, must also be absolutely “supernatural”. But in so thinking they do not realize that God Himself is *the Perfection of all that is natural*, and that Creation developed out of this. His perfect Naturalness through His Will. Perfection, however, also bears the unchangeable within itself. If there could possibly be an exception in the Laws of Creation, which correspond with the Will of God, they would be bound to contain a gap and thus lack perfection.

Man’s humility, however, sets itself above all this. For as regards the life of the Son of God on earth, it expects, indeed *demand*s, an alteration in the existing Laws in Creation, thus a trespass against them. And just from Him Who had come to fulfill all the Laws of His Father, as He Himself said! They expect from Him things which must simply be impossible according to the laws of natural development. And just *by that* is His Divinity to manifest Itself, the Divine Which carries the Living Source of the Natural Laws within Itself!

Yes, man's humility can achieve a great deal. But its true face bears the stamp of *exaction*, and not of genuine humility. The greatest presumption and the worst form of spiritual arrogance! Sweet vanity just covers this with a thin cloak which bears a semblance of humility.

It is indeed sad that so often even those who have a really good volition allow themselves, in their initial and quite genuine humility, unwittingly to be carried away by their enthusiasm to commit the most incredible things, as Lorber richly experienced for himself and so many others with him.

They gave play to their imagination, and the subsequent transmissions did great harm.

Thus the child Jesus was already supposed to have performed the greatest miracles, even during the childhood games played by every child who is healthy and spiritually alert. The small birds which he modelled from ordinary clay *came to life* and flew into the air singing merrily, and many other such things. Such happenings are *simply impossible, because they are contrary to all the Divine Laws in Creation!*

Otherwise God the Father might just as well have placed His Son upon the earth as *a fully mature man!* What was the need of a human mother! Why the inconvenience of a birth! Are men unable to think in *simple* terms for once? It is their personal vanity which deters them. In their opinion the life of the Son of God on earth *must* be different. *They* want it this way so that "their" Saviour and "their" Redeemer should not be subject to the Laws of God in Creation. Actually in their view this would not have been too small for *Him*, the Son of God, but it surely would have been for all those who wish to recognize their Redeemer in Him! Human vanity, and nothing else!

They fail to realize how even greater it was for Jesus voluntarily to subject Himself to these Laws by becoming man in order to bring the Truth in the Word to those who, through the distortion of their earthly tool, had wantonly rendered themselves incapable of receiving and recognising the Truth of their own accord. They were much too conceited to see Christ's

Mission fulfilled in the Word Itself. For them, vain men that they are, *greater* things had to come to pass!

And when the Son of God suffered physical death upon the cross, dying just as any man must die when crucified because it corresponds with the Divine Laws in Creation, when His human body could not simply descend unharmed from the cross, then vanity had no other choice but to assert that the Son of God had to die in this way, that in order to bear the sins of the poor little men *He did not wish to step down from the cross*, so that they can now be joyfully received into the Kingdom of Heaven!

And thus the foundation was laid for the later belief in the *necessity* of the death on the cross, that great and tragic error prevalent among Christians today, which is entirely due to the vanity of men.

If there is no longer any man who wishes to recognize that such thinking can only arise out of shameless conceit, to the joy of Lucifer who presented man with vanity in order to ruin him, then there is no longer any help for humanity and all is in vain. Even the greatest and strongest warnings in Nature cannot arouse them from their spiritual sleep. Why does not man think any further!

If it would have been possible for Christ to have risen from the dead in the flesh, then it follows that one could just as logically expect it to be possible for Him to descend to the earth already matured in the flesh, from that sphere to which He was supposed to have ascended physically at His resurrection. That this did not happen, however, that on the contrary from the very beginning He had to live through the phases that every human body is subject to from birth onwards, with all their great and minor troubles, and also face the many other needs of His earthly life, clearly enough speaks against this conception. Quite apart from the fact that it could not be otherwise because the Son of God also had to submit Himself to the Perfect Laws of His Father in Creation.

He who wishes to enter Creation and live upon the earth is subject to the Immutable Laws of Creation.

All assertions to the contrary are inventions, created in their enthusiasm by men themselves, and then bequeathed as the truth. The same happened with all traditions, regardless of whether they were passed on verbally or in writing. Human vanity plays a great role in this. Very seldom indeed do they issue from the human hand, voice or even brain without something being added. Second-hand records never constitute a proof on which posterity should rely. Man only needs to observe current events closely. Let us take just one example which received world-wide publicity.

Newspapers in all countries *published reports* of the mysterious “castle” on Vomperberg, of which I was supposed to be the owner! I was described as “the Messiah of the Tyrol” or “the Prophet of Vomperberg”! With great and prominent headlines, even in the leading newspapers which wish to be taken seriously. There were weird and mysterious accounts of numerous underground tunnels, of temples, of knights both in black and silver armour, of an unheard-of cult, also of great parks, automobiles, stables, and whatever else could be invented by the diseased brains that can report such things. Details were quoted, some based on beautiful fantasy and others so disgustingly filthy that anyone giving a little thought to the matter could not fail immediately to recognize the lies and malevolence behind it. —

And there was *not one word of truth* in any of these reports!

If, however, after centuries or, better still, in thousands of years to come, some person reads one of these evil and scurrilous articles... who can blame him for wanting to believe it and saying: “Here it is, reported and published! The same in nearly every newspaper and language!”

And all this was nothing but a reflection of the decadent brains of this time! With their own works they stamped themselves with the proof of their depravity, ready for the coming Judgment!

This happened even *today* in spite of every facility for speedily obtaining accurate information *before* publication! What must it have been like in former times, in the days of Jesus, when everything could only be passed on by word of mouth! How greatly subject to alteration are such verbal transmissions. This applies equally to written records and letters. It takes on the characteristics of an avalanche. Already partially misunderstood at the start, in this way there always arises something different to the original facts. How much of what has been heard has been written down at second, third or even tenth hand only, but which has now come to be regarded as the original basis. Surely men should know their fellow-men!

As soon as they can no longer make use of the scaffolding of their intellect, which is the case with all truth *on account of its great simplicity*, they are not satisfied. They either reject or change it in a manner that suits their beloved vanity.

For this reason "mysticism" is preferred to the simple truth. The great craving for "mysticism", for everything mysterious, which is engrained within every person is vanity, and not the urge for truth as is so often depicted. *Self-complacency* constructed the unhealthy way upon which hosts of idle enthusiasts can sun themselves, and upon which many who are spiritually indolent allow themselves leisurely to drift.

In all these matters the vanity of man plays a devastating and dismal role, dragging him tenaciously and irretrievably down to destruction, because he has come to love it!

He would be seized with consternation if he could but once master himself sufficiently to reflect about it objectively and without self-complacency. But again that is just the difficulty: he cannot do anything without being self-complacent! Thus many will probably have to remain in this state until they perish from it!

This fact in all its tragedy is the result which, consequent upon the Fall of Man, was forcibly brought about by the prevention of the harmonious development of the brain in the

earthly body entrusted to him. The distortion of the tool indispensable to man in this Gross Material World through its one-sided development has thereby exacted its revenge. Now man stands *inharmoniously* in Creation with his gross material tool, his physical body, incapable of performing the task he has to fulfill therein, rendered useless by himself!

To eradicate the root of all this evil the intervention of God is necessary! Every other power and authority, however great, is inadequate to achieve this. It constitutes the greatest and most devastating contamination in man's false volition that ever found its way into Creation. *Everything* on this earth will have to collapse before any improvement can come about, because there is nothing in existence which is not already irretrievably pervaded by it!

---

**All that is dead in Creation shall be awakened, so that it may pass Judgment upon itself!**

**T**he day of Judgment! Every prophecy that is connected with this proclaims the resurrection of all the dead for the Final Judgment. But this mankind have again introduced an error into the concept of the expression; for it is not meant to denote: Resurrection of *all* the dead, but resurrection of *all that is* dead! That is: The animating of all that is without movement in Creation, so that it may become *alive* for the Divine Judgment, either to be strengthened in its activity or annihilated!

Today nothing remains motionless; for the Living Power that now flows with greater intensity through all Creation urges, presses and forces everything into motion. Thereby it grows stronger, including that which has hitherto been inactive or dormant. It is awakened, strengthened, and thus *must* become active; in this awakening activity it is, so to speak, dragged before the Light, even if it wished to hide. It can also be said that it comes to the Light of itself and must reveal itself; it can no longer remain dormant, wherever it may be. As the popular saying is: It comes to light!

Everything becomes life and activity in this entire Creation through the new penetration of the Light! The Light thereby exerts a powerful attraction... whether that which rests or perhaps even hides in this Creation wishes it or not; and finally it will also come into contact with this Light, it cannot escape It, even if it had the wings of the morning, no place in the entire Creation can grant it protection from the Light. There is nothing which will not be lit up.

But in the movement of being attracted, anything that cannot endure the radiation, thus anything that is not already voluntarily striving towards this Light, must be shattered and burnt up by the Light. What is attuned to the Light, however, will blossom and grow strong in the purity of its volition!

So is it also with all the *qualities* of the souls of these earthmen. What has hitherto appeared to be dead, what has slumbered in them, often unknown to men themselves, will awaken and become strong under the Power, will develop into thought and deed, so that according to its nature it will in manifesting judge itself by the Light! Reflect, whatever is slumbering *in you* will come to life! Therein lies the resurrection of all that is dead! The Living Judgment! The Day of Judgment!

Then you must deal with all that is within you, must purify yourselves, or you will perish with the evil if it is able to become too powerful in you. It will then *hold* you fast, break over your head with foaming and bubbling, to sweep you down with it into the abyss of disintegration; for it can no longer exist in the radiance of Divine Power! — —

To you I have now given the Word showing the way that, in the awakening of this Creation, leads you unerringly to the Luminous Heights, the way that will not let you fall, whatever happens and tries to flare up within you! If you have turned your gaze to the Light in loyal conviction, if you have rightly grasped my Word and absorbed it in your souls, then you will calmly ascend out of the chaos, cleansed and purified, free from everything that might once have hindered you from entering Paradise.

Watch and pray, therefore, that you do not let your clear outlook be dimmed by vanity and conceit, the most dangerous snares for these earthmen! Beware! As you have now prepared the soil within you, so will it happen to you! —

## The Child.

When people ask themselves what is *the right way* to bring up their children they must first of all consider and adjust themselves *to the child*. The personal wishes of the educator in this matter must be put completely aside. The child must go *its own* way on earth, but not that of its educator.

It is well meant if an educator sincerely wishes to put at the disposal and use of his child *those* experiences which he himself had to undergo in his life on earth, with a view to sparing the child much in the way of disappointment, loss and pain. But in most cases he achieves very little.

In the end he has to recognize that all his efforts and good intentions in this matter have been utterly in vain, for at a certain time the maturing child quite suddenly and unexpectedly goes its own way, and in decisions of importance to itself has forgotten or disregarded all admonitions.

The educator is not justified in bewailing this, for with all his good volition he entirely failed to realize that the child he wished to educate has by no means to follow in his footsteps, in order *properly* to fulfill the purpose of its existence here on earth.

All the experiences which the educator could or was obliged to undergo in the past were intended and necessary *for him*. They were therefore only of use *to him*, provided he was capable of absorbing them in the right manner.

The experiences of the educator, however, cannot bring the same benefit *to the child* because, for the purpose of its own development, the child's spirit must pass through entirely different experiences that accord with the threads of fate connected with *it*.

Not two of the many men on earth follow the *same* path for the purpose of furthering their spiritual maturing!

The experiences of one man are therefore *spiritually* valueless for any other man. And if one person exactly follows and *imitates* the footsteps of another he has just frittered away his own time on earth!

Until the child reaches maturity you shall only prepare the *tool* which it needs for its life on earth, and nothing else, namely, the physical body with all its gross material functions.

Exercise the greatest care to see that you do not distort or even completely disable it through excesses or one-sidedness! Next to the necessary physical training, schooling in the right activity of its brains plays an important part. The first period of this training ends with the beginning of maturity, and not until then must the second period begin, which is to teach the spirit to control the entire body *correctly*.

Until the spirit breaks through in the years of their maturity the children of earthmen have *only a predominantly animistic* intuitive perception! Naturally they are already set aglow inwardly by the spirit, i.e., they are not merely like noble animals in the highest state of development, but already very much more. Nevertheless the *animistic* prevails and is therefore decisive. It is absolutely imperative that this be borne in mind by every educator, and the basis of an education strictly adjusted *in accordance with it*, if the result is to become complete and without harmful effects on the child. The child must first receive full understanding in the great activity of all that is animistic, to which at this time it is still more open than to that which is spiritual. In this way its eyes will open in joy and purity to the beauties of Nature which it sees around it!

The streams, the mountains, the forests, the meadows and the flowers, as well as the animals, will then become familiar to every child, who will be securely anchored in this realm, which is to provide the field of activity during its sojourn on earth. It will then stand quite firmly and fully conscious in

Nature, in the whole world of animistic activity, full of understanding and thus well-equipped and quite ready to work with its spirit also, uplifting and furthering to an even greater extent all that surrounds it like a huge garden! Only *thus* can it become a true gardener of God in Creation.

*On this basis* and not otherwise must each maturing child stand when the spirit breaks through, healthy in body and soul! Joyfully developed and prepared on *that* soil to which every child belongs. The brain must not be one-sidedly overburdened with things that will never be needed during its life on earth, things which do cost great pains to acquire, consequently wasting its strength and weakening body and soul!

If, however, a preliminary education already takes all his strength, then man has nothing left for his real task!

With the *right* training and preparation for real life, however, work becomes only a joy, a pleasure, for then everything in Creation is also able to vibrate in full harmony, thus supporting the maturing of youth by furthering and strengthening it.

But how senselessly men act towards their children! What crimes are they guilty of against posterity!

Just when the spirit within the young girl's body breaks forth so that it can make use of the gross material and ethereal tools entrusted and given to it, in order that she may become a real human being, this young representative of womanhood is dragged off to earthly pleasures... with the idea of getting her quickly linked up with a man!

The spirit, the true human being, which has yet to face earthly activity, thus never gets a start. Becoming paralysed, it must watch how the earthly intellect, which was exclusively and wrongly trained, expends itself in nothing but glittering nonsense in order to *appear* clever and witty and thus cover the lack of true spirit. It must observe how the intellect becomes implicated in all sorts of impossible things, thereby requiring and squandering the entire strength the tool is able

to give. Finally the woman becomes a mother without ever having been a real human being!

Thus there is no field left for the spirit, no possibility for it to become active!

And things are not much better for the young man! He is weary and fatigued from over-burdening study in schools, his nerves overwrought. He provides only a diseased soil for the spirit breaking through, a brain distorted by and satiated with useless things. Thus the spirit cannot work as it should, and in turn cannot develop itself properly, but is stunted and completely smothered by the weight of the dross. There only remains an unquenchable yearning to give some inkling as to the presence of the immured and suppressed human spirit. Finally even this longing is lost in the mad whirl of earthly haste and greed which is first meant to act as a bridge over this spiritual vacuum, and which later on becomes a habit and a need.

*This* is the manner in which man *now* goes through his earthly life! And for the most part the faulty upbringing is to blame for it.

If man wishes to stand aright here on earth the first part of his training, i.e., of his education, must absolutely be changed! Let children really be children in these matters! Never allow them to enjoy equal privileges with grown-ups, nor indeed expect that grown-ups should adjust themselves to children! You are giving them a strong poison by doing so. For the spirit of the children has not yet broken through from within, they are still largely dominated by their animistic nature, and therefore they are not on a level with grown-ups!

Children feel this very distinctly. Therefore do not allow them to play a role which deprives them of this consciousness. You only make them unhappy! They become unsteady upon the firm soil of the childhood which is their rightful due, and which is ordained for them in Creation. But they can never feel at home on an equal footing with grown-ups, because they lack the principal quality which entitles them and makes them able

to exist on that level; the complete connection of their spirits with the outer world through their bodies.

You rob them of the genuine childhood to which they are fully entitled according to the Laws of Creation, and which they even need urgently, because the experiences of childhood are absolutely necessary for the later development of the spirit. Instead you often allow them to mingle with grown-ups in whose company they cannot move freely since they lack every quality to do so. Such children become unsteady and precocious, which naturally only appears repulsive to grown-ups, giving an unhealthy impression, and disturbing pure intuition and all harmony. For a precocious child is like a fruit the kernel of which is still unripe, whereas the shell is already about to grow old!

Beware of this, parents and educators, for it is a crime against the Laws of God! Let children remain as children! Children that know they are *in need* of the protection of all grown-ups.

The task of the grown-up is only to furnish the *protection* which he is able and also is duty bound to give where the child *deserves* it!

Unless you yourselves destroy this Law of Nature the child, in its animistic state, quite distinctly senses the need of the grown-up's protection and consequently looks up to him, by way of balance voluntarily showing him the respect which implies the desire for support!

But in most cases you do destroy this Law! You tear every child out of its quite natural intuitive perceiving through the false methods you apply to them, very often just to satisfy your own desires, since for the most part the child is a lovable plaything to you which *you* wish to enjoy, and which you try to make prematurely intelligent so that you may be proud of it!

All this is of no benefit *to the child*, but only harmful! In the days of its youth, which must be considered as the first stage of its development, already starting with the earliest years, you have to fulfill *more serious* duties towards the child. Not your

wishes, but the Laws of Creation must be the decisive factor in this matter! And the decree that every child must *be* a child in all things!

A human being who has really been a child will grow up to give full value as an adult. *But only then!* And a normal child can be solely recognized *by the fact* that it has a genuine respect for grown-ups in *its personal intuitive perception*, which *thus* precisely corresponds to the Law of Nature.

All this every child already bears within itself as a gift of God! It will develop this if you do not bury it. Therefore keep children away when grown-ups converse together, for they do not belong there! In this also they must always know that they are children, and as such not yet of full value, not yet matured for their work on earth. Much more is contained in these apparent trifles than you think today. They fulfill a basic law in Creation which you often disregard. Children, *all* of whom still stand predominantly in the animistic, *are in need* of this as an outward support, in accordance with the Law of the Animistic! —

Grown-ups must give protection to children! Therein lies more than the words alone indicate. But they must grant protection only where the child deserves it. Children must return something to balance this protection, so that they may already learn *through experiencing* that *there must be equilibrium everywhere*, and that *therein* lie harmony and peace. This also *is demanded* by the nature of the animistic.

It is just *this*, however, which many parents and educators have often neglected, although it is the fundamental condition for a proper upbringing, if such is to be carried out in accordance with the Primordial Laws of Creation. Everyone lacking the conception of unconditional equilibrium is bound to waver and fall, no matter whether sooner or later. And the consciousness of the unavoidable necessity of this conception must be hammered into the minds of children from their very first days so that it becomes *as much* their own, as much a part of their flesh and blood, and *as natural* as the feeling for

physical balance which they develop, and which is based on the same fundamental law!

If this principle is carefully applied in all education, there will at last be free men who are pleasing to God!

But just this most indispensable and main fundamental Law in this Creation was disregarded by men everywhere! Except for the sense of physical balance this law is not observed and practiced in the field of education. This necessarily brings about one-sidedness of an unhealthy kind, causing every man to flounder about psychically on his course through Creation and continually to stumble and fall!

It is sad that this intuitive sense of equilibrium is only accepted as necessary for all movements of the physical body, but does not receive the proper care and is often altogether neglected, in things psychical and spiritual. The child must be carefully guided in these matters by imposing external restrictions upon him from the first weeks. To neglect this brings about dreadful consequences for the entire existence of every human being through the Law of Reciprocal Action!

Just look around you! In the life of the individual, as well as in the family, in state activities and in the attitude of the churches, indeed everywhere, there is a serious lack of consideration in this and *only* in this! And yet you find this law manifesting clearly everywhere, if only you wish to observe it! Even the physical body indicates it; you can find it in regard to food-intake and waste-elimination also, indeed, in the various kinds of food you eat if the body is to keep well, in the balance between work and rest in all its details, quite apart from the afore-mentioned Law of Equilibrium which enables every individual body to move, and only thus to become fit for its task on earth. This law also holds and sustains *the entire world*, for only through the balance of equilibrium can stars and globes pursue their respective courses and maintain themselves.

And you, you little men in Creation, no more than a speck of dust before the Sublime Creator, you overthrow this law by

refusing to heed and obey it fully.

For a time it was possible for you to distort it, but now it jerks back into its original form, and in doing so it must hit you painfully!

Out of this one fault has grown all the affliction which hits Creation today! It is also the cause of dissatisfaction and rebellion within nations where a proper balance is lacking on the one side. However, this is nothing but a continuation and development of *those* mistakes which the educators make in regard to youth!

The new kingdom, the Kingdom of God on earth, will create equilibrium and with it a new generation! But before it can be understood force will have to be used to bring about the right conception of equilibrium. It will bring it about forcibly by remodelling all that is distorted, a process which is already taking place, because all that is false and unhealthy must run itself to death, urged on by the invincible power and force of the Light! Then will follow the gift of the true conception of all the Primordial Laws of Creation. Strive to recognize them correctly already, and you will stand aright in this Creation! This in turn will result in bringing you nothing but happiness and peace.

---

## Woman and her vocation.

A heavy burden presses upon all earthly womanhood since the delusion was spread abroad that woman's main vocation is motherhood. Some people look upon girls who do not marry, and also upon women whose marriages are childless, with false pity and frequently even with hidden malicious joy. The expression "old maid" or "elderly spinster", which is really an *honorable name*, is frequently used with an undertone of mockery and a pitying shrug of the shoulders, as if marriage were the highest goal for woman on earth, indeed her absolute vocation.

That this false opinion has gained a foothold and spread so devastatingly over thousands of years is one of the supreme achievements of Lucifer, who in aiming at the debasement of womanhood delivered the most crushing blow at true humanity. For look around you! The evil outgrowths of this false opinion have from the very start trained the thoughts of parents and girls to concentrate upon earthly security through marriage! Everything is directed towards this; even a girl's education, all her thinking, all her speaking and all her activities from the days of her childhood until she has attained maturity. Then the opportunity is sought or offered, or if this fails is even brought about by force, to make acquaintances with the final aim of marriage!

It is thoroughly hammered into the girl that her life will be joyless unless she can go through it at the side of a husband, and that otherwise she will never be taken seriously! Wherever a member of the female sex turns she sees the glorification of *earthly* love, with maternal bliss as its highest aim! Thus, due to artificial pressure, the idea is formed that every girl who

cannot achieve this is to be pitied and has partly wasted her time on earth! From the moment of her birth all thoughts, all desires and all plans are aimed at this, which is so deeply engrained as to become a part of her very flesh and blood. But all this is a very clever move by Lucifer with the purpose of debasing human womanhood.

This constraint must now be removed from womanhood on earth if they are to ascend! Only from the ruins of the present delusion can greatness and purity arise! The God-Willed *noble* womanhood could not unfold through this most cunning of Lucifer's plots against the human spirits, *all* of whom could originally have done nothing but strive towards the Light had they unerringly followed and submitted to the guidance of the Primordial Laws of Creation.

Become *spiritual* at last, you men, for you are of the spirit! Recognize and also have the courage to accept the fact that maternal bliss, which was considered the highest goal and most sacred destiny of earthly womanhood, is rooted only *in the animistic!* Woman's most sacred vocation, however, lies much higher, lies *in the spiritual!*

Not *once* did the thought occur to you that everything you have praised so far was merely meant for the earth, for life on earth, with all its restrictions! For marriage and procreation exist *only* in the gross material part of this Subsequent Creation, whereas womanhood exists in all Creation. This fact should give you cause to consider! But no, this was expecting too much of you!

Just as in the case of wild animals which you try gradually to drive into a carefully-built and well-concealed path which they cannot distinguish from the free and beautiful forest, but which leads them into captivity, so have you always driven your daughters only towards the one goal... towards the man! As if that was their main destiny!

The delusion created by this false view was akin to placing barriers to right and left, which ultimately also prevented the poor children from thinking in any but this one direction. And

many a girl "escaped" by suddenly embarking upon a marriage which she contracted with great reluctance, only because she refused to fall a miserable prey in her old age to the consequences of this wrong opinion, which hang like threatening swords over every girl's head and still exist today.

When in the first upheavals of a new epoch youth wished to flee from this unhealthy situation which, however, they had not recognized for what it really was, this merely indicated an inner contradiction developing quite subconsciously, a rebellion of the spirit which had been hitherto so suppressed. Unfortunately they slipped into something much worse, into the idea of free companionship and thus also of companionate marriage. Although in a different form, it is basically still the same excrescence of Lucifer's idea aiming at the *debasement* of womanhood. No purity could arise therefrom because the Darkness lays a sinister spell upon everyone, holding them firmly in its grip and oppressing them continually.

That which was false *was bound* to remain, even when it appeared in a different form. The stroke that will liberate true womanhood can now only come from on High. Mankind themselves are unable to achieve it because they entangled and enslaved themselves too much!

Neither laws nor new forms can help here any longer. Salvation lies only in an understanding of all the Primordial Laws of Creation. At last you must accept *the truth* as it really *is*, and not as you imagined it to be because you were so susceptible to Lucifer's promptings.

I *break* this spell which has had quite a disastrous hold on earthly womanhood until this day! I send a ray of Light into the darkness which still holds you captive and confounds you.

Human womanhood was debased and dishonored by the thought that every woman is supposed to consider motherhood as the principal purpose of her existence! For she was thereby degraded and bound to the *animistic*! Lucifer had no need to do more than disseminate this idea, which was thus absorbed and gradually developed into the definite belief still dominating the

human mind today, forcing it into the *very* direction that prevents the spirit from soaring upwards towards Pure and Luminous Heights!

Thus the dirty fists of the Luciferian henchmen oppress the whole of earthly womanhood. Away with them! Free yourselves now from the clutches that hold you down! For this belief alone has brought in its train everything which must dishonor woman. The beautiful little cloak of sacred motherhood, the high praise bestowed upon mother-love, can never alleviate this pressure of the dark fists, nor make these black fists luminous.

Listen to my words: Through this belief earthwoman was made into a mother-animal! Wake up, you girls, you women and you men, so that you may at last recognize the absolute horror of this idea! One of your Sacred Rights is at stake!

Lucifer could well be proud of this achievement! I wrench it from the hands of his minions! And I throw its wreckage at his feet!

I have already stated once before that through womanhood Lucifer sought to deliver the most crushing blow against real humanity and, alas... he *succeeded* only too well!

Follow for yourselves the thought he has sown among you with great cunning and malice: He deceitfully flattered you with the thought that motherhood was woman's highest task. But to attain to motherhood the *earthly instinct* is needed, and it is *this latter* which he wanted to place on a higher pedestal through the thought of motherhood, so that it would become the dominant factor and force the thinking of mankind on earth into this *one* direction. A plan which was conceived with admirable cunning. He played upon your feelings as carefully as a first class artiste plays upon his instrument, dangling motherhood and mother-love alluringly before your eyes as a shield for his intentions, so that you were unable to recognize what was lurking in the background! And he succeeded *completely*.

You heard the alluring tune vibrating *purely* within you, but

you overlooked the dirty, greedily clutching hands that brought forth the melody! The highest goal and most sacred calling! That was before your eyes, you saw it bright and luminous. But in spite of all its brightness it is merely the purest radiation of the *animistic*, not of the spiritual! The *animal* is set aglow and attains its greatest height in motherhood, becoming merged in it and yielding itself *completely* to it, because the animal itself originates in the Animistic Sphere! It attains greatness therein and becomes bright and luminous! Man, however, possesses something still stronger which should and must stand *above* the animistic if he wishes to be a complete human being... the spirit!

Being of the spirit he cannot and must not remain in the animistic. He must refrain from making the highest of *his* goals something which belongs unconditionally to the Animistic Realm, and which must forever remain there in accordance with the Primordial Laws of Creation! With exceptional cleverness Lucifer thus laid his snare, forcing the human spirit into the animistic and holding it captive there. This was achieved all the more easily because man saw all the beauty and luminosity which emanates from everything that is pure, and which is therefore also a part of the highest animistic radiation.

Yes, motherhood is certainly sacred, and its crown mother-love, but nevertheless this is not the highest goal of *human* womanhood, not its mission in Creation. Motherhood is rooted in the animistic and is only set aglow by a pure volition. Even if this is not always so with human beings, it is definitely always the case with animals.

In spite of this, however, motherhood remains within the highest radiation of the animistic, which alone can directly coalesce with gross matter. But only he who has thoroughly studied and absorbed the Grail Message will understand me *fully* here.

What Lucifer intended with his scheming came to pass, for he knew precisely what would be the consequences of

distorting the Divinely-instituted Primordial Laws, which he thereby achieved through men themselves. He only gave men a false goal which was nicely suited to their spiritual indolence and weaknesses, and all their thinking and perceiving were adjusted accordingly, causing them inevitably to take wrong paths.

Thus Lucifer only *shifted the points*, and the catastrophe of derailment was bound to follow! Lucifer had merely flattered the physical instinct in a deceitful manner, thereby elevating it to an immense force and power.

Furthermore, he knew very well that the intellectual development of man was bound to strengthen this powerful instinct through the corresponding effect of thoughts which may increase the pernicious desires to fever heat. Thus man finally became completely enslaved within, something which can never happen to an animal!

The beautiful word "motherhood" remained nothing but the deceptive shield which Lucifer deceitfully conjured up in your imagination. However, the strengthening of the physical instinct, which was the inevitable consequence, was his goal. As he had plainly foreseen, it finally developed into morbidity, enslaved the minds of all people of both sexes, and turned for many into the baffling sphinx, the form in which the unhealthy instinct shows itself today, and against which man so often fights a losing battle.

The root of the problem, as also its solution, lies solely in this Luciferian thought, which was thrown out to you in defiance of the Laws which the Will of God instituted in Creation for your benefit and for the general development. And you, you reached out for it and were caught on it like a hungry fish on the angler's hook, just because you found pleasure in it! As for the male sex, its effect was like a serious and incurable plague!

*In all truth* grasp and hold within yourselves the idea of pure, sublime womanhood, and then you will be free from these heavy chains that caused you such unspeakable suffering and such anguish to your souls. Through this Luciferian thought all

earthly womanhood was robbed of what is noblest, woman became the puppet and the prey of degraded male beings and, what is more, a lovable mother-animal even to the serious-minded man. The air then became charged with this false belief, as the popular saying goes; in reality it came to life and took form in the Ethereal World, hovering around you constantly and influencing you continually until you could not help but absorb it.

I sever this evil connection, for it is false!

Only when she has become truly conscious of her womanhood does woman stand at the *highest* place *spiritually*! And her task is not primarily dedicated to motherhood! As I have already stated motherhood exists for your earthly body only, that is all! Yet womanhood is to be found in all spheres, even in the *Primordial Realm* among the Primordial Beings, at the *highest* point! But it is *true* womanhood in all its sublime, unapproachable dignity!

It may seem as if I am taking much away from you when I now say that motherhood belongs only to the *Animistic* Realm! It is a keen cut that I am now forced to make if I am to help you. Motherhood *remains* within the realm of the animistic, and manifests on that plane. If this were her highest goal, woman would be in a very sad plight.

Just observe the animal. In truth it is very often much stronger in its instinctive mother-love than a human being can ever be. For it gives itself *wholly* in everything it does, because it acts only on impulse and without any pondering. Thus it readily faces death for its young and fears no enemy. The self-same basis is also stipulated for human mother-love by the Laws of Nature, unless it is suppressed through intellectual thinking. But it remains bound up with the body, and the body with all its radiations is animistic and not otherwise.

It is true that some human beings have already felt what is right in these matters. Not without reason is it said even today that only *that* woman is a true mother who is also able to become a friend to her children at the proper time.

What wisdom lies in this! When a mother can become a friend to her maturing daughter! This means that as soon as the girl outgrows her childhood the mother must also change or lay aside her motherly ways altogether, if she wishes to stride onward with her child, whose spirit is breaking through in the process of maturing, as I have already clearly explained in my lecture on generative power.

Up to that moment the child is exclusively dominated by the animistic, and the original mother-love fully satisfied it. When the spirit breaks through, however, it demands *more* than merely the motherhood which has so far prevailed. The spirit has little connection with such motherhood, because spiritual heredity can never take place; instead the spirit in each child's body is a stranger even to the mother, and it can only feel any link through homogeneity.

The *more* that the spirit then demands can only be given to the girl by *that* mother who at this time becomes her friend, who thus connects herself *spiritually* with her daughter! That is a process which it was not possible to set in motion either at birth or during childhood, but which only develops with the break-through of the spirit at the time of the girl's maturing, with which motherhood *and* mother-love have nothing to do. *Not until then* is there established in such cases a spiritual relationship standing higher than the mother-love, which is rooted only in the Animistic Sphere.

Where such a spiritual relationship proves impossible there is bound to be a separation after maturity, just as is the case with animals. Among human beings, however, this remains an *inward* separation; it seldom becomes visible, because *externally* conditions and education maintain a sham bridge which does not exist among animals.

The highest task in the life of woman on earth is the same as it has always been in the higher regions; to ennoble her surroundings and ensure a continuous flow of radiation from the Light, which only woman through the delicacy of her intuitive perception can give! Ennoblement, however, is bound

to bring about ascent towards the Luminous Heights! That is spiritual law! For this reason the existence of *genuine* womanhood is alone enough irrevocably to ensure the ascent, ennoblement and continuous purity of the entire Creation.

Lucifer knew this, because it is contained in the Laws of Creation, and he tried to cut off the development of this natural process with the harmful and false basic idea which, in an enticing manner, portrayed the instinct of the physical body and its effects as of the highest value. He thereby poured poison into all *true* humanity, which thereupon unsuspectingly, and to its own detriment, distorted the purely upward movement of the straight paths of these Primordial Laws of Creation, so that they were compelled to bring about a standstill and thereafter lead downwards, thus bringing harm instead of blessing to all human spirits!

He knew what he was doing thereby. By submerging and losing themselves in the animistic, women on earth could not develop properly; they were bound to become confused about themselves and their main vocation, and thus even brought confusion into the Animistic World because they do not belong there.

Thus woman's principal task also here on earth, in the World of Matter, is to ennoble her environment! Coming as she does from above, holding herself above with her delicate intuitive perception, and thus leading upwards in turn, she forms *the anchorage of man with the Light*, the support which he needs for his work in Creation. No marriage is required to accomplish this, not even an acquaintanceship or personal meeting. The mere *existence* of woman on earth already brings about fulfillment.

Man stands in Creation facing outward ready for battle while woman, in shielding his back, maintains the connection with the Light, thus constituting the core, the supply of power and the strengthening. Wherever decay is permitted to creep into this core, however, the front is also lost. Bear this in mind at all times! Nor is it then of any avail for woman to try and place

herself at the front beside the man, where she does not belong. Her delicate intuitive perception only hardens through such a struggle, and thus the highest ability and power once bestowed upon her as her own becomes exhausted, and everything *must* fall into ruin!

It is known to everybody, however, that even in the most remote regions of the earth men immediately pull themselves together and try to behave in a more respectful manner as soon as even one woman comes near them, with whom they need not necessarily exchange a single word.

Such is the effect of the mere presence and appearance of a woman! Even in its curtailed expression this quite clearly reveals the mystery of woman, the power and the sustaining force that emanate from her in accordance with the Laws in Creation, which are not directly related to procreation on earth. Procreation is for the most part animistic in character.

You girls and you women, *you* must first of all remember that you are the bearers in this Creation of the highest tasks, with which God has endowed *you*! Neither marriage nor motherhood are your *highest* goal, sacred as they are! You stand alone and firmly for yourselves as soon as you stand *aright*.

How ridiculous and disgusting will the present fashion craze appear, to which you have always readily and even unconditionally submitted. Every creation thrown onto the market for the sake of pointless money-making by the fashion designers, you seized like an animal to which titbits are thrown!

You will live to recognize the disgrace contained in this, even in the reception you gave to the sometimes quite questionable aberrations from the concepts of true beauty, not to mention purity at all. Purity has always been soiled in these matters with an impudence that could not be further increased. Years afterwards you will still blush with shame at the recognition of how deep you really sank in this respect!

What is still worse is the conscious and deliberate exposure of the body which should be sacred to everyone, as fashion so

often demands. Only the basest form of vanity could cause woman to sink to such a depth. And this vanity, which has long since been proverbially associated with woman, is but the abominable caricature of the effect womanhood should *really* have in accordance with the Divine Laws.

Man, however, is just as guilty as woman! It is only necessary for him to show contempt for such things, and woman would soon stand aside, solitary and ashamed, even if her first reaction was unjust anger. But instead man welcomed the fall of woman because she therewith corresponded more nearly to the weaknesses and desires which he already carried within himself, increased to a state of morbidity by the Luciferian idea.

Woman can never fulfill her vocation on earth while she has any vanity, which always involves shamelessness, *but only through that grace* with which *she alone* is endowed as the most beautiful spiritual gift! *Every look, every movement, every word of a woman must bear the stamp of her nobility of soul!* Therein lies her task, as well as her power and her greatness!

Develop yourselves and take advice *in these matters*, so as to let that become *genuine* which you now seek to substitute with base vanity! It is *grace* which holds your earthly power, it is grace which you must cultivate and use. Grace, however, cannot be contemplated without purity! The very word, in its conception, directs thought and mind towards purity and the heights; it has a commanding, inviolable and sublime effect! *Grace* makes the woman! Grace alone holds true beauty for *every* age and every physical form, for it *makes* everything beautiful, because it is the expression of a pure *spirit*, from which it issues! Grace, therefore, must not be confused with the physical liteness which originates in the animistic.

It is *thus* that you shall and *must* stand in Creation! Therefore become spiritually free within yourselves, you women and girls! The woman who is content to live *merely* as a mother in her life on earth has missed her real purpose and vocation!

## The Kingdom of the Millennium.

Like a legend it floats in the minds of many people who know of the prophecy, but it is vague, without form, because no one knows how to come to the right conception of it!

The Millennium! Wiseacres have tried again and again to put forward an explanation of how this great period of peace and joy that is implied in it is going to be realized. But it has never yet been possible to come any nearer the truth! They have all gone wrong because they have assigned far too great a role to earthmen, as always happens with everything men think. Moreover, they approved of and built upon existing concepts, and thus every one of these theories had to be regarded as wrong from the start, no matter what its nature.

And then man forgot the principal thing! He did not take into account the condition that was also foretold, that *before* the thousand-year Reign of Peace *everything* has to become *new* in the Judgment! That is the essential foundation for the New Kingdom. It cannot be built up on the existing soil! *Everything* that is old has first to become new!

This does not mean, however, that the old is to be revitalised in its existing form, but the expression “new” implies a change, a transformation of the old!

In his pondering man failed to take this into consideration, and therefore never made any progress towards a right conception.

Follow me in your spirit so that you learn to understand; for the fulfillment of the prophecy is beginning!

What must first change most drastically in the Judgment is man himself; for he alone has brought the confusion into Subsequent Creation. From him, from his wrong volition, the evil went forth into the world.

The original beauty, purity and health that always result from a swinging in the Primordial Laws of Creation were gradually distorted and perverted through the wrong volition of this humanity. Instead of a healthy maturing towards perfection, nothing but caricatures could still form in the unceasing process of development!

Just picture to yourselves a potter sitting at his wheel, before him the clay, pliable enough to be moulded to any shape. The wheel, however, is not turned by the potter himself but by a driving-belt, which in turn is kept in motion by the power of an engine.

By a pressure of his fingers the clay is now shaped in continual rotation, carried out by the wheel on which the clay was placed. Now *as* the finger presses *so* the shape develops, either beautiful, plain or ugly.

The spirit of man also works in the same way in this world, in Subsequent Creation. Through his volition he exercises leadership, thus as spirit he exerts pressure upon certain animistic substance, which shapes both ethereal and gross matter. For a spirit, animistic substance is the finger that exercises the pressure according to the spirit's volition. The clay is ethereal and gross matter; but the movement, which is independent of the human spirit, comprises the automatic movements of the Primordial Laws of Creation, which like currents ceaselessly drive towards the development of everything man forms in his volition.

Thus the volition of the human spirit is answerable for much that develops in Subsequent Creation; for *man* as spirit exercises the pressure that determines the nature of the form. He cannot exercise his will without simultaneously forming! No matter what it is! Thus he can likewise never evade this responsibility for all the forms created by him; for his volition is the cause for everything existing in this Subsequent Creation! His volition, his thinking and his actions! Everything takes on form in the mechanism of this world. That man has neither known it, nor wanted to know it, is his concern, is his

fault. His ignorance does not alter the effect.

Thus through his wrong volition, his obstinacy and self-conceit, he has not only held back any true blossoming, but has ruined Subsequent Creation and brought about only harm instead of blessing!

Admonitions through prophets, then through the Son of God Himself, were not enough to change man and induce him to take the right course! He did not *want* to, and increasingly nourished his conceited idea of being a world-ruler, in which already lay hidden the germ for his inevitable downfall. This germ grew with his conceit, and prepared the catastrophes that must now be unleashed according to the Eternal Law in Creation, which man failed to recognize because his conceited idea of being the master prevented him from doing so.

The sole cause of the coming horrors lies in the distortion of the Divine Primordial Laws through the false volition of these human spirits in Subsequent Creation! For this wrong volition threw into confusion all the power-currents that take effect automatically. The diversion of their course, however, cannot go unpunished since, knotted and entangled as they are, they will then *forcibly* detach themselves at a certain time. The detaching and disentangling shows itself in the manifestations that we call catastrophes. It makes no difference whether this occurs in public affairs, in families, with individuals or entire peoples, or with the forces of nature.

Thereby all that is false will collapse, judging itself through the power that is in these currents, which have been wrongly directed by humanity's conceit, contrary to what God willed; for these currents can *only* bring about blessing when they follow *those* courses which are intended for them by Primordial Law, thus ordained for them by the Creator. Never otherwise.

That is also why the end could be foreseen already thousands of years ago, because owing to the wrongly-willed attitude of men it could not possibly come about any differently, since the final result of anything that happens always remains strictly bound to the Primordial Laws.

Mankind has never listened to warnings and now they stand in *the* collapse that proceeds according to natural law. *Today* we are standing at this point in the natural development.

Now since the human spirits have proved their utter inability to recognize their task in this Creation, since they proved their unwillingness to fulfill it by repudiating and misinterpreting all the warnings given by called ones and prophets, even those by the Son of God Himself, sealing their enmity by the crucifixion, God now *forcibly* intervenes.

*Hence the Kingdom of the Millennium!*

Only *by force* can Subsequent Creation still be helped, as well as mankind, who have proved that they would never voluntarily be persuaded to take the right path which they must follow in Creation in order to live in it according to God's Will, and also to work and bring blessing as *the* beings that they really are by virtue of their spiritual nature.

For this reason mankind now, in the Judgment, are being *deprived of their rights*, they are for a time *disinherited* of the right they have possessed up till now, the right that the *human will* rules over this Subsequent Creation, guiding and forming it! Disinherited for a thousand years, so that at last there may be peace, and a striving towards the Light in accordance with the Primordial Laws in Creation, to which man has hitherto been hostile.

Disinheriting humanity of all the rights hitherto held in Subsequent Creation therefore makes possible and safeguards the establishment of the long-wished-for Kingdom of Peace! *Thus* does man stand before his God! *For that* he must now render account. *That* is the meaning of and the necessity for the thousand-year Kingdom of God here on earth. A sad truth, which cannot be more shaming for this mankind!

Instead, they are proud of the prophecies, in their unrestrained delusion of grandeur! The disinheritance will happen in the simplest way, in that a Will which stands *above* all human volition places Itself into this Subsequent Creation, a Will sent by God for this purpose! This fact alone suffices to

bind all humanity's rights in Creation quite naturally! Thus *God's Will Itself* was sent in flesh and blood which all of mankind's volition cannot effectively oppose and which, through the very fact of Its being, will remain sole ruler and leader in Creation, because according to the Primordial Laws of Creation, everything *must* adjust to It, because everything originated from It, and is and remains dependent on It.

Therefore, the Will of God Itself is present amongst earth men during the Judgment. He automatically releases the Judgment for a quick resolution and will also personally lead the new upbuilding the way it should be for the benefit of all creatures, of the entire Creation, so that mankind may learn from this through experiencing it!

Thus the Millennium will become *a school for mankind*, in which they must learn *how* they have to stand in this Subsequent Creation, how to think and to act in order to fulfill their appointed task correctly, and thereby to achieve happiness themselves!

To this end the will of mankind as ruler in Subsequent Creation is now suspended for a thousand years, after whatever he has wrongly sown and wrongly guided has been destroyed in the Judgment!

During the thousand years the Will of God alone will reign supreme, to Which every human spirit must submit as soon as he has been able to pass through the Judgment!

However, the Will of God will not remain on earth in flesh and blood for a thousand years. Instead, after the completion of the upbuilding, He will go up to the Grail Castle. During these thousand years, in His stead, it will always be a bearer of His Will who is directly connected to Him, who will rule on earth. It is always a Primordial, Pure-spiritual being who simply through his nature will be far superior in wisdom and power to the human spirits of this Subsequent Creation, all of whom are only developed ones. In each case he will be a knight of the Holy Grail from the Castle where he will be prepared beforehand as a sword bearer of Imanuel, the Will of God.

---

He will always be called sword bearer because his task is to fulfill the Word of Imanuel, the Word, which spiritually is referred to as the sword. He will then rule on earth in the name of his Lord. And every new ruler on earth during the thousand year Kingdom will always be a Primordial being sent by the Grail. No exception. This provides the guarantee that this time, as predetermined by God, will remain exactly as willed by God.

Following these thousand years no new Primordial being will be sent, and the legacy of leadership in Subsequent Creation will thus be returned to men. During that time men must have learned to adjust themselves exactly according to the Primordial Laws of Creation, so that they can finally work *beneficially* in Subsequent Creation, of which they are, and will remain, a part and where they are to find their own true happiness.

But should there be another failure as in the past, then mankind must count on complete annihilation!

*Such* is the Millennium and its purpose! In their self-conceit and the delusion of their own importance, mankind have imagined it to be quite different. But they will have to learn and experience it as it actually is!

Therein also lies only a *Grace* of God, to help those who are really of a pure volition! Otherwise they would be lost together with the damned! For after the Judgment, no one can exist any longer who does not vibrate rightly in the Primordial Laws of Creation, in other words, who does not live according to the Will of God!

---

## The necessary balance.

The time has finally come for the Primordial Creation Law of Balance to be strictly fulfilled in the *right* way here on earth for the salvation of mankind. This law has not only been ignored until now but, in smug delusion, it has even been called unchristian and ignoble.

Once again mankind, with merely earthly concepts, sought to improve upon the Will of its Creator, and soon found a shiny cloak for this presumption. They called it *compassion!* Compassion which has nothing to do with the loving-kindness of the Samaritan which Jesus taught in the parable.

*Loving-kindness is generosity of the spirit, pity is pharisaism!*

Pity was created by the intellect as a caricature of loving-kindness. The man who has pity pleases and admires himself or else is guided by his cleverness.

The recipient on the other hand *demands* or *expects* it, in many cases taking it for granted, or he demands it out of indolence and envy which may escalate into hatred.

All of that, however, is against God's iron law which permits receiving only as a result of *giving!* Constant balance is required here which alone produces movement, thereby maintaining good health and vitality, which is the condition for progress in continuous development, bringing true ascent and full harmony! Only where giving and receiving are in perfect balance will there be peace and happiness! This is God's law that upholds and promotes the whole Creation.

Any discord arising out of alterations to this law must cause sluggishness in the necessary movement, paralysis, decline, standstill in all that is in this Creation. It leads to discontent, sickness, and death! From this in turn arise envy, hate, theft, murder and all evil which manifests today and will accelerate

to the point of collapse of all hope, of all aspiration.

The Will of God demands uncompromising change in this! *Giving alone is the condition for receiving!* Whoever is not willing to give must not be permitted to take either; this means that he is not to receive anything for free! Not even the Word, which needs to be *earned!* Anything else is unhealthy and brings no blessing even though it may have the earthly appearance of doing so; for it is against God's Primordial Creation Law!

This appears severe and harsh to you at first glance. *It* is however, the greatest help available to the human spirit because it forces him into *that* kind of active alertness which is required of him as it is of every creature in Creation. It is through alert activity alone that he develops in accordance with the laws, that he furthers his environment and becomes strong. Instead, however, in so many instances he has only nurtured indolence which paralyses the spirit.

In the future, therefore, nothing may be given for which no equivalent value is offered in return, even if it be simply in the form of pure joy! Therein alone lies the awakening of all human spirits here on earth who require proper movement in order to be restored to health and vitality, just as their gross material bodies do and as does *everything* in Creation! Without continuous movement within the Creative pressure of Divine energy there is no true progress, no joyous ascent and no blissful affirmation of all life!

"The beauty of Creation is spread out before you, man, but *bestir yourself within it*, earn what you wish to own of it!"

This sounds as a thunderous warning from the Light, as a driving law with great pressure. This pressure is now being increased in the Judgment. Whoever is not completely willing to use it to his own benefit and that of others in tireless activity, whoever does not want to move with this strong pressure will be broken down and crushed by it as an impediment and a useless troublemaker!

This law of the necessity for ceaseless movement was anchored in this world from the beginning. Man however, in his arrogance, introduced compassion, so that *he* can be admired as benefactor and be able to use the duty of gratitude for the degradation of human beings into slaves.

Many became slack in ever increasing indolence, became spiritual cripples only capable of envy and hatred of everything that others acquired for themselves. Man, mobilize your spirit and yourself on this earth at last, in order to *acquire* what you need, what you want to possess. Any easing in this is poison for you! It makes you weary and paralyzes you. It leads to indolence, with unhealthy desires, and finally to physical sickness and spiritual decay!

Movement in the balance of giving and taking will become immutable Law of the future according to the Will of God! *It applies to all situations in life!*

Balance does not exist where laws or regulations require taking from those who possess in order to give to others! This is too one-sided and unhealthy; there is no *life* in it because there is no swinging in harmony with Creation law. Governments must never interfere with private property but must support and *protect* it. They must not forcibly reach into the pockets of their citizens and dispose of the property of others in order to help themselves in difficult predicaments and just to make their jobs easier. The major purpose of a government is to first of all safeguard to its citizens the free and undisturbed enjoyment of property.

*On their own* and with their own *skills* they must find ways out of their difficulties. Governments and citizens must never be blended into *one* but they are two separate entities each one of which must remain healthy within itself; both, however, must always stand *next* to each other in full harmony, supporting each other.

They must be like husband and wife in a completely healthy marriage, or like the activity of the animistic and the spiritual in the household of Creation!

The citizens of a nation must ensure peace, wellbeing and prosperity of the internal household by the way they live. The governments must, through outwardly directed activity, support prosperity within and preservation of the peace through alliances with other peoples and nations.

They each on their own must completely fulfill their part. They will then not hinder, but support each other.

If governments apply their skills primarily outwardly, and with *real competence*, then as a result peace will come *within* the country automatically.

A prerequisite for this however is a *spiritual transformation* of the inner man. In the present state, the state in which man has been up to now, a healthy balance will never be achieved in accordance with Primordial Creation Laws, in which alone lie peace and prosperity. All of humanity, with very few exceptions, is still ignorant of these immutable Laws, which is the reason why these laws cannot work *for* men, and why the entire Creation works *against* them. Humanity is the *weaker* and inevitably the inferior part until it finally will submit because it must. Until that point is reached however, there will be no real success.

It is of course to be expected then that for everything that is given, something of value must be rendered in return in one form or another. No one may take for granted a kindness received by a fellowman without having to give at least a kind word in return. No one may take it as a given that one of his fellowmen should, out of kindness, do something for him, without the necessity that he should at least respond with a good word! A word that has *value* for the other, and is not just a matter of form.

Put *this matter* in order, men. Only then will you have the sound condition of the soil that will support a solid construction.

Even the so-called honorary posts are harmful. With few exceptions, these are mere covers and bridges for base ambition, for lust for power, for all desire to attract attention

and gain *recognition*. No, this is not the right way, nor is it the intended way for social life on earth, since it creates and promotes only unhealthy forms. It is wrong to continue such practices which attract so much that is harmful merely for the sake of a few exceptions.

The foundation for this matter, too, must be God's Law, unaltered and without being shaped to conform to human desires, vanities or weaknesses, as it has always been done up until now.

Help given *in the way* seen fit on earth until now is not Love; for Love seeks to do only *that* which *truly* helps others.

Let *cool* breezes blow, harsh and clear, to blow away all that is lax and sultry, paying no heed to many a badly spoiled individual catching severe cold in the beginning.

---

## Jesus and Imanuel.

**B**oth, the Son of God Jesus as well as the Son of Man Imanuel, have their origin in God! The Son of God, who is to be called the inborn one, stands again *with* God the Father or *in* God the Father upon His return from Creation, thus He is “inborn” into the Godhead Itself; while the Son of Man can be called the “outborn” one coming out of God, who, for the benefit of the existence of all human spirits, was *born out* into Primordial Creation with a part of Himself remaining separate from God.

However, the designation Son of God and Son of Man has never been rightly understood by men. It has not been completely understood even *today* by those who know my Message. Man has become accustomed to think only from *his own perspective* and therefore believes that everything has to be considered from his perspective. That is the mistake. In this case he has to attempt to gain an understanding only starting from *above*; because the designation Son of God and Son of Man originates in God, not in man, to whom it was only proclaimed in this way. For that reason the concept also has to be intuitively perceived from *above*, not from the human perspective.

In reality then there are: Jesus, the in-born Son, and Imanuel the outborn Son. Both are Sons of God and, in human terms, brothers.

In the Divine, the designations Son of God and Son of Man are thought of in the sense of looking *downward*, toward Creation, whereby a different concept emerges immediately, and whereby indeed a proper conception even begins. The Son of God is the Son of God with God; the Son of Man is the Son of God sent to mankind from God.

The Son of God Jesus was not given to mankind so that, as many of the faithful still think, they could make a sacrifice of Him to God the Father for their sins! *Jesus was never given to them at all!* He only wanted to bring the Word, and, after man had murdered Him, He gradually returned to God the Father again, as He Himself explained often enough. Even if He had not been murdered He would have returned to God, for He was never really connected to the world.

But *Immanuel* the Son of Man was given to men by God, so that through Him they could exist and have in Him an eternal mediator through whose Being the human spirits with the *right* attitude could also remain *eternally conscious!*

For this purpose God gave a Son without demanding His complete return to Him! *This* is the great sacrifice which He made, *this* is His gift. *This* is the promised Son-sacrifice for mankind! He does not demand Him or draw Him back into the Godhead.

The great sacrifice by God has nothing to do with the crucifixion and the Son of God Jesus. The crucifixion was not a sacrifice, neither a sacrifice made by God nor one made by mankind! However, because mankind gave false interpretations to this deliberate act committed against the Son of God in order to exculpate themselves, they also could never comprehend the actual concept of the word Son of Man. They were never able to recognize the *true* sacrifice by God for what it was; the sacrifice which lies in the intentional *separation* of God from the Son born out into Creation, which was necessary for mankind. The unimaginable greatness of this can and will never be grasped by mankind!

It will not be difficult for you to understand that the Son of Man, in accordance with the Law of the Light, could be nothing other than King in Creation, and representative of the Triune God. Placed by God the Father into Creation for the human spirits, He is the only one in all of Creation who comes out of God.

Kingship is the simple and natural consequence of the effect of the Light-Law, which, as a consequence of the being of the Son of Man, can only have *this* effect and no other. —

This happening, in its perfection, brings to all of mankind so much help which they will only be able to understand decades from now.

Starting with the hour when the Son of Man will fully commence His work, which is the Hour of Proclamation, the human spirits in *all* the parts of Creation will have far greater, stronger help than they have had since the beginning of Creation. — For this reason peace shall and must come to be everywhere; ascent is much easier, while punishment is effected more quickly than before for those who will oppose the Light.

There will be a transformation in every kind of happening; and with the Son of Man comes the Cosmic Turning Point! This is the reason why everything, which, in order to continue to exist, *must* become new and why none of the old can remain unless its striving is already attuned to the Law of the Light! In this case it will be able to remain and only has to be purified so that it will shine like all that is new! However, mankind does not know *how* grateful they should be for everything which is being fulfilled at this time! — —

*God alone* made the great sacrifice in the Son of Man for all of mankind and for Creation! I, as Imanuel, deserve no gratitude for this for I am filled with the greatest joy to be permitted to serve God in His exalted Will! Because I alone am able to joyfully perceive His greatness, His splendor and wisdom, His purity, His power! What is all of Creation compared to *this* high knowledge, *this* perception! Nothing! Neither do I perceive myself as being here because of mankind's wishes. No! With upward gaze, I live blissfully only for the fulfillment of the Holy Will of my Eternal Father, the one and only God and Lord!

Therefore do not delude yourselves; it will be altogether different from what you humans think! You will stand before

many things only in amazement, and some things you will come to fully understand only years from now. Only in the future will you grasp the high, pure meaning of all that you have until now experienced only as distortions! The curse, which *inevitably* lay on the display of splendor until now because of mankind's wrong mindset will have been lifted and splendor in its pure form becomes beauty; and all the treasures of this world will shine in purity for the glory of God and will help serve in the joyful adoration of the great goodness which allowed all of this to arise, and which gave it to mankind for their use! — — —

On earth the Son of God often said: "My Kingdom is not of this world!" By this He was not only referring to this earthly kingdom but to the entire *cosmos*, to *Creation!* He returned to God! And surrounding Him is the *Kingdom of the Divine Realm* in which He reigns in the name of His Father. Thus His Kingdom was not of this world, but it was and is the Kingdom of God. This means *the Kingdom in the Divine Realm* which has always been with God, and will remain with Him in eternity.

The Kingdom of the Son of Man however is the *Cosmos, Creation!* God called the inborn Son the Son of God; for He is active in the Divine Kingdom which is much greater than all of Creation. He placed the outborn Son into Creation, thereby placing Him over the human spirits, and proclaimed Him to mankind as the Son of Man. *This* is the Son whom He separated from Himself for mankind so that He may rule over them. Therefore, those who are so blessed as to be permitted to see *images* from the Divine will soon and often be shown the Divine Trigon, in which the eye of God stands at the top, Jesus, the Son of God, stands to the right, and then, since the completion, Imanuel, the Son of Man stands to the left. To those who can see, the image shows *the activity* as it is contained in the Holy Will of God. Two Rays issuing from God form the Trigon downwards. One leads to the Son of God in His activity, the other to the Son of Man. Now the completed

connection of the Son of God with the Son of Man produces between them the connective ray which simultaneously forms the lower connective line now closing the Trigon.

Thus I explain for you already today the image of the Divine Trigon which many of the blessed ones will be permitted to behold as soon as God Himself allows the earthly presence of the Son of Man to be proclaimed to the world. Of course, it will only be *images* shown by spiritual leaders, because human spirits will never be able to see things Divine.

---

## Christmas!

**C**hristmas! The Festival of the Radiant Star! Both Festivals are in reality only one! It is the Day of the Radiant Star, the Star which was once sent by God into this part of the cosmos and which sent His luminous greetings to the Son of God as He awoke here on Earth; and which will now shine for the Son of Man from the day of His earthly awakening on, from the hour in which the Power of the Light is anchored in the world of gross matter! —

“Peace on Earth for the joy of mankind!” was the greeting of the Light at the earthly birth of the Son of God which is celebrated still today with the Christmas festival. After only a few years, though, the scornful return-greeting of humanity: “Crucify, Crucify him!” rose defiantly upwards to the throne of God!

In the same moment, however, and upon the same paths as rose the jeering cries, there descended... the Judgment! By no means did it wait until now. Since the day of the murder, you men have already been standing in the reciprocal action. What happens now is only the *end* of the Judgment, that is the Final Judgment!

You have been separated from God since the day on which the sacred curtain before the Holy of Holies was torn! From that hour on you were no longer to possess the Holy of Holies here on Earth. From that same moment forward you became confused, alone. You no longer had a connection to God! The connection was severed by humanity by this crucifixion, and the Old Covenant was destroyed. The Messenger of God, who had the curtain torn, thereby exposed the Ark of the Covenant as it had lost its original meaning and value. After the murder, the covenant between God and mankind could no longer continue to exist.

The Word alone remained behind as a rescue rope leading to salvation for those individuals who wished to make use of it for their laborious climb upwards in order to reach more luminous heights. Only few succeeded, and only with great effort. Yet they had to wait there until the day of the Final Judgment brought by the Son of Man who also has to make the New Covenant for which the earnestly seeking ones have already been sealed at this time!

Without a new Covenant, men on earth no longer had a connection with God, the connection having been broken through the crucifixion.

Since that time, the strongest link in this necessary connection has been missing, causing a rift which could not be bridged except by God Himself. Humanity in its blindness however, has widened this rift ever more.

For this reason, the greeting of the Star *now* declares: “War and Judgment to humanity, to the point of complete subjugation, which is equivalent to purification and peace!” —

For once take the trouble to look clearly into all of the activities of humanity around Christmastime! Not, however, from *that* standpoint which has been instilled in you, but rather from the perspective of the Light!

The Son of God came to humanity on earth in order to show through His Word the way that must lead humanity upward to the blissful realms. He wanted to bring Peace, Happiness and Joy; He wanted to open a door to Paradise for the human spirits gone astray. Humanity was amazed, harkened and sensed something great!

Yet promptly and simultaneously there arose in the forefront their earthly wishes, which in their habitual manner they immediately sought to mix in, so that they could see them fulfilled on this occasion. It never even occurred to them to thankfully accept a great gift of God for what it was; rather they first of all wanted their earthly wishes to be fulfilled through the Son of God. Thereafter they might be willing to make the effort to work on themselves. However, had their

earthly desires been satisfied first, they would have remained much too indolent afterwards to do anything else!

Through this wrong mindset they sought to make Christ their servant instead of welcoming Him as the Lord!

Humanity's attitude toward God is no different today! All they only know is how to plead that He might fulfill their wishes according to them! Only through pleading, which they call *praying* but which is really *begging*, do they seek to approach their God. In no other way! You hypocrites, you fools, you useless servants! Your pleading is in reality nothing but selfish demanding! Only you and ever again you. You are interested only in your own welfare.

But what do you offer up in gratitude to *God* who gave you His Creation for your development?

You poisoned and desecrated His Creation because you never bothered to pay attention to it; you soiled it by seeking to use it only for the fulfillment of your basest desires! Even at Christmas your highest goals lie merely in mutual gift giving!

Through you this Earth has thus been made into a sty instead of a Temple of God!

You never recognized the *words* of Christ in their lofty value, standing high above all earthly treasures! In spiritual indolence, earthmen already passed it by at the time of Christ's life on earth, dim-witted, ignorant and narrow, exactly as they do still today. Finally, when all their earthly desires were not fulfilled, they actually even felt cheated and persecuted Him who wanted to give them much *more*, wanted to give them *everything* the human spirit needs to attain to true happiness, true life. They persecuted Him with their hatred until they succeeded in having Him crucified so that they would no longer need to be annoyed by Him!

Try to understand how the Son of God felt. How unworthy and deeply pathetic must people have appeared to Him. He who did not shy away from such a great sacrifice as coming from the Light down to this Earth; He who knew what values He gave to men with His Word! Values which alone would be

able to save men, who were so burdened with sin before God, from the wrong paths they themselves had made through their wrongdoings, their fragmentary thinking.

With His parables and sermons He showed in a clearly recognizable way the exact direction in Creation which would be easy to take and very easy to maintain for anyone who regarded them in the right way.

He offered them *salvation*, offered them Life! He already saw at that time that they must be lost forever if they did not change the way.

While He, leniently and with great love and patience, confronted the base ignorance of these earthlings with His knowledge, only in order to help them, they only approached Him demanding fulfillment of their earthly wishes! Presumptuously they demanded of Him the very thing that for all of them had spelled disaster before, because fulfillment of their earthly wishes had always wearied their spirits, and made them useless for true ascent. Daily and hourly He had to realize that He was throwing pearls before the swine! And it was for men that He had come down *from the Light!*

You will understand, then, why during his interrogation and sentencing he spoke not another word. Humanity on Earth *disgusted* Him! Disgust made Him fall silent! Men were unworthy of another word. Imagine in earnest how ignorant every single word of the accusers and judges must have seemed to the Son of God who drew from Wisdom, who Himself was a part of Wisdom! What must He have felt when men called Him blasphemer only because He could not provide this dull witted humanity with the kinds of proof of His Divine Mission *they* would have understood. He had given them enough proof, but *men* were unable to recognize His evidence as such in all its greatness!

Finally, they blamed their own inability on the Son of God! They condemned Him because they could not understand Him, who alone knew God the Father! You shudder at the anguish of the soul which men inflicted upon the Son of God in the most hopeless frightfulness. —

This time it was no different for the Son of Man except that today's laws did not allow for His being led to death. Instead, they accused Him on several occasions of fraud for failure to produce earthly *evidence* of being the Son of Man, sent by God!

This time, too, they did not regard the greatness of His Message, did not seek *a single* value therein, but put it aside carelessly, and with boundless hatred clung obstinately to one point only: "His assertion can be made only to gain earthly advantages for himself!" In the opinion of the earthmen, whatever He did could be done only with the intention of gaining advantages for Himself. Everything was viewed from *this* perspective alone!

The reason for this evil perception, however, does not lie in *His* deeds but again, just as it did with the Son of God in His time, in the boundless ignorance and spiritual stupidity of these earthlings who are no longer even capable of thinking in a way that is different from *their* own nature! Man judges and condemns according to *his own* nature! Having turned away from God and in his evil volition man is no longer capable of higher perceptions. In their evil volition and having turned away from God, higher perceptions are no longer possible for men.

Thus He was hounded and harassed in the same way and was able only under constant aggravation to prepare the Word for the time which is now to come! For if He were to start this work only now it would be much too late for all of humanity!

It would not have been to *His* disadvantage if He had, tired and repulsed, abandoned all preparations; for He Himself was sent to this Earth by God the Father only at His *own request*!

When Christ once spoke of His coming it was in reference for His coming for the Judgment! For the Judgment, however, it was not necessary for Him to descend into this earthly body. He could have fulfilled His mission *coming in the clouds*, staying above this earth! This would have spared Him all earthly suffering and the hatred of man. *His coming to Earth* was only announced by the Light through John, after His

request had been granted shortly after the murder of the Son of God.

As a consequence the Earth will not burst asunder under the curse weighing on it! This had been its actual fate! Now, however, it will only be purified but it will survive! —

Now take a look at the Christmas celebrations from *this* perspective and see what impression they make on you in their existing form!

How much human arrogance is evidenced in every word of every song and carol. True humility is lacking. There is only self-aggrandizement in the delusion of their own worth! It is vermin trying to fly toward the Light, but it will have to be burnt by it!

Men have always celebrated Christmas only for *themselves!* For their worldly enjoyment, not for the joy of their spirit! It is to be different now, however. The Festival of the Star will bring to those who earnestly and with humility long for the Light, liberation from the errors of arrogant human brains; for Imanuel, the Sword of God, lays to ruin all that is false! — —

His incarnation on Earth, then, had not been planned in the beginning. Only upon His pleading was He permitted to descend to the Earth for the Judgment. With the granting of this request the fate of this Earth changed; it will be saved from complete destruction! After a terrible purification process it will be allowed to be lifted up to the region where destruction finds no access. — —

So when the Son of Man was once granted His request this news travelled jubilantly down into the spheres of Creation and many human spirits of the various planes sent fervent pleas upward to God that He may mercifully permit them to help with all their being in the fulfillment of the mission of the Son of Man here on Earth.

Many were granted their requests, and sacred vows thus bound them to the fulfillment of this task. For this purpose alone they were then incarnated on earth at the right time. But many of them lost themselves in this earth life through the

pursuit of earthly happiness, worldly fame, or other such vanities.

Among them are human spirits encumbered with a heavy guilt who asked in despair and fear to be allowed to help in the work since *this* was their *only* possibility of salvation. Otherwise they would face certain doom.

However, the time is near when for all who are thus obligated, the veil is lifted from their hitherto hidden knowledge. Then some will recognize with joy and gratitude that they are permitted to fulfill what they once longed for, after having been guided lovingly and painstakingly by the Light. There will be those, however, who will recognize with horror that they missed even this last opportunity to redeem their guilt, and that their failure amassed an even more disastrous burden of guilt, which renders their salvation completely impossible. They recognize that they even slandered and sought to obstruct the way of *the One* whose path they once vowed to help ease. Their number is *very* great! Their awakening occurs only while they are being flung down into the regions of destruction so that no time remains for another request. —

From the day of the crucifixion to the day of the Judgment the cosmos stood still in its great higher development, as a waiting period during which human spirits had to witness the growing of their own seeds as they matured in the vibration of this Creation, until they reached the state of over-ripeness and the then inevitable disintegration in accordance with Creation Law, unless they are held and maintained by God's Will.

Man's work born of the intellect is always subject to disintegration as long as it does not bear the Will of God within it, therefore is not in accordance with it. This is the sword which hangs over all of man's activity and forces him to obey the laws of God! For this reason everything now collapses within itself; and then... the Judgment of God comes! The sifting of all spirits! After having been forced to experience the collapse of all of their false works!

And in this great chaos many of you are now incarnated on Earth at your own request, so that you might help to build a strong bridge in the entire Creation, a bridge which will support this Earth.

Bear in mind then that *you have a part in holding the Earth so that it will not perish!* Through your purest volition, millions of people will still have the opportunity to mature for a while longer, and still to enter into the Kingdom of God, which had already been lost to them. Therefore, do not take this too lightly.

You chosen and called ones! The time for fulfilling your vow has begun. For this I call you to action!

---

## Omnipresence!

God is omnipresent! Children are taught this even at school! To those who still believe in God at all, this is so familiar and so self-evident that they do not consider it necessary to ponder seriously as to whether they really know what they are saying with these words.

But if an explanation is demanded as to how they picture this, then their wisdom immediately fails them and they themselves recognize that, after all, the word “omnipresent” as such does not hold the knowledge as to its real significance.

Men indeed have the word, but not the understanding of it! And that, after all, is the main point in everything. Even knowledge is of no avail where understanding is lacking. Man knows the meaning of the term “omnipresent”, but to know the meaning is not the same as understanding or grasping its sense.

I must therefore refer you to my lecture “Life”. God is Life! He alone! All else is but a consequence of the motion which as such only comes into being through the pressure of the radiation of Life.

The man who in a really fervent prayer seeks help for something, obtains connection through his attitude with that sphere from which help can be proffered. This I have mentioned once before in my explanations about the effect of prayer. Do not think of prayer as pleading, but as worship – worship and veneration! Every plunge into such deep meditation by the human spirit, however, is nothing but an effort to establish a connection, a seeking for connection with the Light, with Purity and with Life! The desire and *longing* of the human spirit expand in such cases. In its spiritual seeking it reaches out to Luminous Heights! And if it thereby seeks in

true *earnestness* it will then find, as Christ has already promised. It finds the *connection* with Life! But only the connection, not Life Itself!

The process is the same when men will be calling for the Son of Man. Through strong, pure yearning they will spiritually find *the* way to Him. As soon as they stand on the *right* path they will sense Him; those who are permitted to see spiritually, will even *see Him* before themselves, alive, often speaking and responding to what aggrieves them.

Thus *the petitioners* find the connection to Him through their pure yearning. Imprint this upon your memory! He will not go to them! And thus it happens that thousands throughout the universe speak to Him *at the same time*, and even see Him before them, as He acts according to the Law of the Light, either in a punishing or in a helping way, and He Himself... feels nothing of it, although what these people spiritually see or hear is actually happening! He is not burdened by this.

If all creatures in the entire Creation were seeking a connection to Him, at the same time *and in the right manner*, they will all intuitively sense Him, indeed they will receive what they are striving to ask for, each according to the degree of their earnestness and the purity of their requests. Some will also see Him, not only from anywhere on the earth, but also in all parts of the universe simultaneously. Yet He cannot tire, will never be weakened from this... because in Him is *Life* that will not wither, but that renews itself and will remain forever. In a word: because "He is!"

Human spirits circle around Him, as they come into being, mature or dissolve. Each one of them can find the connection to Him at any time, if only he desires and honestly seeks it.

During the Judgment, however, by virtue of His being an earthly human, this connection will be imposed upon everyone! Through His becoming human He entered into and at the same time stands in *all* of the species of Creation simultaneously. And through this all things of this Creation come directly into a closer relationship with Him. There could remain no gap and

no obstacle to the penetration of His radiations. He thereby also carried them into the Fine-material and Gross-material planes! *So that all may judge themselves by them!*

Thus through prayer or earnest seeking you find a *path connecting* you with God, and it is on account of this that He appears *as* omnipresent as you have imagined in the past. Even a blasphemer finds the connecting paths quickly; for his intuitive perception is focused on God, albeit in an evil way. There have therefore been many examples of such a man being destroyed at the very moment of his blasphemous act, or soon thereafter. He found a connecting pathway by which the living force quickly affected him. Why its effect on him had to be destructive will be obvious to everyone. This is the reason why such miracles happen in which ignorant fanatics see arbitrary punitive acts of God, while in reality they are and will always be the outcome of unbreakable laws!

That is how omnipresence has been misunderstood. Omnipresence might perhaps be even better interpreted with the words *always present!* i.e., always to be found if one seeks.

It is only the outward manifestation of the happening that has misled mankind. They have approached the subject from the false assumption that God personally looks after them, pleads with them, and also surrounds them with His protection. It never occurred to them that *they themselves must do everything* in order to strive for the necessary connection, which they have always unconsciously fulfilled in accordance with the Laws of Creation in their genuine prayers! They did not like to believe that it is only the Laws of God resting in Creation that encompass them, and that these act automatically to mete out every reward and every punishment.

To be omnipresent really means nothing else than to be accessible from every part of Creation.

But even this must again only be taken in a restricted sense, for when it is said: *"Before God everything dissolves!"* this is literally true. There is a tremendous gulf! Not a single creature can step directly before God and thus come into His Presence,

unless it is One who issued directly from God. This is possible for two only – the Son of God and the Son of Man! All else would and must be directly dissolved in His Presence, i.e., could never stand consciously before Him.

It is only possible for the human spirit to find the connecting path to God. And, following the fulfillment and the proclamation, the connecting path will for all of eternity be the Son of Man, as the promised eternal mediator. That is why the human spirit, upon earnest seeking, will always find Him! And through Him, *that* help will return to him to the extent that he is earnestly attuned to it!

Thus the Son of Man appears omnipresent to man, which means that he, man, will meet Him if he petitions in the right way; he will find Him! In effect it is exactly as if the Son of Man was *with* him; because at such moments he is connected to Him through a pathway of radiation which also shows the image of the Son of Man.

Thus everything that will now happen to you is attributable to *your action*; for it is only *in you alone* that the mysterious lever is firmly anchored that brings your fate, brings each individual experience. Where the train of your life will go *depends on* how you set the switches! Never forget this; because the experiences of each moment are very closely tied to this!

*The Son of Man, however, is!* He was placed into Creation by God as power from His power! You circle around Him and all that happens to you, be it love or rejection, *you cause it for yourselves*, through your attitude! He stands before you at all times if you seriously seek Him and call out to Him in pure petitioning; because in so doing you enter the connecting path to Him with your spirit, and you will see Him, or sense Him. It is in this living law that the meaning of omnipresence lies!

## Christ said...!

**Y**ou can hear these words repeated unctuously in a thousand ways today. *Christ said!* With this introduction every contrary opinion is supposed to be quashed from the very beginning. Every person using these words, however, also desires to absolve himself of all personal liability, but instead of this he burdens himself with an enormous responsibility... before God!

But this does not occur to him until it descends upon him with such a force that he will be compelled to remain silent for ever after! The hour is approaching, already the first stones of retribution are rolling! But the biggest stone of retribution for many human spirits was formed through using the introductory words: *Christ said!* — —

These words are then followed by some quotation from the “Holy Scriptures” which is meant to soothe and comfort, to encourage, also to warn and even to threaten, or in defence and argument. They are used both as a balm and as a sword, as a shield and also as a soft cushion!

All this would be beautiful and great, and would even be the *right thing*, if the words quoted still existed in the *same sense* as Christ *actually* spoke them!

But this *is* not so! Many of these words were fashioned out of themselves by *men* who had a very deficient memory. Consequently they could not reproduce the same sense as was intended by the words of Christ.

You only need to observe how it is today. Anyone wishing to explain in his *own* words or to write down from memory alone a passage from the Grail Message, which is available in printed form and written by myself, even *today* does not reproduce it according to the original sense. A second mouth, a

second pen always introduces alterations. New words change the original meaning, sometimes even distort it, although the writer may be absolutely willing to answer for it. It is never *that* word which *I* have spoken.

And how much worse it was at the time of the Son of God when He Himself had not written down any of His words, and when everything could *only* be transmitted to posterity at second or third hand. Indeed, not until a long time after Christ had left the World of Gross Matter! Everything – the writings and narratives, and all the words which today are customarily prefaced with a definite: *Christ said!* – evolved only out of the imperfect human memory!

Even at that time Lucifer's efforts to elevate the human intellect to the status of an idol had progressed so ominously as to prevent Christ's words from finding *that* soil which provides the possibility of a right understanding. This was an exceptionally clever move out of the Darkness. For the ability to grasp aright all those words which tell of other things than the gross material can only arise through the *unimpaired* co-operation of the intuitive brain. Even during the time of Christ on earth, however, this was already sadly neglected by all men, and had consequently become degenerate and incapable of playing its full part.

Thus Lucifer also had mankind on earth in his power! And that was his weapon against the Light! —

It is the human intuitive brain only, i.e., the back brain, which possesses the capacity of keeping memories *undistorted*, which is impossible for the intellect of the frontal brain!

Thus their hereditary sin was sharply and decisively brought home to mankind, who light-heartedly allowed their back brain to become so terribly degenerate, the back brain which alone is capable of retaining in pictures and intuitive impressions all happenings and experiences *as such*, and *in such a manner* that they can be *exactly* reproduced at any time as they really were, unchanged and even *undimmed*.

The frontal brain cannot do this because it is more closely

bound to the gross material conceptions of time and space. It was not created for *reception*, but for *transmission into the earthly world*.

Thus it was that the descriptions of what was experienced and heard during Christ's days on earth were transmitted from memory, intermingled with earthly human opinions and quite unconsciously formed in an earthly way, but not with that purity with which a powerful intuitive brain would have seen and recorded them. The claws of Lucifer's minions had already embedded themselves too deeply, preventing their slaves of the intellect from escape, so that they could no longer grasp aright or hold fast to the greatest treasure, the Message of God, which was their only possibility of salvation, but had to let it pass by unused.

Just try to realize this situation. It does not require much trouble to understand it. Many people approached Christ with questions, asking His advice about this or that. Gladly He advised them out of His great love, which never failed, because He was and also today *still is* Living Love!

Thus He gave to the person who asked and begged for it as *he* needed it. Let us take an example.

That rich young man who was eager to know the way which could lead him to the Kingdom of Heaven! The Son of God advised him to distribute all that he possessed among the poor and then to follow Him.

To follow Christ means nothing else than to live strictly in accordance with His words.

The bystanders quickly seized upon this happening as they had seized upon so many others, passing it on in that manner in which each as an individual had humanly perceived it. And that very seldom or never coincided with the actual meaning of Christ's original words, for a few words arranged in a different form can change the entire sense.

The first persons to pass it on, however, contented themselves with *relating*, giving a simple account of the happening. But later on such pieces of individual advice were

turned into basic laws for the whole of mankind! It was *mankind* who did this, however, and not Christ Himself, the Son of God!

And this same mankind also have the effrontery simply to assert: *Christ said!* They attribute to *Him* what men themselves out of their memory and a wrong interpretation alone had clothed in forms and words which, as *the Word of God*, are today supposed to remain authoritative and irrefutable for Christians.

Therein lies a *thousand fold the murder* of the *true* Word of the Son of God!

Everybody knows quite well that after weeks or months have elapsed he is unable to describe *without error* what he once experienced and heard, that he can *never* repeat it literally word for word! And if there are two, three, four or even ten persons who simultaneously heard or saw the same thing, they will give just as many different versions of it. Nobody today still doubts this fact.

On recognising this it is therefore natural that you should come to some conclusions as to what happened in the past, conclusions that are convincing and irrefutable!

For it was also no different when the Son of God was on earth! You can observe it clearly enough with the evangelists! Their reports plainly bear the stamp of it in many instances, as for example when Peter, the first among the disciples to declare his recognition, said to the Son of God: "Thou art the Christ, the Son of the Living God!"

The evangelists recorded these portentous words and also Christ's answer, but not at all uniformly. Matthew reports that the Son of God thereupon figuratively endowed Peter with a key to the Kingdom of Heaven and made him the rock upon which a future community was to be built, while the other evangelists give Christ's answer in a more general form, which is more correct.

Peter spoke only as *the first* to put this conviction into words. And such happenings remain not only as words, but

immediately become a deed in Creation, quickly *taking form* in the Ethereal World, directly! The honest conviction which Peter thus anchored in the World of Matter through his words, his profession of belief, became at the same moment a rock in the Ethereal Sphere which represented the foundation stone for the building of a later community for all those who can become able to believe in the Son of God with the *same* simple and honest conviction!

And *with this* Peter also held the key to Paradise in his hand. For the conviction that Jesus is the Son of God quite naturally brings in its train the urge *to live* in accordance with His Word! *That*, however, is at the same time the *key* to the Kingdom of Heaven for *every* man! This confession *is* the key, provided such a believer absorbs the Word of God in *undistorted* form, understands It aright and lives accordingly. Christ knew about this happening which, when Peter uttered his words of conviction, took place ethereally according to the Laws of Creation, and He spoke about it in order to explain it to the disciples. The lawfulness of ethereal happenings is also known to every reader of my Grail Message.

Thus merely through being the first to confess in words what he intuitively perceived, Peter consequently became the first to receive the key to Paradise. And to whomsoever on earth he could later on mediate this same conviction he would also open the Kingdom of Heaven. For those, however, who did not wish to share his conviction it was bound to remain shut. All this is a quite natural and automatic happening, clear and simple, and it is neither bound up with Peter nor dependent upon him.

Christ wished to and *could* only lay the foundations for a community upon *such a conviction*, but not upon any person! Peter merely happened to be the first who really expressed this conviction in words. The *conviction* developed, formed and *became* the rock, but not Peter as a person!

But Matthew, in accordance with his own interpretation, gives to Christ's answer a meaning which is purely personal, concerning Peter only, and this he passes on.

Matthew in particular shows that he misunderstood many things which he then thoughtlessly passes on after interpreting them in his own way. Just as he has already done at the beginning of his writings with the announcement of the angel to Joseph in Matthew 1. v. 21:

“And she shall bring forth a son, and thou shalt call his name Jesus; for he shall save his people from their sins”. And then Matthew follows in verses 22 and 23 with:

“Now all this was done that it might be fulfilled which was spoken of the Lord by the prophet, saying, Behold a virgin shall be with child, and shall bring forth a son, and they shall call his name Imanuel, which being interpreted is, God with us!”

In explaining this Matthew wants to form a close link between the prophecy of Isaiah and the birth of the Son of God, but the way in which he does it shows only too plainly that in his writings he expresses only his personal interpretations and does not remain objective.

This should have served *as a warning* to everybody that these writings must not be considered as the Word of God, but only as the personal opinion of their author!

Matthew, for example, does not even see the difference between the announcement made by Isaiah, which he himself quotes, and that of the Angel, but mixes them together with a childlike innocence because *he* “imagines” it to be so, and is quite unconcerned as to whether it is also correct. He does not even notice that the *names* mentioned in them are different.

But it was not without purpose that they were so precisely named!

Isaiah prophesied “*Immanuel*”, but the Angel, “Jesus”! Therefore it was not Imanuel to whom Mary gave birth, nor was her child the one of whom Isaiah prophesied!

Isaiah announced “Immanuel”, the Son of Man; the Angel, however, “Jesus”, the Son of God! It is clear that these are two different announcements requiring two different fulfillments which, again, must be carried out by two different

Persons. A mixing of these two happenings is impossible and can only be maintained by a human volition which *deliberately* ignores all basic facts.

Matthew had no evil intentions in this, he merely wrote down his own simple opinion in a most thoughtless manner. It could easily happen that he linked up these two events because at that time, more so than today, people were waiting and longing for the fulfillment of the promises of the old prophets. He did not foresee the evil of still greater misunderstanding that would grow out of it.

I do not need to speak further here about the fulfillment of the prophecy of "Immanuel", as I have already dealt with this in detail several times in the Grail Message. —

Thus the misunderstanding was as great at Jesus' time on earth as it is today! Indeed He Himself often lamented that His disciples did not understand Him, could not understand Him! Do you think it was any different when He was no longer with them?

"Later on the Spirit came upon them," many will say here, those who give little or no thought to the matter at all! The Spirit, however, did not at the same time correct the deficiencies of the brain. Weaklings consider it sinful to think in such a way, but this is really nothing but an excuse for their spiritual indolence, which they imagine they can gloss over thereby.

You will soon be awakened from the half-heartedness of such thoughts however! "But when the Son of Man will come..." declared Christ, as a warning and a threat. Think of it when now the hour of announcement comes in which the Lord Himself reveals that He *sent* the Son of Man to this earth! Remember that with those words Christ threatened all the spiritually indolent among mankind! —

When at that time He told the rich young man to give away all his earthly possessions, this was necessary only for *him*, since he had asked: "What shall *I* do..?" And Christ gave *him* the answer, which in this sense was not meant to apply to all mankind!

Only the rich youth could profit *quite personally* from this advice. Amid all the comforts provided by his wealth he was too weak to exert himself to rise inwardly. Therefore his riches formed a hindrance to his spiritual ascent! The best advice which Christ could therefore give him was naturally to remove every obstacle, which in his case was the wealth inducing him to live a life of comfort.

But only for that reason! Not because a man should never possess wealth!

A man who does not pile up riches needlessly just for self-gratification, but who uses them *aright* by *revaluing* them and applying them for the benefit of many, is much greater and worthier than one who gives all his wealth away! He stands much higher in Creation because he furthers it!

Through his wealth such a man is able to provide employment for thousands during the whole earth-life, thereby giving them the satisfaction of having earned their own living, which strengthens and supports them both spiritually and physically! It is quite natural, of course, that a correct attitude must be preserved as regards work and rest, as also in giving the right remuneration for all work done, so that a strict and just equilibrium is upheld!

That ensures *movement* in Creation, which is indispensable to healthy development and harmony. A one-sided giving away without asking for an equivalent value, however, is contrary to the Laws of Creation, and only brings stagnation and disorders as can be seen in *everything*, including our physical bodies, where lack of movement causes a thickening and stagnation of the blood, because only *movement* causes increased metabolism of oxygen and permits the blood to flow more freely and purely through the veins.

Man finds this law of essential movement *everywhere*, in a thousand different forms, but always the same in basic principle. It arises with every individual happening, and yet in its reciprocal action it works harmoniously throughout Creation, through all the spheres. Even the spirit needs

uninterruptedly to obey this law if it wishes to continue in existence, remain strong and soar upwards.

There is nothing without this law! Movement everywhere in an absolute balance of give and take.

It was not a universal precept which the Son of God proclaimed in the advice He gave to the rich young man, but it was meant exclusively and entirely for the young man himself, or perhaps for those who are *like* him, those who are also too weak to control their riches. He who allows himself to be dominated by his wealth shall not have it either, for it does not serve him, but serves only that person who controls it, for in the latter's hand it will also bring benefits. He *shall* possess it, because he knows how to help himself and many others with it, thereby maintaining and furthering movement in Creation.

This is never or very seldom the case when things are given away! Many people are only brought to an awakening and to activity through suffering. If others help them too soon they slacken, depend upon this help and succumb spiritually, because without some stimulus they cannot remain active. Then they live on aimlessly, often spending their time *only* in observing *what* is to be criticised in others instead of looking within themselves, and yet wishing to possess what others possess. A corrupt generation is created by such one-sided giving, worthless for a robust and cheerful life, and therefore harmful to the entire Creation!

*That* was not the meaning of the advice given by Christ! — —

---

Nor did the Son of God ever speak against wealth as such, but always and only against those rich men who through their riches allowed all feelings of compassion at the suffering of others to dry up, who thereby sacrificed their spirit to their wealth, who had no interest beside their earthly possessions, in short who let themselves be entirely dominated by their riches.

That Christ Himself neither despised nor disapproved of wealth was proved by his frequent visits to the houses of the rich, where He was a welcome guest.

Neither was He Himself poor, as is strangely enough often assumed. There is no foundation for the assumption, now almost proverbial, that Christ was poverty stricken.

Christ never knew of worries caused by the struggle of life. He was born into circumstances similar to those now designated as the good middle class, because it was just this soil alone which had remained the most healthy. It was neither affected by the over-cultivation of all the rich and aristocratic circles, nor by the bitterness of the working classes. It was carefully selected. Joseph, the carpenter, could be described as well-to-do, but by no means poor.

That Christ was born in a stable at Bethlehem was merely a consequence of the overcrowding of Bethlehem due to the taking of the census, to which Joseph had also come. Joseph could simply find no lodging anywhere, something which can easily happen here and there to many a person attending some special gathering today. All this had nothing to do with poverty. In Joseph's house there would have been bedrooms such as are customary among well-to-do citizens.

Nor did Christ have to live in poverty! This idea only arose because any earthly possessions which exceeded the necessities of earthly life had no meaning for the One coming out of God. The task He had come to fulfill was not an earthly one, but purely *spiritual!*

Christ's allusion to people as being "brothers and sisters" is also being used in the wrong way today. How earthly unhealthy, akin to communistic ideas, how sickly sweet and repugnant in regard to religion. It plays directly into the hands of Darkness, for in its present interpretation it absolutely suppresses the free upward striving of the individual human spirit as willed by God. No ennoblement can ever develop out of this. Once more all these things are nothing but the unhealthy caricatures of what Christ intended.

When He spoke of all men being brothers and sisters, He was far from thinking of the manifold eccentricities such as are in vogue today. He was giving enlightenment for *that* time, when

the wicked custom of keeping slaves flourished greatly, when men were given away and sold, and thus considered as having no will of their own!

People, however, are brothers and sisters *from out of the spirit, from out of their origin*. They are *human spirits* which may not be considered as chattels without a will of their own, since every human spirit carries within itself the ability consciously to exercise its own will.

It was meant only *in that way*, and never intended to signify *that* equality of rights for which one looks in the words today! In fact no human spirit may enter Paradise just because it can call itself a human spirit. No such equality of rights exists in the general sense there. The conditions of *maturity* play a decisive role. The human spirit must first of all fulfill everything and do everything which it is able to do with its volition set on what is good. Only in this way will it so mature that it can gain access to Paradise.

Inflexible laws permeate Creation which can never be overthrown or deflected by the designation little brother and little sister because of our common origin! Nor here on earth either! How sharply the Son of God demanded the separation of the mundane from the spiritual, yet fulfillment towards both, lies clearly and distinctly in His statement: Render unto the Emperor that which is due to the Emperor, and unto God that which is due to God! —

And so it is with many sentences and reports in the Bible that men have based on their *own* views when transmitting them.

Yet all these writers did not intend at the time to make any law out of them for the whole of mankind, they only wanted to report.

It is also to be forgiven that the contemporary earthmen, and also Christ's disciples, did not understand much of what the Son of God told them, which often made Him very sad; and that later on they transmitted everything in terms of their own lack of understanding, which they did with the best of

intentions, just as it was retained in their memories, but which for the reasons already stated must not be considered as wholly authoritative.

But it is unpardonable that *later on* men simply and boldly assert as if it were a fact: *Christ said!* And thus without further ado attribute these erroneous human views, these products of a faulty human capacity to remember, categorically and finally to the Son of God. But only in order to establish and maintain by their selfish endeavours a dogma, the gaps in which from the very outset were bound to reveal to every powerful intuition that the entire structure was rotten and unsafe. Only the demand for blind faith offered the possibility to prevent these numerous shortcomings in the structure from being discovered immediately!

Such systems have been upheld, and are still today being upheld, *only* through the strict demand for blind faith and the decisive words: *Christ said!*

And this word, this scheming assertion, shall become a dreadful Judgment for them! For it is just as wrong as the presumptuous assertion that the crucifixion of Christ was willed by God in order to wash away all the sins of humanity through this sacrifice! What lies within all this, how much impudent wantonness and unbelievable human conceit were necessary to distort the murder of the Son of God in this fashion, that the future will reveal and mankind will experience in themselves.

I, Imanuel say unto you today:

Woe unto those men who once murdered the Son of God upon the cross! A hundredfold woe unto you, however, who since then have nailed Him to the cross a thousand fold in His Word, and who still murder Him daily and hourly over and over again! A heavy Judgment will fall upon you! — —

## Submissiveness.

“**T**hy will be done!” People who believe in God utter these words submissively! But a certain sadness always vibrates in their voices or lies in their thoughts, in their intuitive perceptions. These words are used almost exclusively where *sorrow* that was *inescapable* has entered. Where man realizes that he could do nothing more about it.

*Then*, if he is a believer, he will say in passive submission: “*Thy Will be done!*”

It is not humility, however, that prompts him to speak thus, but the words are meant to calm him in face of something he has been powerless to deal with.

*That* is the origin of the submission which man expresses in such a case. If, however, he were offered the slightest opportunity to alter things in any way, he would not care about the Will of God, but his submissive attitude would again quickly be changed to the form: *My will be done!*

*Such* is man! — — —

“Do with me as Thou wilt, O Lord!” and similar hymns are often to be heard at funerals. But every mourner bears within him the unshakable wish: “If I could alter it I would do so at once!”

Human submission is *never* genuine. Deeply implanted in a human soul lies the opposite. Rebellion against the fate that befalls it; and it is this very protest that causes the soul’s suffering, which “oppresses” and bows it down.

What is unhealthy in this is due to the wrong application of the meaning of these words: “Thy Will be done!” They do not belong where man and churches use them.

The Will of God lies in the Laws of this Creation! Whenever man says: “Thy Will be done!” it is tantamount to affirming:

“I will honor and obey Thy Laws in Creation!” To honor means to *observe* them, but to observe them demands to live accordingly! Only thus can man honor the Will of God!

But if he wants to observe It, if he wants to live accordingly, he must also first of all *know* It!

That is just the point, however, against which mankind on earth has transgressed in the worst way! Until now man has never concerned himself with the Laws of God in Creation! Thus not with the Holy Will of God! And yet he utters over and over again: “Thy Will be done!”

You see how unthinkingly earthman approaches God! How senselessly he seeks to apply the sublime words of Christ. Plaintively, often writhing in anguish, feeling himself defeated, but never with a joyful pledge!

“Thy Will be done” actually means: “I will act according to It” or “I desire Thy Will!” One can just as well also say: “I will obey Thy Will!”

But he who obeys also *acts*. One who obeys is not inactive; that is implied in the very word. He who obeys also *does something*.

Yet as the man of *today* says: “Thy Will be done!” he wishes to “do nothing himself”, but puts into his intuitive perception the meaning: “I remain still, *You do it!*”

He considers himself great in this, believing that he has conquered himself and “become merged” with the Will of God. Man even imagines himself superior to all others thereby, and believes he has made a tremendous advance.

All such people, however, are useless weaklings, idlers, enthusiasts, day-dreamers and fanatics, but not useful links in Creation! They are numbered among those who must be rejected in the Judgment; for they do not want to be *labourers* in the vineyard of the Lord! The humility of which they boast is nothing but indolence. They are idle servants!

The Lord demands *life*, which lies in *movement!* —

Submission! This word should not exist at all for believers in God! Simply replace it with “joyful volition”! God does not want

dull submission from men, but joyful activity!

Just look closely at those who are described as “resigned to God’s Will”. They are hypocrites who bear a great lie within them!

Of what use is it to cast a glance of submissive resignation upwards, if at the same time man looks around with cunning, lust, arrogance, conceit or malice! This only makes him *doubly* guilty.

Submissive people bear the lie within, for submission is absolutely incompatible with “spirit”! Therefore also with a human spirit! All that is “spirit” is utterly unable to bring the quality of true submission to life within itself! Wherever it is attempted it must remain artificial, thus self-delusion or even conscious hypocrisy! But it can never be genuinely felt because the human spirit, being spiritual, is incapable of it. The pressure under which the human spirit stands does not allow the quality of submission to become conscious. The pressure is too strong for this. And therefore man cannot practice it either.

Submission is a quality that lies solely in the animistic! Only in the animal does it find genuine expression. The *animal* is submissive to its master! But the spirit does not know this designation! Therefore it *always* remains unnatural for the human being.

Submission was drilled into slaves with difficulty and harshness, because they were put on a par with animals in sale and purchase, as personal property. Yet the submission could never become really genuine in these slaves. It was either dullness, fidelity or love that lay hidden under the submission and gave it expression, but never true submission. Slavery is unnatural among men.

The submission of the animistic finds its enhancement in the spiritual in conscious and willed loyalty! What denotes submission in the animistic, therefore, is loyalty in the spiritual!

Submission does not befit man; because he is of the spirit! Just pay closer attention to the language itself, which indeed

expresses in its words what is right, and bears the true meaning in it. It gives you the right picture.

For instance, the victor also says to the vanquished: "Submit!" In this word lies the meaning: "Surrender yourself to me unconditionally so that I may deal with you as I see fit, even over life or death!"

But in this the victor acts wrongly; for even in victory man has to conform strictly to the Laws of God. Otherwise with every neglect of them he makes himself guilty before the Lord. The reciprocal action will then strike him without fail! This applies to the individual as well as to entire peoples!

And now the time has come when everything, everything that has hitherto taken place in the world, must be redeemed! Including all the injustices of the last World War. What has been wrong, what is happening on earth *today*, *not one word will remain unatoned for!*

The atonement is not reserved for a distant future, but is already taking place in the *present time!*

Thus the *speedy* release of *all* the reciprocal actions is not opposed to the Law of Creation, but lies quite correctly in the Law itself.

The action of the mechanism is at present accelerated by the power of the radiation of the Incarnated Law which enforces final effects by first driving everything to fruition and over-ripeness, so that the false will decay therein and in withering away judge itself, while the good will become free from the hitherto existing pressure of the wrong and can gain strength!

In the near future this radiation will be so intensified that in very many cases the reciprocal action will come at *once*, *instantaneously!*

This is the power which will soon alarm earthmen, and which they will then have to fear in the future! But only *those* who have done *wrong* need fear it, and rightly so. Whether they have thought themselves in the right, or have tried to make others believe they were, it will not save them from the blow of the reciprocal effect that operates in the *Laws of God!* Even

though men have devised different laws on earth, under whose protection many act wrongly and unjustly in the delusion that they are thereby also in the right, it does not absolve them of one particle of their guilt.

The Laws of God, thus the Will of God, do not concern themselves with the opinions of these earthmen, which they have laid down in their mundane laws, even though the whole world has now considered them to be right. Whatever is not in harmony with the Divine Laws, there also the blow of the Sword will now strike! Judging in the process of redemption!

All those who in the light of God's Laws have suffered *innocently* at the hands of men may now rejoice; for henceforth they shall receive justice, while their adversaries or judges are delivered up to the Justice of God.

Rejoice; for this Divine Justice is near! It is already working in every country on earth! Look at the confusion! This is the effect of the *approaching* Will of God! It is the setting-in of the purification!

It has been prophesied that the foot of the God-sent Messenger would not step into the dust of that which has-been!

For this reason everything that is wrong among men is already *now* meeting with its doom, be it in economics, the state, politics, the churches, sects, peoples, families and also in the individual! Everything, everything is now dragged before the Light, *so that it may reveal and simultaneously judge itself therein!* Also what has hitherto been able to remain hidden *must* reveal itself as it *really* is, must become active, and thus finally, despairing of itself and others, disintegrate and turn to dust. There is nothing on this earth now which would be pleasing to God!

Thus even now there is a boiling up under the pressure of the Light in all countries, everywhere. Every kind of tribulation is increasing to the point of despair, until finally nothing remains but hopelessness, with the realisation that the would-be saviours had *only empty words* besides selfish desires, but could offer no help! Warriors of the Grail are sweeping over all

humanity, and striking sharply where a head refuses to bow.

Only then will there be the right soil that pleads once more for *God's* help! After murder and fire, starvation, pestilence and death, after man has recognized his own incapacity.

However, in the midst of the despair helpers in the service to the Grail will begin their task! The great upbuilding begins.

No one else can bring help to the broken ones. Then they shall become free, free from the pressure of the Darkness! But they shall also become free *within themselves*! To become free within, however, can only be achieved by each individual *alone*. Yet for this he must know what freedom means, what it *is*.

*Only the man who lives in the Laws of God is free!* Thus and not otherwise does he stand unoppressed and unconstrained in this Creation. Everything then serves him instead of obstructing his path. It "serves" him because he uses it in the right way.

God's Laws in Creation are in truth simply all that every man needs for a healthy, happy life in Creation. They are, as it were, nourishment for his well-being! Only he who knows the Will of God and lives accordingly is really free! All the others must bind themselves in many threads of the Laws of this Creation, because they entangle themselves.

Creation originated only in the Will of God, in His Laws. Working together, the threads of these Laws sink deeper and deeper, everywhere enforcing movement towards development, and inevitably branching out more and more in the course of development, while in the continuous movement new creations are perpetually formed around the threads. Thus these Laws provide at the same time the support, the possibility of continued existence and the further expansion of Creation.

Nothing exists without this Will of God, Which alone gives movement. Everything in Creation conforms to It.

Only the human spirit has *not* adjusted itself to these threads! It has tangled them and thereby entangled itself, because it wanted to follow new roads according to *its* will, and disregarded those already prepared and in existence.

The earthly presence of the Will of God is now changing this. The threads of all the Divine Laws in Creation are being charged with increased energy, so that they become powerfully taut. This enormous tension causes them to spring back into their original position. What is tangled and knotted is thereby disentangled, so suddenly and irresistibly that everything that cannot still adapt itself to the right position in Creation is simply torn down in this process!

Whatever it may be, whether plant or animal, whether mountains, streams, countries, states or man himself, all will collapse that cannot prove itself at the last moment to be genuine and willed by God!

---

## Ethereal briars.

**T**he Path to the Light and to the Truth has long been described as thorny and stony, toilsome and hard.

Man simply accepts this as a fact. Nobody wonders *why* this is so, what may be the actual reason for it. And he who *does* occupy himself with it for once is almost certain to form a wrong picture.

Only a path that is little used and left *uncared-for* is stony, toilsome and difficult, and beset with thorns!

*That* is why it appears difficult to the few who, after many errors, choose to tread it. Here too the natural process must always be taken into consideration, and not those fantastic fabrications and inventions which a human brain likes to dwell on when thinking of such things.

From the very beginning the path to the Light was also only luminous and beautiful. It is no different today either for *that* human being who strides along it with a *free* spirit, unhindered by the wrong opinions with which many only too gladly allow their spiritual paths to be planted and overgrown!

It depends entirely on man! A human being who still allows his spirit to look *freely* to the Light, and who has never neglected to weigh with his intuitive perception what he is taught or told by his fellow-man, has thus *tended* the way to the Light and kept it clear for himself! As he goes on his way he will find neither thorns nor stones, but luminous, soft carpets of flowers that only enchant his eyes and lend wings to his feet!

Each one has to tend the path for himself, has to care for it and occupy himself with it. Whoever neglects to do this will consequently find it stony and beset with thorns, hard to walk on and also very often completely buried, so that finally he can no longer discover it, even when he looks for it!

Man must weigh what he hears and reads in his intuitive perception! This is essential for him if he wishes to keep his path clear and beautiful. If he does so when he begins to read or listen to something, he will immediately perceive whether it oppresses, perhaps confuses him, or warms him, as though it has a familiar sound.

He must ever bear in mind that true greatness and naturalness are always anchored *in simplicity!* Where *this* is lacking, and where all kinds of designations have to be used, something is wrong. Such paths will never be clear nor can they be sunny.

So, for instance, when he reads or hears anything that is mystical or occult, any inwardly clear person will at once strongly perceive what is obscure; and this applies also to the dogmas of the churches. Vagueness or high-sounding words are intended to conceal the ignorance that is all too evident everywhere. Moreover people are very ready to flatter human souls and to sing a sweet song to their main weaknesses, above all to their conceit, so that they will glide easily and willingly over all the rotten places, and heedlessly disregard the great gaps and impossibilities which again and again rise up before them as a warning.

But he who listens to the quiet warning of his undimmed spirit keeps free his path to the Light and to the Truth.

On the other hand, whoever lets himself be enticed by the vague and sultry, because it gives unlimited scope to his fantastic thoughts, allows the clear path within him to become overgrown with creepers that hinder his free progress, making it more difficult, and often even preventing it altogether!

The temptation to give unlimited scope to one's own fantastic visions is very great. The number of those who indulge with pleasure in this field seems to be endless, because everyone can voice his opinion, and may feel himself important in the gloomy uncertainties of a world of confused thoughts!

To wrench themselves free for the Truth will not be nearly so hard for the church believers as for adherents of occult sects

and groups. They only need to make a little earnest effort and for once weigh matters quietly within, to recognize immediately the gaps woven into them by intellectual pseudo-knowledge, which darken and confuse the true path!

No great exertion is needed for the earnest human spirit to distinguish quickly between truth and error in all the churches. Therefore for the truly discerning the tie through the churches is not so great as it may seem! A simple, sincere volition already suffices to burst these ties at once in the quick awakening of *personal* conviction.

The church only keeps its hold over spiritually *indolent* human spirits. But they are no great loss, because they thereby prove themselves to be lazy servants of their Lord.

With calm observation, everyone will very soon realize that the church today represents nothing more than an organization striving for *worldly* power and self-preservation, as the attitude and actions of its servants demonstrate anew every hour, through the agitations and hostilities directed against those who are not prepared to serve them to this end! It is not difficult to recognize all this, nor to discover all the hollowness and impossibilities that are interwoven with their actions, assertions and doctrines. No keen spirit is needed for this.

Therefore a church cannot cause such great harm to *thinking* people as is often assumed. It is incapable of binding those who are *alive* in spirit!

On the other hand, occult sects and groups of all kinds cause unequalled and almost irreparable harm to the human spirit! And this despite the fact that they only try to present their own pseudo-knowledge, which is *anything* but true knowledge! They flatter the intellectuals as well as all seekers. And they are successful in this, for even among the seekers there is a great number who, though they seek the Light, still drag with them all the vanities of their souls, to which of course they soon fall victim.

As it is just occultism as well as mysticism which offer these vanities unlimited opportunities for development, they are also drawn there according to the Law of Attraction of Homogeneous Species! Occultists have often noticed the outermost and least *effect* of this law, and seek to make use of it. Giving themselves an air of importance, they call their feeble activities in this natural happening “magic”! It sounds well, and at the same time provides an air of mystery!

But they do not yet know the *Law* as such in its greatness, in its simplicity, and yet in reality in its compelling significance, as it glowingly permeates the worlds! They do not realize that with all their pseudo-knowledge they are being pushed about like wretched, helpless puppets in the grip of this Law of Creation!

The activities of these people *bind* their fellow-travelers and adherents to *lower planes*, which they would not even need to consider if they calmly proceeded along their path in all simplicity and dignity, as befits the human spirit. As it is, they are held back and for the most part are even lost through it for that reason; for it requires an immense effort by the human spirit to free itself from the spirit-binding trivialities of all occultists. Such practices divert spiritual energies from the straight path that leads upwards! Only a few are able to muster sufficient strength to extricate themselves, since strong *spirits* will in any case not remain among the occultists, unless it be to indulge their vanity.

If in the numerous branches of occultism some knowledge is for once actually found, it concerns *only* the lowest environment of fine gross matter or perhaps gross fine matter, and never anything else. These are the nearest transitional planes, which have been given high-sounding names for greater effect, in keeping with the conceit of all the goppers.

In reality it is of practically no value. Or is it! Certainly not for the ascent, but rather for the *binding* of every human spirit, which in its original state could have passed proudly and freely over this without lingering there. As it is, however, they attach

such importance to these futilities that they become creepers, which, through the practices of the occultists, Lucifer's henchmen now use as snares for hundreds of thousands! And there they remain, caught like flies in spiders' webs.

Just look at their books! What a sickening amount of self-praise have these wiseacres, great and small, amassed in them!

Ridiculously trivial and obvious events are built up and magnified with a tenacity and persistence that could be applied to better things. Events which great-grandmothers interpreted much more clearly than those descendants, who so blatantly seek to draw attention to themselves and their exalted knowledge. The more absurd the stories, and the more incomprehensible the mode of expression in its affected style, the more beautiful they are thought to be. Sensation at any cost is often their main object, as with so many of the newspaper writers now appearing in hordes, to whom nothing is any longer sacred, least of all the Truth.

It is incredible how much is let loose in this respect on humanity! And many are only too pleased to seize on it. After all, it is "interesting", and may sometimes even make the flesh creep. The reader or listener can follow up the train of thought, reveling in slight shudders, or even playing a role in it; for he feels himself surrounded by the most uncanny things that have never worried him before. Now he suddenly finds that through this he *is* somebody, around whom many a thing takes place *on his account!*

Just all that a human being does not quite understand, but which he can embellish with a fantastic imagination the "*possibilities*" are tempting! Much of their past experience they then interpret according to their own ideas, and some of this, which has never even been considered until now, suddenly becomes of great importance.

The life that has been so empty acquires a meaning! *According to his opinion* the man has gained much, he has awakened, and calls himself spiritually knowing!

These strange human beings! It no longer occurs to them that in reality it could be *different*. They simply wallow in a world of their own thoughts, which is so comfortable for them, because it has arisen from their own conceptions.

But this world is not lasting! It is bound to collapse in the hours of the Judgment! And then all these souls will stand without support, shivering in unspeakable despair, and will be drawn along in the vortex that must suddenly develop like a typhoon through the pressure of the Light.

Thus they all receive only what they created for themselves! Immeasurable is the damage they cause through their vanity. They have distorted and twisted the sacred concepts that actually help mankind in their ascent. All that remains are the most filthy substitute pictures, bearing the stamp of coarsest human conceit. This alone holds the threat of a terrible Judgment!

Frightful confusion has been brought about. Superficial observations of quite remote ramifications of what actually happens in Creation have been established as knowledge, intended to serve as an enlightenment on causes and processes, without those who talk in this way having any true knowledge of the Laws of this Creation. They have not even the faintest idea of them, and merely draw upon their whipped-up imagination!

Thus they distort the Wisdom of God that rests in Creation, they defile sacred laws which they do not understand, indeed do not even know, and prevent thousands from taking the simple and clear path, which is precisely laid down for and also beneficial to every human spirit, and protects them from dangers! They themselves, however, first call forth innumerable dangers that never existed before, but which have only been formed through their careless practices!

But the day is approaching when their hollow pseudo-knowledge has to face the Light, when they must confess and collapse! They are the worst enemies of all those on earth who strive towards the Light; they do not possess a single quality

which could serve as an excuse at the time of weighing! Without realizing it they are the most zealous among those who catch souls for the Darkness. Unknowingly, because vanity has dimmed their own vision! Nor will they ever muster the strength to save themselves; for they are much too entangled in the nets of earthly pseudo-knowledge and errors, in which they have buried themselves!

In their boundless presumption they not only belittle God's great Love, but some even attempt to develop themselves into god-men!

Soon all mankind will have to recognize what boundless stupidity is contained in *this very* thought. This alone shows that these human beings cannot have the remotest idea of the true Laws of God in Creation, nor of this Creation itself!

They even build a throne for the human spirit itself, which should only *serve* the Light in Creation! They try to exalt it to the focal point, indeed even the starting point.

If today someone suffering from distress of body or soul turns to his God in fervent prayer, and receives a hearing that permits him to regain his health, these people who think they know better offer one-sided explanations which tend to belittle God. They speak of auto-suggestion having brought about this healing, of a power inherent *in the human body*, in the human spirit, enabling it to create everything, whatsoever it wishes in the right way!

They are quick to make a great song about *men's* ability, and the sacredness of belief and conviction in the Power of God is defiled! Defiled! That is the right word. For many even wish thereupon to assert that the Son of God Himself formerly worked by suggestion, and relied on auto-suggestion.

So far does the human conceit of some occultists venture! They have come to deny God, and they exalt the human spirit!

Not all of them will admit this, because they do not see that in the end their teachings can only get to this point! Denial of God's inviolable Might is without fail the last fruit borne by these teachings if one looks to the end!

With Luciferian cleverness they distort the facts into a picture which has a very convincing effect on the intellect, but to those who know, it shows the sharp line of demarcation at which the understanding of such occultists cannot proceed further. It merely shows a volition of the intellect, but no trace of a pure spiritual knowledge! It is the crudest self-deception, that makes occultists regard themselves as disciples of pure spiritual sciences! There is almost a subtle irony in this!

With all they do and say, they merely prove ever anew that they have the most pronounced intellectual volition, with a very special emphasis on all its weaknesses, and that they have remained far removed from spiritual knowledge, in the face of which they are completely helpless. They have no idea of the true nature of all the lawful activity in Creation, still less do they understand the wondrous Creation itself.

Even with the miraculous healings and miracles of Christ, this lawfulness in Creation was never invalidated. It could not have been, since the Laws of God in Creation are already *perfect* from the very beginning, and thus can be neither changed nor set aside.

Divine Power speeds up all operations of the Laws, and can thus work these *miracles*. The process itself is always in harmony with the Laws of Creation; for nothing that happens in Creation can take a different course, not even the simplest movement. But the high Power of Divine origin is able to accelerate the *effect*, and in some cases to release it instantly! In this lies and arises what to the human spirit is a *miracle*!

Even God will never act arbitrarily, because He bears all the Laws within Him in the purest form, and is also the Law Himself. Every Divine Act will therefore always correspond with the Law. Consequently every Act of Will of God always takes effect only in complete harmony with the nature of these Laws!

Let us take the case of a sick person who in prayer begs fervently for healing. During this prayer he is wide open spiritually to the fulfillment of his plea; he is humble in the

purest sense. Because of this the prayer rises upwards, and on the radiation of this humble plea the granting of it can in turn come down to him. This granting is a *volition* out of the Light! The volition lies in the Light itself, ever unchanged, always ready to extend help wherever it finds the right soil for it. The humble request is the right soil, where the pure Power of the Light can work. This is certainly also a merit of the human spirit, because it opened itself to the possibility for help; just as it is also a consequence of a certain activity or volition by this human spirit, *but it is never also the cause of the recovery itself. It is not at the same time the Power which could and did help him!*

The human being can only open himself for this, but can never also heal himself through auto-suggestion! At this point the occultist, in his short-sightedness, confuses this *opening* of oneself towards help with the help itself! Through this he has burdened himself with a tremendous guilt, for which he will have to atone heavily, because unspeakable disaster to mankind has been caused through it!

As the help in the Light *always* lies ready for those who open themselves to it in the right way, and as it even *surrounds* them *always* for the small things, because for this purpose part of it rests in the correspondingly weakened radiations in this Creation itself, therefore the so-clever human beings, in their arrogance, finally concluded from their observations that it is *the human spirit* who is able to provide this help for himself.

Indeed he can *procure* it, but only by opening himself spiritually in the right way to *admit* it! Nothing more! He does not produce the help as such, the power, the radiation for it. This lies in the Light alone, in God Who sends it to you!

Man, however, merely observes the *effect*, and *from this* draws his conclusions, which have hitherto proved in many instances to be fallacies, arising from his inherent conceit! He could achieve quite different things with the *right* attitude, that is, with the right and great opening of his spirit! However, he has obstructed this for himself through the teachings of

some occultists who would like to exalt themselves to be god-men! Because the Primordial Laws of Creation are things alien to them.

With a thousandfold ramifications and branchings, yet ever following the urge of the fundamental Law, the radiations of the strengthening and thus also healing Light are woven into Subsequent Creation, waiting for the creature to use them! They are not *in* the human spirit, much less in the human body itself, but *outside* it. The human spirit must seek the connection and open itself for the receiving in the right way, which is best achieved by deep and earnest prayer.

As the help in the Light always lies ready for the human spirit if it *wishes* to open itself to it, many a person will find a little help through opening himself by some method which he has taught himself. Wherever such help has been given, there have been moments of such intuitive perception in a human spirit as truly correspond with the Laws in Creation, so that the link with the help could be established. The person need not have been aware in the earthly sense of this intuitive perception, for it is a purely spiritual happening which very often goes unnoticed by the earthly intellect. The impulse of a moment is enough for this. And therewith the help from the Light was set in motion, because the Laws that exist for this purpose will never be overthrown! They are fulfilled even though a person is *unconscious* of it.

The occultist, however, perceives nothing of this; he firmly believes that he has really achieved it by his suggestion alone, or by auto-suggestion! Here he deludes himself, for help will never come to him when an even stronger power is needed than that which lies ever ready within Creation.

For then a special Act of Will of the Light must first set in from Above to strengthen the current of power! And this can only come about as the consequence of a truly fervent prayer, of a request that arises from conviction of the Omnipotence and Love of God!

---

Sometimes genuine intercession may also bring the effect of help! When a person falls seriously ill he is inwardly weak, apathetic and completely neutral. Thus there is no resistance in him, even if at other times he was not so devout. This condition of his spirit allows the Power of the Light, which can be channeled by genuine intercession, to enter! And so it happens that a person may sometimes also receive help *through intercession*.

If on regaining his health, however, resistance to a genuine belief should again arise within him, his guilt will increase accordingly. It would then, of course, have been better if he had died *after all*, because at his subsequent passing he is bound to fall deeper than he would have done earlier! For these reasons not every intercession is either justified or right. Fortunately for man, in the best interest of the sick person, even the genuine intercession is often *not* heeded!

Through misconstruing the effect of these simple Laws of Creation, aspiring occultists have formed an incomplete picture, and have thus led thousands into a maze from which they will find it hard to escape.

The glory of the words “pure faith” and “pure conviction” has thus been poisoned, and just the inferior achievements of the intellect in the realm of suggestion and auto-suggestion have been held out to men as a sordid imitation.

The path towards perfection of the human spirit is closed to occultists through themselves!

The hour is near, however, when a halt will be called to these evil practices, when at last the higher knowledge of the Power of the Light will again move in for the uplifting and salvation of many human spirits!

---

## Indolence of the spirit.

**T**he cosmic clock can be heard on earth as it now booms out the hour of twelve through the Universe! Frightened, Creation holds its breath, and every creature bows down in fear; for the Voice of *God* rings down and demands! Demands that you render account, you who have been permitted to live in this Creation!

You have mismanaged the bounty which God in His Love made over to you. All those servants who have thought only of *themselves* and never of their Master will now be expelled! And all those who sought to make themselves the master. —

You men shy away from my words, for you do not consider severity Divine! But that is only *your* fault, because until now you have imagined everything Divine, everything that comes down from God, to be tenderly loving and all-forgiving, since that is what the churches have taught you!

But these false teachings were only intellectual schemes aimed at the mass capture of human souls on earth. In order to catch something, a bait is needed that is attractive to everything at which it is aimed. The right choice of bait is the main thing for each catch.

Now as this was intended for *human souls*, a plan based on *their* weaknesses was skilfully devised. The lure had to correspond to the main weakness! And this main weakness of the souls was love of ease, the indolence of their spirit!

The church knew very well that it was bound to achieve great success as soon as it showed much leniency towards *this* weakness, and did not require it to be overcome!

Recognising this aright, it built for earthmen a broad and easy road that was ostensibly to lead to the Light, and displayed it enticingly to these earthmen who would prefer to give one-tenth

of the fruits of their labour, go on their knees and murmur prayers by the hundred, rather than exert *themselves spiritually for even one moment!*

Therefore the church took the spiritual effort away from men, also pardoning all their sins if they were obedient outwardly and in the earthly sense, and carried out what *the church* required of them in mundane ways!

Whether in the way of church attendance, confessions, in the number of prayers, in tributes or in donations and bequests, no matter what, the *church* was satisfied. They left the believers under a delusion that everything they did for the *church* would also secure them a place in Heaven.

As if the church could allot these places!

However, the achievements and the allegiance of all believers links them only *with their church*, not with their God! Neither the church nor its servants can take away from or even forgive a human soul one particle of its guilt! Just as little are they permitted to canonise a soul, and thereby interfere in God's perfect eternal Primordial Laws of Creation, which are immutable!

How can *men* presume to vote and also to decide on matters that rest in the Omnipotence, the Justice and the Omniscience of God! How dare earthmen try to make their fellow-men believe such things! And it is no less sacrilegious for earthmen credulously to accept such claims, which so plainly carry within them only a dishonoring of the Sublimity of God!

Anything so incredible can only be possible with thoughtless people of herd mentality, who by such action brand themselves with the mark of the greatest spiritual indolence; for the most simple reflection must enable anyone instantly and easily to realize that such presumptions cannot even be explained by human conceit or arrogance, but contain grave blasphemies!

The reciprocal effect must be terrible!

The time of God's forbearance is now indeed over. Holy Wrath strikes the ranks of those offenders who thereby seek to dupe humanity on earth in order to increase and preserve their authority, whereas within themselves they clearly sense that

here it is a question of matters far beyond the level to which they can ever be entitled to rise!

How dare they dispose of the Kingdom of God in Eternity! Overnight the Ray of Divine Wrath will awaken them from their unbelievable spiritual slumber and ... *judge* them! — — —

What does a man give to his God by obedience to the church! He does not have with it a single, *natural* intuitive urge, which alone can help him to ascend.

I say to you that men can in truth only serve God with just *that* which did *not* come to life through the churches: With their *own* thinking and *independent* investigation! Everyone must journey *alone* through the mills, through the mechanism of the Divine Laws in Creation. And therefore it is necessary for *every man himself* to become acquainted at the right time with the nature and function of the mills.

But this is just what many a church has persistently withheld, so that the believers could not develop the necessary *personal* reflection and intuitive perception. Thereby they robbed man of that staff which alone can guide him safely and direct him towards the Light, and tried instead to force upon every man an interpretation, the acceptance of which was bound to bring benefit only to the *church*. Benefit, influence and power!

Human souls can serve their Creator only by the *activity of their own spirit*! Thereby, however, in the first place they are also simultaneously serving themselves. Only *that* human spirit which stands bright and alert in this Creation, aware of its Laws and adapting itself to them in thought and deed, is pleasing to God, because it is then fulfilling the purpose of existence, which every human spirit has in this Creation!

But this never lies in the observances that the churches demand of their believers! For these lack naturalness and free conviction, knowledge, as the *main requisite* of true service to God! There is a lack of vigour and joy in helping all creatures to advance, in letting their souls exult in the happiness of knowing that they can contribute to the beauty of this Creation as a part of it, and *thereby* thank and honor the Creator!

Instead of joyful, free worshippers and proclaimers of God, the church has cultivated church-slaves for itself! It has thrust *itself* before men's free upward gaze! Thereby obscuring true Light. It has only bound and gagged the human spirits, instead of awakening and liberating them. Wantonly it has kept the spirits in slumber, oppressed them, restrained their desire for knowledge, and forbidden the knowledge itself through regulations that are contrary and opposed to the Will of God! All this in order to uphold its *own* power.

Even as in olden times they have not shrunk from various forms of torture, torment and murder, so today they do not hesitate to slander their fellow-men, speak ill of them, undermine their reputation, agitate against them, and put every available obstacle in their way if they are not willing to join the host of church-slaves! They work with the most sordid means only for *their* influence, *their* earthly power. But through the reciprocal action this now will also be the very first to waver and collapse; for it is the opposite of what *God* wills! It shows how far removed they are from humbly serving *God!* —

Enticed by the sanctioned indolence of the spirit, endless multitudes have allowed themselves to be drawn into the fold of the church, which lulls them to sleep! They believed the wicked delusion of a cheap atonement for their sins, and as the spiritually indolent masses grew so did the earthly influence, with the final goal of earthly power! The people did not see that the false view and teaching only obscured and defiled the Sacred Justice of Almighty God; they saw only the thus simulated broad and easy road to the Light, which in reality does not exist at all! Through its arbitrary, illusory forgiveness it leads to Darkness and destruction!

The self-glorification of all the churches, which is hostile to God, separates their believers from God instead of leading them to Him. The doctrines were false! But the people should easily have found this out *themselves*, for they clearly contradict the simplest sense of justice! And therefore the church believers are *just as guilty* as the churches themselves!

The churches, whose servants themselves loudly proclaim my coming in the words of Christ from the Gospel of John, from where they devoutly read to their faithful:

“Howbeit when he, the Spirit of truth, is come, he will guide you into all truth. And when he is come, he will reprove the world of sin, and of righteousness! And will bring the Judgment. I, however, go to the Father and you will henceforth not see me. I came forth from the Father and am come into the world. Again, I leave the world and go to the Father!”

These words are read in the churches without understanding; for it is quite clearly stated by the Son of God that *another* than He will come to proclaim the Truth and to bring the Judgment. The Spirit of Truth Who is the Living Cross. And yet in this matter, too, the church teaches wrongly and against these clear words.

Even though Paul also once wrote to the Corinthians: “For *we* know in part. But when that which is perfect is come, then that which is in part shall be done away!”

Here the Apostle shows that the coming of Him Who will proclaim the Perfect Truth is yet to be expected, and that the prophecy of the Son of God concerning it should not be taken to refer to the well-known outpouring of the Power of the Holy Spirit, which at that time had already taken place when Paul wrote these words.

He testifies thereby that the Apostles did *not* regard this outpouring of Power as the fulfillment of the mission of the Comforter, the Spirit of Truth, as strange to say many churches and believers now try to interpret it at Whitsuntide, because these things would not otherwise fit into the structure of their faith, but would form a gap which must cause serious shocks to this false edifice.

Yet it avails them nothing; for the time has come for the recognition of all these things, and everything that is false collapses!

Until now there could not yet be a true Pentecost for mankind;

---

the recognition through spiritual awakening could not come to them, since they acquiesced in so many false interpretations, in which the churches especially have a great share!

Nothing of their great guilt will be remitted to them! —

Now you men stand amazed before the new Word, and many of you are no longer even capable of perceiving that It comes from the Luminous Heights, because It is so different from what you had imagined! For in you, too, there certainly still lives some of the tenacious indolence in which the churches and the schools have enveloped you, so that you would remain faithful followers, and have no longing for the awakening of your own spirit!

Until now men on earth have been indifferent to what *God* demands! Once more, however, I say to you: The broad and easy road which the churches have hitherto tried to simulate for their own advantage is *wrong*! With its promise of an arbitrary, illusory forgiveness, it does not lead to the Light!

For you who are earnestly striving for the Truth, for you it shall become Pentecost now. Enlightenment shall come upon you. With a roar the Light will descent and penetrate into you as long as you are properly opened for it!

---

## “Motion” – A law of Creation.

Look about you, men, and you will see how you have to live here on earth! It is not difficult to recognize the Primordial Laws in Creation if you only strive to *observe* everything around you in the right way.

*Motion* is a basic law in the entire Creation, thus also on earth. Motion of the *right* kind. But it is just *this* law which has been disregarded and also applied in the wrong way.

It was only through motion that everything could come into being. Upon motion, incessant motion, therefore depends the *preservation* and *restoration* of all that Creation embraces. Man cannot be considered an exception. He cannot be the only one among the creatures to remain stationary in the midst of this animating movement, or go his own way without harm to himself.

The intellectual goal of many people on earth today is rest and a comfortable life. To spend the last years of their life on earth in comfort is for many human beings the crowning of all their activity. But what they are longing for is poison, and they bring about the beginning of their end therewith!

Surely you have often heard it sympathetically expressed in cases of death: “He has not been able to enjoy his rest very long; it was only a year ago that he retired to private life!”

Such remarks are very often made. No matter whether it is a business man, an official or a soldier, as soon as a person “retires”, as it is popularly called, he quickly begins to decline and death is not far off.

He who observes his surroundings with a keen eye will notice much in this respect. He will see that he experiences such things *surprisingly* often, and he will finally search for a very definite reason for this and recognize a law governing it.

The man who really retires here on earth, who wishes to rest from his activities until the end of his life, such a man will be cast aside by the law of rhythmic movements of this Creation as being an over-ripe fruit, because all the swinging, the movement around him, is much stronger than the movement *within himself*, which must keep in step. Such a man *is bound* to grow weak and fall ill. Only when his individual swinging and alertness keep pace with the prevailing movement in Creation, only then can he remain healthy, hearty and happy.

The saying: Stagnation is retrogression gives an idea of this great law. Movement alone assures progress and preservation for everything that is to be found in Creation! I have already firmly established this in my lecture "Life"!

He who literally wishes to retire completely here on earth has no longer any goal before him, and thus no right to continue living in this Creation, because he has set an "end" to himself through his volition! The swinging of Creation, however, does not *show* any end, it *has* no end! Continuous development through movement is a law in the Will of God and can therefore never be circumvented without ill effect.

You will surely have noticed that those people who have continually to exert themselves in order to earn their living are often much healthier and live longer than those who have been very well off since their youth, who have been watched over and looked after in the most careful manner. You will also have observed that people who have grown up in wealthy circumstances and who use all the remedies for their bodies they can get, and who live comfortably and without excitement; that such people show the outward signs of approaching old age much earlier than those not endowed with earthly possessions, who always have to spend their days in working!

As an example I am pointing to *those* cases of a life filled with work where there is no unnecessary exaggeration, where there is no mad craving to accumulate earthly riches or to attain to some earthly prominence, which prevents the worker from ever really resting. He who becomes a slave to such a mania is

always under high tension, and *also* brings disharmony into the rhythm of Creation. The consequences for him are the same as for those who swing too slowly. Thus the happy medium is also necessary here for everyone who wishes to stand *aright* in Creation and on earth.

Whatever you do, man, do it with *your whole heart!* Work during your working hours, and rest during the necessary time of rest. Do not mix the two!

The greatest poison threatening the harmonious fulfillment of your humanity is one-sidedness!

A life full of work but without any spiritual aim, for instance, is of no avail! The physical body would swing in the rhythm of Creation but the spirit would stand still! And if the spirit does not simultaneously swing in the God-willed rhythm of Creation, then the body that does swing in with it will not be maintained and strengthened through its work, but become worn out and exhausted, because it does not receive the spiritual strength which it needs through the mediation of the animistic. The stagnation of the spirit hampers the full development of the body. Consequently the body in its swinging must consume itself, causing it to wither and decay! It can no longer be regenerated because the source for this, the spiritual swinging, is lacking.

It is therefore of no use for a man who has retired from his earthly work to take regular walks in order to exercise his body, or to undertake all sorts of other earthly things to keep his body fit. He will quickly grow old and decay unless his spirit maintains the same swinging. And nothing but some definite goal which moves *the spirit* can bring about this spiritual swinging.

A spiritual goal, however, is not to be sought upon earth, but will only be found towards the Spiritual Realm, in the homogeneous plane of this wonderful Creation! It must therefore be a goal which stands above what is earthly, a goal which towers high above this life on earth!

The goal must *live*, must be alive! Otherwise it has nothing to

do with the spirit.

The man of today, however, no longer knows what is spiritual. He has substituted the working of the intellect for it, and considers intellectual activity to be spiritual activity! This now gives him the final blow which brings about his downfall, for he is clinging to something that remains on this earth together with his body when he himself must enter the beyond!

A spiritual goal is *always* something which contains *furthering values*. You will always recognize it by this! Eternal values, nothing that is transitory! Therefore whatever you wish to accomplish, whatever you now endeavour to strive for, always ask yourself first of all for the values you will consequently bring about and find. It is not too difficult if you really wish to do so!

Nine-tenths of today's sciences must be accounted as false activity and useless striving in Creation! The sciences as they are *now* practiced hinder the ascent of those who are concerned with them; they bring about stagnation and retrogression, but never that progress which leads to ascent. Man cannot unfold his wings in the so-called sciences of today; he can never achieve what he could achieve, for his wings have been pitifully clipped and destroyed. Only in simplicity of thought and action does greatness lie and power develop, for simplicity alone strives towards the Primordial Laws of Creation and harmonises with them!

Man, however, has bound and blocked himself up with his earthly sciences.

Of what use is it when a man attempts to spend his life on earth in finding out when the creature fly came into existence and how long it is likely to remain on this earth, and many other similar questions that seem to be so important for human knowledge. Just ask yourselves whom he really benefits with such knowledge! Only his vanity! Nobody else in the world. For this knowledge has nothing to do with ascent in any way whatever. Man derives no advantage from it, nor does it uplift him! Nobody gains anything from it!

Thus you must seriously scrutinise one thing after another for the actual value each proffers you. You will find that all that happens in this respect today reveals itself like a useless house of cards. Indeed the time allotted to you for your development on earth is too precious to allow you to sacrifice even one hour for such things with impunity! You become the slaves of vanity and toying thereby, for there is nothing in it which could really uplift you. It is nothing but hollow inside and dead!

Do not think that during the Judgment you can step before God's Throne and repeat some such brief scientific formula! Deeds are demanded of you in Creation. With your false knowledge, however, you are nothing but sounding brass, whereas your task in this Creation is to live vitally and build up. The man who enjoys each flower of the field, and who lifts his eyes to Heaven in gratitude for it, stands much higher before God than he who can scientifically analyse each flower without recognising the greatness of his Creator therein.

What inwardly empty, pathetic creatures you are, who call yourselves human beings; how hollow you are in your presumed knowledge, Whose very best fruit can only lead to *earthly* miserable languishing. Animals are higher in this respect than those possessing this kind of knowledge; they take, observe and act! You, however, in your learning, are the sluggards, the lazy ones in this Creation; for whatever lies in today's intellectual knowledge is not motion as demanded of you by this Creation in which everything is alive.

No altitude record of an airplane can uplift you even one step! Man does not gain anything by being the fastest runner, a skilful boxer, a bold driver, or if he knows whether the horse appeared on earth before or after the fly! Such a volition only strives for something ridiculous, i.e., for vanity. It brings no blessing to humanity, no progress, and no gain for their existence in this Creation, but only encourages them to fritter away their time upon earth. Those who pay homage to such things are slackers in this Creation, as are those who enjoy these things.

Look about you, men! Examine everything in *this light*! What does your own occupation and that of your fellow-men really mean, what value does it have! You will find little that is worthy of true humanity! *Everything has to become new*, so demands your God and Lord now with God's Power and God's Might! So far your endeavours have proved you to be useless servants in the vineyard of the Lord! For you fritter away your time in utterly useless toying, and burden the great talent lying within you as a gift from God with the unnecessary trifles of the vain earthly intellectual volition, all of which you must leave behind when you depart this life.

Awake, so that you can create for yourselves a dignified garment of the *spirit* here upon earth, and will not have to enter the beyond like paupers as you have done hitherto, in spite of the fact that you were given such great treasures for your sojourn on earth! You are like a king who childishly plays with the sceptre, and who imagines that this sceptre and the wearing of the crown alone suffice to make him a king!

What man needs to investigate in the first place is only that which helps in his ascent and thus also serves to further Creation! In all his activities he should ask himself what advantage they will bring both to himself and to mankind. *One* goal must henceforth dominate every man – to recognize and also to fulfill the place he, as a human being, must occupy in Creation!

I will tell you how it is done in other parts of Creation, and how it must now be done also here on earth in accordance with the Will of God!

If here on earth a man accomplishes something great he is honored, unless his deed arouses nothing but envy. The fame remains his until he dies, very often even beyond that time, for decades and centuries, for thousands of years.

However, this is *only on earth*, as a result of false human opinions. It became the custom in this heavy gross material mass, but not in the higher and more luminous worlds. There the rotating movement is not as sluggish as it is on earth.

There the reciprocal action takes effect more speedily, depending on the increasing lightness. There deeds are measured from quite different and natural points of view, whereas human opinions make many a deed appear great that is not great at all, and place no value upon some things of true worth.

The higher, more luminous and lighter the environment, the clearer and quicker will be the reward and the consequences. A human spirit whose deeds are good thus always ascends faster under these conditions, a really great action often pulling him upwards at the very same moment. But he cannot then rest upon his laurels as is the case here on earth, for he must continually regain this height ever anew if he wishes to remain there, and exert himself to rise ever higher. If he relaxes his efforts but once he will very quickly become over-ripe in his present environment and will decay, to use a gross material picture!

Man is nothing else fundamentally than a fruit of Creation! He is never Creation itself, much less the Creator. Within every apple slumbers the capacity to enrich this Creation with new apple trees, with flowers and fruit, but that does not make the apple the Creator. It is the automatic course of the Primordial Laws of Creation which endowed the apple with that capacity, and which forces it to act as it does in order to fulfill its task in Creation. It always and inevitably fulfils *one* task!

Men or animals may do with this apple as they wish. It either serves to preserve the species or acts as food to maintain other bodies. There is nothing in this Creation without a task. Also in all decay there is movement, value and gain.

Therefore as soon as a human being has risen to a certain height he must *maintain* himself there! He cannot and must not rest and think that he has done enough for a while, but must continually bestir himself like a bird in the air that is forced to use its wings if it wishes to remain aloft. The same simple law applies to everything, to the finest spiritual as well as to the most coarse and earthly, without change and without

distortion! It operates everywhere and must be observed. It works more quickly in what is luminous and light, and correspondingly slower in the more sluggish and gross material world, but in all cases it works with *absolute certainty!*

Such is the simplicity that lies in the working of the Laws of Creation, as well as in the laws themselves, that no college education is required to recognize them properly! Every man has the ability to understand them if only he so wills. It is extremely easy to observe them. It is only made difficult by the conceited learnedness of men who love to coin big words for the most simple things, and who thus clumsily splash about in Creation, as if in clear water, assuming an air of importance and consequently dimming the original healthy clearness.

With all his false learning man is the only one among the creatures who neglects to fill his place in Creation by swinging in its rhythm and acting correctly.

But it is the Will of God that man *must* at last come to his senses and completely fulfill his task in this Creation! If he neglects to do so he will now become over-ripe and decay as a rotten fruit of Creation. The Divine Light which God through the Son of Man is now sending into Creation affects it in the same way as the plants in a greenhouse are affected by the increased warmth, which forces them to produce flowers and fruit more quickly.

What is moving aright in the Laws of Creation is thereby revealed, also what has acted falsely. The fruits will correspond with this. The man who has toiled over things which can offer no basis for his necessary ascent has wasted his time and his strength. He has deviated from the swinging of Creation and can no longer adjust himself to it, can no longer recover in the necessary harmony, because he himself disturbs it.

Therefore learn through observation to value and use for yourself the simplicity of the Divine Laws in all their greatness, otherwise they must now crush you, because you stand as an obstacle in the way of their working. They will brush you aside as a dangerous obstruction!

*Motion* is the main commandment for everything that lies in this Creation, for Creation developed out of motion, and is maintained and always renewed by motion!

As it is in the beyond, especially in the more luminous spheres, so must it now become here on earth also, brought about by the Power of the Light! That man who swings in with the Primordial Laws of Creation will be preserved, but he who wastes his time in morbid intellectual pondering will now be destroyed by the buoyant power of movement, which has been strengthened by the Light!

Therefore you must at last become acquainted with all the Laws and adjust yourself accordingly, lest sickness or death soon overcome you.

He who does not embrace a high and luminous goal in his earthly activities cannot exist in the future, not even in an earthly sense. He must disintegrate in accordance with the Divine Laws which permeate Creation strengthened by the Light. Also spiritually he will be reduced to dust as a useless fruit that does not fulfill its purpose in this Creation.

This happening is quite simple and real, but its effects upon mankind as they still show themselves today will be formidable in the extreme! You will be spared nothing! You will still be able to exercise your will in making decisions, because this is inherent in the nature of all that is spiritual, but you will now immediately receive the retroactive effects up to the final point, with *such* speed as you do not deem possible here on earth in the sluggishness of this World of Matter.

If you so choose, go ahead and continue your blind race along the old path! Soon you will realize that God's Power is far stronger than all of mankind in Creation; for an abyss will open in front of you, abruptly and unexpectedly, and you will have to fall into it, only after first realizing that you have acted wrongly and that you still could have been saved if you had paid attention to my Word. If you had venerated and followed it in absolute obedience! From this hour on this is the unconditional requirement, for otherwise there can no longer

be any recovery for you!

On earth mankind will also be forced from now onwards to adjust themselves completely to all the Primordial Laws of Creation!

It will not suffice in the future if a person has been able to attain to a certain height here. But he will be obliged to maintain himself on that level by constant effort, for otherwise he will quickly go downwards again. Every man must again leave the position where he cannot maintain himself, for it can only be taken into account as to *how* he really *is*, not how he *was*! The "was" passes away with every change and *is* no more. The "*is*" alone is of value and valid in the Millennium.

Therefore, man, always in future remain through your real being that which you want to be taken for! You fall or rise instantly with every new change, even outwardly and gross-materially. You must never count on maintaining a post which you no longer fulfill and where you no longer belong! You must always move onward and upward! Without constant movement you can no longer maintain yourself in Creation. You cannot bask in the splendour of your ancestors, the son in the glory of his father. The wife has no share in the deeds of her husband. Each individual stands entirely alone, by himself, in this matter. Only the present is what counts for you, for it is the present which really "*is*" for a human spirit. This is how it is in the entire Creation, and this is how it shall also be in the future among the hitherto sluggish human beings on earth! God wills it thus and so it will come to pass!

---

## The physical body..

**M**an wears the physical garment which he needs for the maturing of his spirit in the World of Gross Matter with an irresponsible indifference and lack of understanding. As long as he has no pains he neglects the gift he has received and does not even dream of giving to the body what it needs, above all what would benefit it. He never attends to his body until he has damaged it and consequently feels pain, or until it somehow hampers him in carrying on his daily work, or in following some trifling pursuit or hobby.

It is true that he eats and drinks, but without due consideration and often excessively, just as it appears pleasant to him, quite indifferent to the fact that he injures his body in so doing. Nobody thinks of tending his body carefully as long as it causes him no pain. However, it is just the care of the *healthy* body which is an urgent necessity.

Man shall give to the *healthy* body what it needs. He shall observe it with all the care requisite for the proper activity of this most necessary implement in the World of Gross Matter. For indeed it is *the most precious possession* which every human being has received for his time here on earth.

But look at adolescent youth, how frivolously and carelessly they neglect their bodies, and how they abuse them with all kinds of over-exertions.

Once again the main fault lies with cultivation of the intellect in the wrong direction. This is easy for you to recognize clearly if only you truly wanted to. Observe students the way they are today and always have been! Students, who predominantly amongst the adolescents cultivate in the first place their intellects in a *one-sided* manner through their studies. How proudly have they sung, and still sing today, the

songs glorifying their college days! Chests swelled with pride! Even the alumni always love to chime in at these occasions.

But if, for once, you ask yourselves honestly what it is they are so proud of, you must examine the contents of their songs in order to find the reason. All sound-thinking people will then feel greatly ashamed, for these songs contain nothing but a glorification of drinking and flirtation, of idleness and frittering away the best time of development in man's existence on earth! The very time when man must begin to soar upwards in order to become a full-fledged human being in this Creation, in order to attain the spiritual maturity needed to enable him to fill the position which man as such must fill and fulfill in Creation in accordance with the Laws of his Creator, his Lord!

These songs show only too clearly what is considered to be most beautiful and ideal at a time when man, filled with gratitude and joy, should perceive in purity how, through his physical body, his spirit makes contact with his entire surroundings in order to work fully conscious therein, and thus with full responsibility to his Creator! At a time when every spirit, through the radiations of the generative power, begins to send its volition formingly far out into the World of Gross Matter with its many gradations.

These songs, however, are a cry of mockery against the Primordial Laws of Creation, which they oppose to the last word!

As against this there are those youths who do not go through the higher educational institutions. Here you find all the foundations to be more suitable, healthy and natural for the proper treatment of their physical bodies, provided that these young people do not indulge in some sport, or turn towards politics! For in so doing everything that is reasonable and healthy also ceases even here.

Wherever you turn to investigate you must recognize that man has no knowledge as yet of the Laws of Creation.

He has no idea of the responsibility he must unfailingly bear

for the physical body entrusted to him! Nor does he realize the value of the physical body for his position in Creation, but keeps his eyes fixed only upon this earth. However, the physical body has only the least significance in its connection with the earth as such!

And this complete ignorance about the Laws of Creation has permitted errors to creep in which continue to cause harm to many people. They permeate and infect everything!

This is the only reason why it was possible even among all the present-day churches for the nonsensical opinion to develop that sacrificial suffering and sacrificial death are pleasing to God in certain circumstances! This erroneous view has also become deeply anchored in the arts, for there the thought is frequently glorified that one person through his voluntary sacrificial or love-death can bring "redemption" to another!

This only confused mankind still further.

The Law of God, however, in its inflexible justice, does not permit one person to intervene for the guilt of another. Such a deed brings nothing but guilt upon the person who sacrifices himself, and who thereby forcibly shortens his life on earth. Like a useless rag he discards the earthly body entrusted to him as necessary for his maturing! In addition the soul suffers from the delusion that it is doing something great and pleasing to God. The one who sacrifices himself becomes *doubly* guilty through his presumption that he is able to release *another person* from his sins. He would supposedly have done better to implore forgiveness for himself alone as a great sinner before the Lord, for by his action he calls his God an unjust judge, capable of such an arbitrary act and one who can be bargained with.

In addition this is also really a blasphemy! Thus bringing a third guilt upon him through such a deed, which stands absolutely and diametrically opposed to any intuitive perception of justice.

It is personal conceit, not pure love, which brings forth such

deeds! In the beyond, when they must suffer the consequences of their deeds, these souls are soon set right, while the other person is not helped in any way by such an action and, if he knew about it and hoped for it, must become burdened still further.

It is therefore deplorable that even great artists indulged in this accursed delusion about redemption in their works. A sensitive artist should take objection to it, because it is unnatural, contrary to all lawfulness and completely unfounded!

The true Magnitude of God is diminished thereby.

Again, nothing but human conceit dares to expect from Divine Justice, which cannot be influenced, that it would be capable of accepting such a sacrifice! In this man has a higher regard for his earthly judiciary, for such a thought never occurs to him in legal practice!

By such actions man shows disregard for his physical body, not gratitude for the gross material implement lent to him for his development. He cannot do too much in caring for it, in keeping it clean and pure, because it is indispensable for this particular life on earth.

Therefore, man, learn to understand your physical body properly so that you can treat it accordingly! Only then will you become able to use it aright, to master it so that it becomes what it is meant to be for you here on earth. The first consequence of real control over your physical body shows itself in the grace and beauty of your movements, which enables the power of the spirit in the harmony with its implement to become visible.

In order that you may learn to distinguish properly in these matters, observe the people who indulge in some kind of sport! You will quickly recognize that the steeling of the body of itself does not necessarily bring about beauty of movement because it produces too much one-sidedness unless the spirit also swings in the necessary harmony. The walk of the athlete is very often anything but beautiful, his carriage seldom graceful.

The sportsman is very far from really controlling his body.

For power is derived from the spirit only! Strength from the body!

Thus a *heavy* step is evidence of ponderousness, not of power. A body which is maintained and permeated by spiritual power has *elastic* movements and strides along with a light, springy step, regardless of whether its weight is heavy or light.

A man with a heavy step always gives proof of nothing but a lack of the proper mastery of his body through his spirit. It is spiritual control which distinguishes man from the animal! In this respect the animal is subject to different laws, because its soul comes from the Animistic Realm. However, the animal fulfils these laws, its body and soul harmonise, and in its movements it always shows a very definite kind of beauty adapted to its body. In contrast to man it has a light step despite its physical weight, which is often enormous!

Go into the zoological gardens! Look at the animals there and also at the human beings. Observe them very closely just for once. You will very soon be struck by the consequences of the lack of harmony between soul and body in all *human beings*, while the animals are absolutely “natural” unless handicapped by some ailment. You will observe for yourself that man’s mode of living is wrong, that he does not control his body, does not live properly in it, and that he is not at all in harmony with it.

The same also applies to the nourishment and maintenance of the body. The animal will never overfeed its body as so many men do! It is satisfied when it no longer feels hungry, whereas in many cases man is not satisfied until he can eat no more! That is a great difference, again only called forth through the over-cultivated intellect by its endeavour to suppress all natural sense in these matters.

The animal also drinks only to quench its thirst. Man, however, cultivates within himself illusions about enjoyment which, if carried to excess, are bound to harm his body greatly. Here again I only refer to the custom among students’ associations as regards drinking, and also deprivation of sleep

which this false mode of living always entails.

It is not necessary to give further explanations on this subject, for these actions are probably well enough known for their gross foolishness. Neither the person who is most benevolent nor the person who is most narrow-minded in this matter can assert that such practices could be useful or would do no harm.

Those people who walk \*(wandeln in German means to gracefully stroll in English and is translated as walk) through the zoological gardens to see the animals show plainly that they should take a lesson from the animals how to stand aright in Creation with their physical bodies. Walking\* is hardly the correct word, for only a few of the visitors walk\*. The expression contains a conception of gracefulness and natural control, but many people hobble or stump along, either thoughtlessly or deep in thought, or they hasten along nervously, distraught and absent-minded. There is absolutely no beauty in it. You can see quite clearly that they pay no attention to the movement of their bodies, but hamper the naturalness of their movements through their false and one-sided thinking. There has been neglect ever since their youth. Many an omission therein shows itself only later, but then without fail. The consequences are inevitable.

What beauty alone lies in the words: "schreiten" and "wandeln", (i.e., gracefully strolling) \*(this refers to the German language only) You can hardly perceive the high value inherent in them. Through all this neglect of his earthly body man shows the immaturity of his spirit! A mature spirit will *always respect* his body as the necessary implement for the achievement of his earthly maturity, and he will not abuse it senselessly! He will care for it in *such a manner* as is *wholesome* for it, not as is occasionally required by its nerves, which are often whipped up through a perversion of natural conceptions.

Wherever pure spiritual power completely permeates and controls the physical body, there its movements are also *bound*

to show beauty, because in such circumstances it cannot be otherwise. There the gross material senses also become completely permeated with beauty, so that they will ennoble everything they do, regardless of what it is.

Beauty and grace are the expression of a pure human spirit in all its *activity*, which also includes the movements of the physical body!

Look about you, everything is being shown to you! You *are bound* to recognize it quickly if you stand alive in this Creation.

You will then discover how impossible man's actions have been up till now, how little he has recognized the Creation which forever remains his home! He is born into it, yet he always wishes to tear himself away, to place himself above it. This odd volition never allows him to become secure in it, because he does not thereby learn to know his home.

The earthly body of each human being is in every respect closely linked with *that* soil upon which he was born! This is in accordance with the Law of Creation governing all matter! He has to take this into account at all times. Yet he has but seldom observed it in the past. He thinks himself free in this matter, but he is not! He is just as closely connected with it as is the body of an animal! *Both* physical species are formed by the animistic! In the case of the animal, man has closely observed everything and knows about it, too. But he does not wish to place *his own* body under the homogeneous laws! That is wrong.

The earthly body is connected with *that part* of the earth where it was born! It is also closely connected with all the stars of this particular region and with all the radiations that belong thereto. Quite extensively, far more than you can imagine! Only *that* part of this earth gives the body exactly what it needs to blossom forth properly and remain vigorous. The earth also provides this in its different zones always at the proper time, and in the manner in which the gross material bodies that have been *born* into each particular zone need it!

Herbs and fruit, therefore, are advantageous and upbuilding for the human body at *that* time when the earth *produces* them!

At those times the body *needs* just such nourishment as is provided by *that* zone in which it came into existence, and with which it remains continuously connected.

Strawberries at the time of the strawberry harvest, apples at the time of the apple harvest, and so on! The same applies to all fruits and herbs. Herbal treatments are therefore beneficial at the time when the herbs are in their full vigour, also for healthy bodies!

The animistic itself offers the physical body a continuous change of foods just as it really needs them, even as the sun, rain and wind remain *best* for a healthy activity of the skin! Creation gives man everything he needs for his earthly body, and also gives it in the proper sequence and at the right time!

With all his special arts man can never achieve *that* which Creation grants him of its own accord!

Just observe this! On this earth the earthly *body* is closely connected *with that zone* in which the place of birth is located! If it is also to remain healthy in a foreign zone, if it is to retain its *full vigour* for its activity on earth, then it is necessary that the basis for the feeding of the body must be that provided by the zone where it was born. With care he will then be able to create a bridge which for a time makes it possible to unfold his full powers, but never permanently! Now and then he must return in order to obtain new vitality! But in spite of everything he will also *shorten* his life on earth!

It is not arbitrary or accidental that earthmen are of different form and colour.

The Primordial Laws of Creation place them in the exact region which alone serves for their maturing on earth, and also equip them accordingly!

The animistic fashions your earthly bodies, and at the same time the nourishment for their maintenance! But the effects are only uniform in a particular zone in a particular part of the

earth! You men are no different in these matters from the plants and the animals, for you, too, are a fruit of Creation; nothing but creatures who are and remain closely connected with the zone and the radiations of that part of the earth where you came into being.

This is the reason why during the upheavals already proceeding on this earth the earthly bodies too must be changed, otherwise they can no longer exist! They change with the changing workings of the elementals! This causes changes in the radiations as well, thereby also of the climate and the development of forms and the preservation of all Materiality. Under the new rays of the Light!

Therefore observe and learn from every activity in Creation! It is your duty to obey the Primordial Laws of Creation if you wish to achieve that which will benefit you and help in your ascent! If you are to exist in the future at all!

---

## Temperament.

There are people who excuse many of their faults, even to themselves, as being due to their temperament!

That is wrong! He who acts in this manner shows that he has become nothing but a slave to himself. Man is of the *spirit*, which remains as the highest form of all that is self-conscious in this Subsequent Creation, thereby influencing, forming and leading all else, no matter whether he acts in full awareness of it or whether he knows nothing at all about it. This ruling or influencing in Subsequent Creation is anchored in the *nature of the spirit* in accordance with the Laws of Creation. Through its very existence, therefore, the human spirit works in Subsequent Creation in this manner, because it issues from the Spiritual Realm. The temperament, however, cannot be attributed to the spirit, for it is only produced by the radiations of a certain species of matter when the latter is animated and completely permeated by the animistic, which moves, warms and forms all that is of matter. This radiation emanates from the blood.

Thus it is not wrong to use the popular expression concerning certain qualities which people possess: "It runs in the blood!" In most cases they mean that it has been "inherited". And often this is the case because *gross material* heredity does occur, while spiritual heredity is impossible. With that which is spiritual it is the Law of Attraction of Homogeneous Species which counts, the effects of which do *outwardly* resemble heredity in our life on earth, and can therefore easily be confused with it.

Temperament, however, comes from the World of Matter and may therefore be partly inherited, and it also remains closely connected with all that is matter. Its cause lies in *animistic*

activity. Here again some idea of this is contained in another popular saying. The wisdom of such expressions has always originated in the natural intuitive perception of those people of sound mind whose manner of living in Creation has remained simple and undistorted. This popular saying speaks of light blood, hot blood, heavy blood, and blood which can be easily excited. All these terms are applied to the temperament with the correct perception that the blood plays the major role in these matters. In reality it is a definite radiation which develops through the type of blood composition in each case. It first of all produces an equivalent effect in the brain, which subsequently becomes strongly perceptible in the feeling of the entire body.

In accordance with the blood composition there will therefore always be a type of temperament predominating in different people which is decisive for them.

In the *healthy* blood of a human being are anchored *all* the radiations which the blood is capable of producing and consequently *all* the temperaments. I am always and only referring to the healthy physical body, for sickness brings confusion into the radiations.

As the physical body ages the blood composition also changes. Thus when healthy blood changes through increasing age a corresponding change of temperament occurs at the same time.

Besides advancing age in the body, however, there are still other things which have an influence on the change in blood composition, such as the characteristics of the different regions and everything pertaining to them, i.e., the climate, the radiations of the stars, different kinds of nourishment, and many other things as well. They all affect the temperaments directly because they are part of the World of Matter and therefore linked very closely with it.

In general one can distinguish between four basic temperaments in mankind – the sanguine, the melancholic, the choleric and the phlegmatic – and men themselves are described accordingly. In reality, however, there are seven

temperaments and, with all the gradations, even twelve. But the principal temperaments are four in number.

In a person with an absolutely healthy blood condition they can be classified into four age periods, in each of which the composition of the blood changes. First of all there is the period of childhood, resembling the sanguine temperament, the carefree life of the moment. Then comes early manhood or womanhood, which is like the melancholic temperament of dreaming and longing. Thereafter follow the years of man's and woman's full estate which is the choleric temperament urging them to action. And finally comes old age, or the phlegmatic temperament of quiet reflection.

This is the normal and healthy condition in the temperate zone as distinct from the *abnormal* zone.

How closely all this is connected with and works in a similar way in the World of Matter you can even witness on the gross material earth in the seasons of spring, summer, autumn and winter. In spring an impetuous awakening, in summer a dreamy development with an urge towards ripening, in autumn the full activity of the fruits, and in winter a quiet transition with all the gathered experiences to a new awakening.

Even nations and races bear very definite characteristics of common temperaments. This may be traced back to the part of the earth where they came into existence and where they live, to the consequent form of nutrition there, to their exposure to similar gross material radiations by the stars, and last but not least to the spiritual maturity of the entire nation. A people of sanguine temperament are still, figuratively speaking, in their childhood, or have through some circumstances retrogressed to this stage. The latter category not only comprises the sunny South Sea islanders but to a greater extent the Latin peoples. People of melancholic temperament stand before their actual deeds. The Germans and all Germanic people belong to this group. They stand at their awakening, prepared for action!

That is why the period of early manhood and womanhood is

also the age of the melancholic temperament, because only as the spirit breaks through in the generative power does it find a direct connection with the species of Creation. Thus man becomes responsible for his deeds in Creation, fully responsible for every individual thought, for every word, and for every one of his actions, because all the vibrations thereof are pressing in full power, thereby penetrating the spheres of animistic species and producing forms. Thus worlds arise in Subsequent Creation in accordance with the vibrations sent forth by man.

Consequently if a person is unrestrained in his temperament he thereby creates new and unhealthy forms in Creation which can never produce harmony, but which are bound to have a disturbing influence upon all that exists.

Since by virtue of his origin the human spirit stands at the highest point in Subsequent Creation, he has not only the power but also the duty to control every species different to him in Creation. In fact he cannot do otherwise, he *must* dominate owing to his nature!

He must now think of this every moment! With each individual thought, with each stirring of his soul, he creates ever new forms in this Subsequent Creation! Try to grasp this clearly, as you are indeed responsible for it, and everything you form in the course of your existence clings to you. What is good uplifts you, what is low must pull you down in accordance with the Law of Gravity, which takes effect irrevocably, regardless of whether you yourselves are aware of it or completely indifferent to it. It operates and works around you in a constant weaving. It is true that you are the starting point of all that must be formed or produced in this loom, yet you are unable to stop it even for one moment!

Just try to envisage *this one picture* clearly! It must suffice to rouse you from the trifling things for which you are often willing to sacrifice so much time and strength. You must be horrified at the frivolous manner in which you have hitherto spent your life, and stand ashamed before your Creator, Who thereby bestowed such a great gift upon you. But you have

paid no attention to it, you only dabbled with this enormous power to the detriment of the Subsequent Creation entrusted to you, which you can transform into a Paradise for yourselves if at last you wish to do so.

Consider. The entire disorder which you have brought about through your ignorance of the Divine Laws is now bound to confuse and overwhelm you. It is *your* fault that you do not yet know these laws. Since you stand in Creation it is your most sacred duty personally to concern yourselves with them!

But instead men have mocked and sneered at the messengers who were able to indicate the way which is bound to bring recognition. Without effort, however, no prize can be won, for that is against the Law of unceasing Movement in Creation, which is a necessary factor for the maintenance and further development of everything. Movement in the spirit *and* of the body. Everything which does not move, or which does not move in the right way, will be ejected, because it does nothing but disturb the swinging harmony of Creation. It is ejected as being a diseased part which does not want to move along in rhythm.

I have already spoken to you about the necessity of continual movement as a law.

The spirit *must* dominate, no matter whether it wants to or not. It cannot do otherwise. And thus it must now also exert itself at last to dominate spiritually in *full consciousness*, unless it wishes to bring nothing but harm. However, it can only dominate consciously if it is familiar with and adjusts itself to all the laws resting in Creation. There is no alternative. Only then does it fill the post to which it has been appointed, and which it can never alter or rearrange.

Thus the human spirit must also stand above the temperaments, it must restrain and rule them, so that harmony will be achieved first of all in its own body and then extend beneficially to the immediate surroundings; they will radiate and manifest in forms in the entire Subsequent Creation!

*Only that man* who makes good use of all the four temperaments in proper sequence and at the appropriate times stands truly firm in this Creation. For he needs these temperaments so as to climb the steps of his earth-life with security and certainty and to neglect nothing which is necessary for his spiritual maturing.

Temperaments which are well controlled and properly employed are like wearing good boots on the road through material substance on earth! Pay greater attention to them than you have done so far! You cannot do without them, but neither must you yield to them, as then they become tyrants which torment you and your surroundings also, instead of serving you!

But *make use* of them, for they are your best companions during your life on earth. They are your friends if you control them. The child develops best when it is sanguine, therefore the composition of its blood is such as to produce the sanguine temperament. The blood composition changes at the time of increasing physical maturity and then brings with it the melancholic temperament.

This in turn is the best aid for the time of maturing! It can direct the spirit towards the Light, towards purity and loyalty, during the years when the spirit's connection with Creation is being completed, at which time it takes the active lead and gears into the entire weaving and working which is in constant movements therein. In this way it may become the greatest helper to the human spirit in its essential being, more decisive than he is now able to imagine.

Therefore the child must be allowed the undimmed joy of the moment which is derived from the sanguine temperament and, on the other hand, the youth and maiden must be left to the healthy daydreams in which they so often indulge. He who destroys such reveries in order to make these young people conform to the sobriety of their surroundings becomes a brigand of the spirit on its way to the Light! Beware of this, for all the consequences will also fall upon you!

The choleric temperament in a clarified form is needed by every man of action! I purposely say in a clarified form, for the spirit *must* dominate in the years of manhood and womanhood, it must absolutely ennoble and transfigure everything, it must send forth and spread light radiations throughout the entire Creation!

In old age, however, the phlegmatic temperament gradually helps to loosen the spirit more and more from its body, to re-examine past experiences of earth-life in order to retain the lessons learned as something personal, and to prepare itself little by little in this way for the necessary step into the Ethereal World of Creation. It is thereby made easy for such a person, becoming quite a natural event which means nothing but progress, and involves no suffering in obeying the Law of this Creation.

Pay attention to the temperaments, therefore, and further them whenever you can, but always and only at their proper time and so long as they do not become tyrants through lack of restraint! He who wishes to change or suppress them destroys the best help there is for the development of earthman as willed by God. In so doing he also disturbs all healthiness, causing confusion as well as undreamt-of eccentricities, which will bring discord, envy, hatred and anger, not to mention robbery and murder. All this because the temperaments were disregarded at the essential time by the coldly-calculating intellect, and broken when they should have been developed and observed!

The temperaments are given to you by the Will of God in the Laws of Nature, which are always tended and kept fresh for you by the elemental beings in order to facilitate the course of your life on earth if you live as God wills that you should. Thank the Lord for this and joyously take up the gifts which lie ready for you everywhere in Creation! Exert yourselves in order to recognize them aright at last!

**Behold, man, how you should wander through this  
Creation so that threads of fate will not  
hinder but further your ascent!**

**A**lthough the Message contains everything that is needed to show the way which men must take through Creation if they wish to ascend to the Luminous Heights, yet for each individual there is a repeated anxious questioning: What shall *I* do really to proceed aright!

Very many persons are troubled by this intuitive perception, because man likes to make everything more complicated than it really is. He *needs* this curious method of making everything more difficult for himself, because he does not possess the inner strength to pursue with earnestness and zeal *that which is simple*. He has no longer sufficient ability to do so.

If he sees no difficulties confronting him he never succeeds in putting forth powers in order to use them, for a lack of difficulties soon makes him slothful and finally paralyses his entire activity. Therefore he pays no attention to what is simple but, as soon as he can, he even distorts everything that is simple into something which is incomprehensible, purely for the purpose of giving himself a hard time to recognize yet again in this distortion just what is right, which remains anchored only in simplicity. Thus man constantly wastes time and energy!

Man needs *obstacles* in order to attain to the goal; only in this way does he still gather all his strength, which he is no longer able to do when he is confronted with it in a *simple* way.

This at first sounds as if it were something great, yet it is only the sign of deepest weakness! Just as a weakened body needs stimulants to enable it to carry on its activity, so the

human spirit, in order to attain any goal, first needs the incentive of knowing that it must overcome something and thereby exert its strength to do so! Out of this there once came into existence the so-called science, which disdains all that is simple, reaching out to the ridiculous for the sole purpose of excelling others and shining.

But it is not only science which has been acting in this manner over a long period, erecting with much trouble a false structure which is supposed to lend an air of greatness to something that in Creation is actually inferior, artificial, cramped and distorted, indeed often hindering.

Governmental structures and the judiciary systems are of the same nature, even from the very beginning each individual has allowed his earth-life to be built up on a wrong basis. It is much too complicated to be healthy, and only incites the indolent spirit in its conceit to distinguish itself before others. For it is *this* aspiration alone which is the true reason for the mutilation and confusion of all naturalness and simplicity by these human spirits. The ambition to excel, the conceit to investigate and lay down laws from a knowledge that can never really become knowledge as long as man struggles against *receiving* humbly and simply in devotion to God's Magnitude – all this holds him down!

There is not a single thing that man could really create without taking it from that which has already come into existence through the Will of God! He would be unable to create anew a single grain of sand without finding all the material for it already to hand in Creation!

As yet he cannot recognize how ridiculous he appears today, but the day will come when he will be unspeakably ashamed of himself and only too glad to efface the time when he imagined himself as being so great and knowing!

With tolerant indulgence, sometimes even with a sarcastic smile, man now passes by every great simplicity of the Divine Laws that is also contained in my Message and in the nature of the words! He does not realize that in so doing he exposes the

greatest weakness of which a human being is capable and the consequences of which are some of the worst that *must* strike him now through the rays of the Judgment; for he puts himself in the lowest place among all creatures, because *he alone* forgot how *to receive* and use the gifts from Creation rightly. Man considers himself too great and too exalted to accept gratefully from his Creator all that he needs, and therefore he is no longer worthy to enjoy such mercies further.

And yet the Laws in Creation should be and could be quite natural, simple and without confusion to every creature, because each creature came into existence through them.

But what has man made of them in his vain imaginings!

What he can produce in the way of unintelligible and unwieldy institutions you can observe for yourselves in all the human laws of every state governing the social order! A lifetime hardly suffices to study all of them thoroughly for *one* country alone. Specially trained scholars are needed to interpret them aright. And these often dispute among themselves as to how and where they can be applied. This proves that even among these lawyers there is no clarity about the actual meaning.

But wherever there is room for dispute there *is* also no clarity. Where there is no clarity, accuracy and thus also justification for the particular law is lacking!

At present every individual person would have to become a learned scholar of these laws established by men which are disputable, unclear and confusing in order to go through life unscathed! What folly lies in this fact! And yet it is so. Often enough experts have been heard to observe that according to mundane law *every* person living on earth could be indicted and in some way found guilty, wherever this was tried. Unfortunately this is true. And yet every individual is made subject to these laws without being able to be properly informed about them.

All of this will also have to fall into ruin of its own accord very soon, because it is an impossible outgrowth of a most unhealthy confusion.

The human spirit has now thoroughly proved its incompetence in these matters. An unworthy enslavement resulted from its failure to link up the earthly laws with the Primordial Laws of Creation, which it never endeavoured to study. Only if it is built upon *their* soil can any benefit arise, no matter what! It is the same with *justice!* And this again, like all basic laws, lies only in clear and great *simplicity*.

That which is not inherently simple will never last! The simplicity of the Divine Laws does not permit otherwise! Will man never learn to understand?

He can quite clearly recognize in the events of every era that great success could only come about *where* all the power was focussed upon *one* point! This indicates clearly enough the necessity of simplification! You should at last discover something in this! Everybody knows the danger which *always* threatens through a splitting up.

Observe therein the Law of the Power of every *Simplification*; the victorious greatness which only becomes effective in *simplicity!*

But you can no longer perceive the value of all that is simple. It is only in simplicity that true strength, genuine nobility, knowledge, and grace become manifest. Also in simplicity of expression and movement.

You all know about this quite well! And yet you do not learn to appreciate the actual value, and therefore you cannot grasp it, cannot transfer it to your *thinking* so that it can find expression in your words and in your deeds.

Man is unable to be as simple as he should learn to be in Creation. It not only comes hard to man to attain to the greatness of simplicity in his thinking and activity, but he is utterly unable to achieve it! It has already passed beyond his reach.

He therefore no longer understands the simplicity of the language and the explanations resting in the Message. In the perversity of his thinking he assumes that this only right and great way is too childlike *for him*, and therefore cannot contain

anything of value. Thus its actual values remain closed to him because *he* is incapable of absorbing them. He neither sees nor recognizes what is great and powerful as soon as it is clothed in simple words.

This is due to *his* incapacity! For simplicity and clearness the spirit must develop strength *within itself* while in the case of obstacles due to confusion the impulse for the development of strength approaches man from *without*! Unfortunately, however, the human spirit of today *needs* this impetus *from outside* in order to enable it to be at least a little astir. Therefore man cannot stand simplicity and clearness. Simplicity lulls him to sleep, it paralyses him because he is too indolent to develop of his own accord that inner strength which alone can bring him real benefit and help him to ascend.

He is unable to keep himself active with simplicity and clearness around him. His strength is no longer sufficient for this because he never developed it. It is natural that owing to this indolence he creates for himself continual obstacles. Today these obstacles serve a few people as incentives or stimulants in the sense already explained. But in order to overcome these self-created obstacles the strength arising at the sight of them, which is lamentably small, is used up and nothing remains for real progress and ascent, which could only begin after overcoming the obstacles. When the path before them again becomes simple and clear they weary on account of this simplicity. It is not "interesting" enough, because they can no longer conceive of their personal greatness, and once more they bring about further confusion, so that what they do will "appear" or "sound" like something important.

All this happens over and over again because the human spirits of today lack real greatness of their own.

You can observe the same physically with gymnasts. During the presentation of their gymnastic exercises they develop strength and suppleness with a grace of movement which shows the control over their bodies. But only a few of all the gymnasts upon earth show continual bodily control, i.e., also in

everyday life. Their posture when sitting, speaking, standing, and also when walking is often deplorable. This proves that they develop strength only when they practice or appear in public, i.e., when they want to exhibit something. However, to control the body energetically all day long, which requires *real* strength and from which the body derives ten times more benefit than from a few hours of gymnastics, this strength they are *unable* to bring up without some impetus from outside, for this requires more, much more!

All gymnastics and special exercises could safely be abolished if man *really* controlled himself and his body; for then every muscle must remain in constant movement, which demands strength and will. All special exercises offer nothing but a pitiful substitute for the conscious strength of that great simplicity which lies in the naturalness of perpetual self-control.

As it is with gymnastics so it is with *all* things. Man does not need to perform anything extraordinary if he wanders through Creation *in the right way*. Everything is given to him in simplicity and everything is within him, without his having to resort to artificial assistance. In the same way as men add all kinds of possible and impossible stimulants to their nourishment in order to energise their bodies, as they use such things as smoking and intoxicating narcotics in order to whip up the nerves of their body and the brain, deluding themselves into the belief that it will enhance their thought processes, so they use confusion for their spirit in order to indulge their conceit.

That is why I am compelled again and again to formulate many words about things just to make them to some extent comprehensible to you, when in reality they should be grasped immediately in one very simple conception! I continually struggle to find new interpretations for everything that has already been said because you are incapable of accepting that which is simple and plain, both in regard to truth and to life as well as to Creation, in which your path and your entire existence also lie anchored.

You should not at all need to ask what you must or must not do! Just demolish the maze *within you*, which you so carefully nurse and foster, thereby creating ever new entanglements by your thoughts! You think *too much*, and for this reason you can think *nothing real*, nothing which is of benefit to you.

The Law of Almighty God for you is:

You are permitted to wander through Creation! Go in such a manner as to cause no harm to others in pursuit of your personal desires! Otherwise threads will be woven into the carpet of your paths which will hold you down and prevent you from ascending to the Luminous Heights of conscious and joyful activity in the gardens of all the Realms of your God!

That is the basic law containing everything you need to know. If you follow this nothing can happen to you. You will only be led *upwards* by all the threads created by your thinking, volition and actions.

That is why the Son of God once said in all simplicity: "Love thy neighbour as thyself"! Fundamentally this has exactly the same meaning.

You are allowed to wander through the Creations! This holds the command to constant *movement*! You must not stand still! You could not in fact do so, because the self-created threads which form your paths *always* drive you forward according to their nature – either upwards or straight ahead for a time or also downwards. You can never stop, even if you yourselves should wish to do so!

*And during this wandering you shall not harm any others, who like you are also journeying through Creation, just to satisfy some personal desire!*

It is not difficult to grasp this aright, for when your perception is calm you are quite well aware of when, where and how you harm others. All that remains for you to do in this matter is to become clear as to everything which falls into the category of *desiring*! However, you have already been told this clearly in the Commandments once given to you through Moses! It is not necessary for me to repeat it again.

You may enjoy *everything* here in Creation, you may taste of everything, but it must not bring harm to your fellow-man! Again, this only occurs if you become a slave to your desires.

But you must not get too one-sided an idea of what this desiring implies. Not only earthly property and the physical body are included, but also the desire to undermine the reputation of your fellow-man, giving way to your own weaknesses, and many other things!

Today in particular far too little attention is paid to this giving way to one's own weaknesses, and yet it falls into the category of fulfilling one's own desires to the detriment or suffering of your neighbour! The threads which become knotted thereby are dense and thus hold down every soul which has acted in this fashion.

Such weaknesses comprise distrust and envy, irritability, coarseness and rudeness, in a word the lack of self-control and refinement, the latter signifying nothing less than the necessary consideration for your fellow-men, which *must* be present if harmony is to prevail. For harmony alone furthers Creation and yourselves!

It is a close weaving which comes about through such weaknesses, forcing many to fall just because so little attention is paid to it, although it inflicts disquietude, pressure, annoyance and often even severe suffering upon your fellow-men. But in each case harm.

If men let themselves go to such an extent there immediately arises through the radiation of the slightly or greatly excited blood a strongly dimmed layer which places itself *separatingly* between man's spirit and his luminous guidance! He thus immediately stands alone and also completely unprotected, which may cause such damage as proves to be irreparable!

Everyone wishing to ascend should engrave this upon his mind!

This advice is a lifebelt which may save him from drowning, from destruction. It is of the *utmost importance* for everybody in their earthly existence!

All of you who wish to belong to the Grail in order to live according to my Message, take note once again of the Divine commandment that rests in the weaving of this Creation:

Based on your erstwhile desire you may journey through Creation consciously! However, you must not harm others in order to satisfy your personal desires. This alone can knot threads that must hold you down. Live accordingly, and you will then be happy and wander upwards into the Luminous Gardens of your God, there to help in joyful activity with the further and eternal development of this Creation!

## The Star of Bethlehem.

There shall now be Light here on earth, as once it should have been when the Star of Promise shone radiantly above a stable in Bethlehem.

But at that time only a few accepted the Light, and those who listened to them very soon distorted and misrepresented it, as men on earth are apt to do. What they forgot they tried to replace with ideas of their own, thereby creating only a confusion that nowadays is meant to pass as inviolable Truth. Out of alarm that everything will collapse if even the smallest pillar proves to be unsound, every ray of Light that can bring recognition is resisted, defiled and, if there is no other way, at least ridiculed with a malice and cunning which plainly indicates to clear thinking that it springs from fear! But clear thinking is only rarely to be found on earth.

In spite of this the light of true recognition *must* at last come over all mankind!

The time has arrived when everything unhealthy invented by the human brain will be swept out of Creation, so that it no longer suppresses the enlightenment that the Truth wears a *different* aspect from the unsteady images which boastful conceit and commercialism, morbid imagination and hypocrisy, in a craving for earthly power and earthly admiration, have created out of the sultry swamp of base narrow-mindedness.

Accursed now be those who through leading millions of people astray have so enslaved them that today they no longer dare to open their eyes to the Light, but blindly revile anything coming to their knowledge that sounds different from what they have hitherto heard, instead of at last listening attentively and examining inwardly to see whether the new does not come nearer to their understanding than what they

have learned in the past; and examining whether their intuitive perception does not stir them to the conviction that the old can no longer exist when the wake-up call from the Light reaches them and must collapse, because it is standing on the wrong foundation!

Their ears are stopped, and anxiously they see to it that no breath of fresh air penetrates to them. Actually just out of laziness and fear that this fresh air, through the ensuing recovery, implies *spiritual activity*, demanding and enforcing self-exertion. In contrast to the present apparently comfortable spiritual slumber, which is followed by the heavy permanent sleep, and thereby only gives a free hand to the cunning of the distorted, debased intellect!

But it is of no avail to stop your ears against the new Word, to shut your eyes lest the Light dazzle and startle you! You will now be *forcibly* roused from this deplorable stupor! You will have to stand shivering before the cold Light that mercilessly strips you of all false wrappings. Shivering because your spirit-spark can no longer be kindled *within you*, and thus generate the warmth from within that will unite with the Light. It is too late for that! And this too late brings spiritual death in rigidity!

I throw the Light onto your false actions and thoughts so that it will shred the many cloaks which in iridescent splendor cover up with fool's gold what is disingenuous and sluggish in you. Indeed it is all too *easy* for you to *believe* the *unbelievable*; for then you need not trouble to think and examine for yourselves. Just because it cannot stand up to any test that is in accordance with the Divine Laws of Nature, you simply *have* to believe, without questioning the why or wherefore; you have to believe *blindly*, and this you imagine to be *great*! You who so conveniently imagine you are particularly devout, simply raise yourselves above all doubts in this matter, and... feel happy, secure, noble, pious and sure of a place in Heaven!

However, you have not thereby raised yourselves above all doubt, but only bypassed it in a cowardly way! You were too spiritually indolent to bestir yourselves, and preferred blind

faith to a knowledge of the natural happening in the Law of God's Will. Fictions devised by the human brain aided you in this. For the more absurd and incomprehensible the things you are supposed to believe, the easier it also becomes literally to believe in them *blindly*, because in such matters it is quite impossible to do otherwise. Knowledge and conviction *must* be eliminated then. Only the impossible demands blind, unreserved faith; for whatever is possible immediately stimulates independent thinking. Wherever there is Truth, which is always characterised by naturalness and consistency, thinking and deep intuitive sensing automatically set in. This only ceases where it no longer finds anything natural, thus where Truth does not exist. And it is *only* through deep intuitive sensing that anything can become conviction, which alone brings values to the human spirit!

So now, along with everything else in the Judgment, the cycle which begins with the Holy Night in Bethlehem is also closing! And the closing of this cycle must cast out all inaccuracies in the transmissions, and in their stead bring the Truth to victory. The Darkness created by humanity is dispelled by the penetrating Light!

All legends which in the course of time have been woven around the life of Jesus must fall away so that it may at last emerge in purity, in accordance with Divine Laws, as indeed it could not have been otherwise in this Creation. Hitherto you have credulously and wantonly denied the Perfection of the Creator, your God, with your self-established cults.

You deliberately and consciously represent Him in these cults as imperfect in His Will! I have already spoken about this in my Message and, turn and twist as you will, not a *single* subterfuge can acquit you of having been too indolent to think about it yourselves. You do not honor God by blindly believing in things that are not in accordance with the Primordial Laws of Creation! On the contrary, if you believe in the Perfection of the Creator, then you must know that nothing can happen here in Creation that does not also precisely conform to the logical

sequence in the firmly established Laws of God. Only therein can you truly honor Him.

He who thinks otherwise thus doubts the *Perfection* of the Creator, his God! For where alterations or further improvements are possible, there is not and never has been perfection! Development is something different. This is provided for and intended in this Creation. However, it must follow unconditionally as a *logical sequence* of the effect of already existing Laws. But all this cannot produce such things as many believers take for granted, especially in the life of Christ!

Wake up from your dreams at last and become inwardly *true!* Let it be said once more that according to the Laws in Creation it is impossible for bodies of earthmen ever to be born without previous physical procreation, and equally impossible for a physical body to be raised into the Ethereal Realm after its earthly death, still less into the Animistic or even the Spiritual Realm! And since Jesus had to be born here on earth, this event was also subject to the gross material Divine Law of a previous procreation.

If it had happened with Christ as transmissions report, God would have to act against His own Laws. But this He cannot do since He *is perfect from the very beginning*, and thus also His Will, Which lies in the Laws of Creation. Whoever still dares to think otherwise doubts this Perfection and thus ultimately also doubts God! For God without Perfection would not be God. There can be no subterfuge! No human spirit can quibble about this simple certainty, even if the foundations of many a former opinion must now be shaken thereby. Here there is only either-or. All or nothing. There can be no compromise, because nothing incomplete or unfinished can exist in the Godhead! Nor in anything concerned with God!

Jesus was procreated *physically*, otherwise an earthly birth would not have been possible.

At that time only a few recognized the Star as the fulfillment of the prophecies. Among them were Mary herself, and also Joseph who, deeply stirred, hid his face.

Three kings found their way to the stable and presented earthly gifts; but then they went away, leaving without protection the Child Whose earthly path they should have smoothed with their wealth and power, so that no harm might befall Him in the fulfillment of His Mission. Although they received enlightenment enabling them to find the Child, they did not fully recognize their sublime call.

Disquietude drove Mary away from Nazareth, and Joseph, seeing her silent suffering and longing, granted her wish solely to make her happy. He handed over the management of his carpenter's shop to his oldest employee, and with Mary and the Child journeyed to a distant country. In the course of their everyday life of work and cares, the memory of the Radiant Star slowly faded from their minds, especially as in His early years Jesus displayed nothing extraordinary, but like all children was quite natural. It was only on his deathbed, after returning to his native town, that Joseph, who had always been the best of fatherly friends to Jesus, saw in his passing, during his last moments on earth, the Crown and the Dove above Jesus, Who stood alone at his bedside. Deeply stirring were his last words: "So Thou art He after all!"

Jesus Himself knew nothing of this until something urged Him to go to John, of whom He had heard that he was proclaiming wise teachings and baptising at the River Jordan.

With this gross material act of baptism, the beginning of the Mission was firmly anchored in the World of Gross Matter. The bandage fell. From this moment Jesus Himself was conscious that He was to carry the Word of the Father among mankind on earth.

His whole life as it really was will unfold itself before you, divested of all the fantasies invented by human brains! With the closing of the cycle of this event, it will be revealed to all during the Judgment through the victory of the Truth, which for a long time to come may no longer be obscured! Mary fought an inward battle with her doubts, which were strengthened through motherly anxiety for her son, right up to the grievous

walk to Golgotha. Purely human and not supernatural. Only there did recognition of His Mission, and with it belief, finally come to her.

But now, at the return of the Star, all errors shall henceforth be redeemed through the Grace of God; and likewise all the faults of those who, without obstinacy or evil intent, rendered Christ's way more difficult at that time; and who now at the closing of the cycle come to recognition, and try to make good their neglect or failures.

Through their desire to make good, redemption arises for them with the Radiant Star; liberated, they can give jubilant thanks to Him Who in His Wisdom and Goodness created the Laws by which all creatures must judge and also redeem themselves.

---

## A New Law.

I give you a new Law! A new Law which contains all the old and from which the upbuilding of the new man must come, so that his *works* too will become new, according to prophesy.

It originates in the commandment which I already gave to you and which all adherents to the Grail must make the bedrock of their journeys through Creation, so that even on earth they can remain free of karma without knotting threads to hold them down and anchor the spirit into Gross-Materiality.

I have told you: "At your desire you are allowed to wander through the Creations, thereby becoming self-conscious, but in so doing you must not harm others in order to satisfy your *personal* desires."

There is nothing in Creation you would not be allowed to enjoy in the sense in which Creation gives it to you, i.e., for the same purpose as that for which it is developed. However, you do not know the real purpose of so many things, and erroneously commit many excesses which are bound to bring harm instead of benefit. Thus the desire to taste, to get to know and to enjoy often increases until it becomes a *propensity*, which finally keeps you enchained and quickly enslaves your free volition, so that through your own selves you become *servants* instead of masters!

Never let yourselves be subjugated through enjoying, but take only what is necessary in life on earth for the maintenance and development of the good things entrusted to you. You hinder all development by excess, no matter whether the body or the soul is involved. Just as you hold things up through excess, so also through negligence or imperfection. You

disturb the great God-willed development! Everything which you now wish to do with the best volition to adjust and compensate for such mistakes remains nothing but patchwork, leaving traces of repair which do not look nice and which can never be the same as one uniform and unpatched work.

For this reason the work of the called ones in service to the Holy Grail is not to focus on correcting mankind's old mistakes of the past, but their entire activity and thinking in their intuitive perception must be *aimed* at a fundamentally *new upbuilding!*

Just let the old collapse, because according to the Will of God, the old is not to be improved upon and changed, but everything must *become new!*

The fulfillment of the promise that "everything must become new" does not contain the sense of remodelling, but of forming *anew* everything that has been distorted and poisoned by the human spirit *after* it has collapsed. And as there is nothing which has not yet been touched and poisoned by man in his conceit, *everything* must collapse in order *afterwards* to become new again; not, however, in accordance with men's volition as hitherto, but according to the Will of God, which has never yet been understood by the human soul that has begun to decay through its obstinacy.

Mankind has *touched* everything created by the Will of God, but has *not recognized* it, as it should have been the task of every human spirit to do. In his presumptuous imagining that he was master man *touched* everything, but thereby only devalued and soiled all purity.

What does man really know of the conception of purity! What has he already made of the boundless sublimity of true purity in his atrocious pettiness! He has dimmed and debased this conception, dragging it down to his own low and dirty cravings, wherein he no longer knows the intuitive perception of his spirit but only follows the narrow limitations of his feeling, which is produced by his intellect through the retrospective effect of its thinking. But in the future the feeling shall again become pure!

Feeling in relation to the intuitive perception is what the intellect should become in relation to the spirit, a *tool* for activity in gross material life! Today, however, the feeling is debased and dragged down to be the implement of the intellect, and has thus become dishonored. In the same manner as the spirit bearing the intuitive perception with which to express its working has already been forced down and fettered by the hereditary sin of intellectual domination, so also the coarser feeling produced by the intellect was simultaneously and automatically bound to triumph over the purity of the spiritual intuitive perception, suppressing the latter and cutting it off from the possibility of a wholesome working in Creation.

In the natural course of things one fault consequently brought the other in its train. That is how it came to be that without realizing it, men today hold only lead in their hands instead of gold. They consider this lead to be gold, although they no longer have any knowledge whatever of pure intuitive perception.

However, as the spirit must be rightly balanced and connected with the intellect, i.e., the spirit dominating and leading, and the intellect as an implement serving, preparing the way and bringing about possibilities for carrying the spiritual volition into effect in the World of Matter, so also must the intuitive perception at the same time have a leading and animating influence, while the feeling in following this lead transforms the activity into the gross material. Then at last will the feeling also very soon and speedily take on nobler forms, quickly effacing by its upward soaring the wretched moral breakdown in conceptions, which could only arise out of the domination of the present-day feeling!

If the activity of the feeling is guided by the intuitive perception, all thinking and doing is filled only with beauty, balance, and ennoblement. There is never any desiring, only the sacred wish to give: This must be taken to heart in everything, including love and marriage.

With your short-sighted and narrow-minded attitude you often consider certain persons to be pure when in reality, according to the Laws in Creation, they belong to the most depraved class of men. There are many actions which without further ado you think in your narrow-mindedness are impure, yet which radiate with purity, while many things considered pure by you are impure.

The purity of the intuitive perception uplifts many an action to heights undreamt-of by you, yet which here you still wish to soil with your scorn and mockery. For this reason first of all liberate your *intuitive perception* so that you may judge aright and weigh good and evil, otherwise you are bound to go astray!

Also do not think that you have “overcome” this or that within you so long as you have not *been endangered*, and faced the possibility of yielding to your weaknesses in the certainty that nobody will hear about it! Neither does an escape into solitude bring real benefit to anyone, this merely proves that such a person feels himself too weak or is too tired for the struggle, is perhaps even afraid of himself that he will fall at a given opportunity.

*Being strong is different, it manifests* in a different way. The strong one pursues his path unswervingly and unerringly amid all dangers. He cannot be upset, nor does he deviate of his own accord, but he knows and sees his high goal, the personal attainment of which is more valuable than anything else that may present itself before him.

Man must now become *new* in everything, new and strong *within himself*.

I give you my commandment regarding this new activity; for I will build up the new Kingdom on earth upon you!

“No longer cause any harm to your fellow men in order to fulfill your personal desires thereby!”

You have not yet grasped all that this contains. It is the best staff for a man’s journey through the various parts of Creation to Paradise!

In addition I give you this advice:

“Take care of the good things entrusted to you upon earth, which also include your physical body, *in the right manner*. Never let pleasure become a propensity, and you will then remain free from the chains holding you down.”

It should be a condition for everyone striving seriously upon earth that the addressing of a person as “you” must be kept strictly sacred among each other. Only in *exceptional* cases may it be used or offered. This is different in the Ethereal World, the so-called “beyond”. There the barriers of spiritual maturity are *strictly established* and cannot just be transgressed. *There* the real homogeneous species live together in accordance with the Law of Creation, *and it is solely the homogeneous species which justifies the address of “you”!*

In the Gross Material World, however, these barriers must first be established. Here the gross material earth-body makes it possible for spirits of *all* degrees of maturity to live closely together in a way which occurs nowhere on other planes again.

Therefore establish a barrier for the future, the necessity and great value of which you probably cannot quite understand.

Already once in my Message I have pointed this out in the lecture “The Kiss of Friendship”. Part of this is the *poison-spreading* habit of calling each other “you”, and thus bursting through and transgressing one of the most necessary barriers in the World of Gross Matter. A barrier offering you support, the value of which you are not capable of measuring.

Thus it must become a *command* for everyone striving for the Light that he follows the habit of offering the familiar “you” to his fellow-men sparingly. Best of all he should avoid it entirely!

If it should be offered to you reject it, except in those cases where a serious union for earth-life is intended, i.e., in marriage! *Years later* you will recognize the value resting in this command. A shudder always comes over me when I hear of it, for I know the corruption contained in this habit. But no man has any idea of it. With this German “you”, which embodies a very special conception, every soul enters into a bond capable of reaching beyond the earthly grave!

Special threads which are by no means harmless immediately link one to the other with the use of this “you”, threads which may hold the spirits down, even those capable of ascent. For very seldom will it happen that two spirits of the same maturity in all things are thereby linked together, two which actually stand on the same step spiritually.

And wherever two link up who are unequal, the law ordains that the higher one is *pulled down*, but the lower one never ascends! For in Creation the higher one alone can descend to lower planes, but no spirit can ever succeed in raising itself even one step above the place where it stands!

Thus in the case of a voluntary and close union between two spirits who are unequal in their maturity the higher one *must* either descend or be retarded by the other, who remained backward in his maturity and hangs upon him like a weight through this tie. Not everyone possesses the strength to lead the less mature one in such a way that he comes upward to him. These are exceptions which one may not take into account. And a complete severance from a voluntary union is not easy.

This contains a fact the dreadfulness of which earthman has never yet taken into account! He frivolously passes over this unfathomable deep in earthly existence, and is hampered in *every case* without exception as soon as he trespasses against the law! Like a swimmer who dives into the water at places he does not know he is often hampered by invisible creepers.

The time will come when you will one day be free from this danger, to which many fall victim every day and every hour upon earth. You will become free through the knowledge! But then marriages will also be different, as well as friendships and other unions, all of which quite distinctly bear the name “binding”. Then all quarrels between friends will be ended, all spitefulness and misunderstandings will disappear. In observing this law, which until today has not been understood, everything will turn into the fullest harmony.

Until then, however, you can only be helped through a new earthly commandment: Be careful with the familiar “you”! If you observe this you will be protected from great suffering! You can shorten your spiritual ascent by thousands of years! Do not forget this, even when you do not understand it today. I thereby give you the best weapon with which to avoid creepers of an ethereal nature!

You need more commandments in the World of Gross Matter than is necessary in the Ethereal Worlds, where all human spirits cannot but associate with their homogeneous species, even if this species carries many gradations and therefore also shows very many and varied forms.

In following this commandment you will now become free from the heavy and unnecessary load with which mankind burden themselves ever anew.

Do not look for an example to the beyond, which is subject to simpler laws. Those in the beyond must also first learn for themselves in the new time, in the promised Millennium. They are no wiser than you yourselves and only know what is necessary for their plane. Therefore the bond will still have to be torn asunder for spiritists, where it brings nothing but harm due to misunderstandings and stupid conceit; the conceit which has already brought so many wrong interpretations of much that is valuable, thus leading the masses astray or preventing them from recognising and joyfully accepting the Truth *now*.

Do not let yourselves be misled, but *heed* my advice! It is for *your* help on earth, and you could easily recognize its value even now if you looked around you more attentively! You must not perhaps break off without cause what exists. That would bring no solution. It would be an attempt at false and unhealthy transformation! But from today on you must act *differently* in these matters, no longer in a thoughtless and frivolous manner. You must build up entirely anew. What is old will fall away of itself.

And when I now also say to you:

“Man shall never live together with another whom he cannot respect!” then you have for your earth-life *that* which will enable you to stay free from karma. Take these principles along with you on your path, all of you who wish to truly serve the Grail! —

So that you may ascend there must in addition to all this be the inner yearning for the pure and luminous Realm of God! The *yearning* for it carries the spirit upwards! Therefore *think* upon God and His Will at all times! But do not make a picture of it for yourselves! It would certainly prove wrong because the human spirit cannot grasp the conception of God. Therefore it is given to him to grasp the *Will* of God, for which he must seek honestly and in humility. *If he has found the Will he will then recognize God therein!* That is the only way to Him!

So far, however, man has not yet exerted himself in the right way to grasp the Will of God, to find It, but he has always given precedence to the *human volition* which originated within himself, embodying the human wishes and the instinct for self-preservation! This is not in harmony with the automatic upward swinging of all the Primordial Laws of Creation!

Therefore find the way to the true Will of God in Creation, and then you will recognize God therein!

---

## Class consciousness, social order.

The constantly maligned system of social distinction and class consciousness has its origin in the simple intuitive perception of the effect of one of the Laws in Creation: the Law of the Attraction of Homogeneous Species!

One of mankind's gravest errors has been to pay far too little or almost no attention at all to the operation of this Law. This omission paved the way for numerous mistakes, which are bound to lead to great confusion and finally to total collapse!

This Law was *intuitively sensed* by all men. But whatever stands *higher* than purely gross material knowledge, and has no direct bearing on the possibility of earthly acquisition, they regard far too superficially and casually. Thus the most important factor for the basis of a harmoniously ascending earth-life has never been recognized, much less interwoven with the World of Gross Matter, that is, with everyday life on earth through its correct application! And interwoven with life on this earth it *must* be; because as long as there remains but one of the Primordial Laws of Creation not understood by men, and thereby gravely distorted or even excluded from gross material life, harmony cannot arise.

All the ancient peoples had already established the divisions between the various social or cultural classes, because subconsciously they realized the necessity, far better even than today.

Just look around you! Wherever only a few people come together this Law takes effect swiftly and surely, and in such a form as always indicates the free volition of these human spirits; because the volition of the spirit is capable of impressing itself on all forms, whether the act of this volition be of a fully conscious or a subconscious nature. Thus the form

will always visibly bear the maturity or immaturity of the spirit.

Let us suppose that five people, or even only three, come together in certain circumstances, either to do some work or for pleasure. The Law of the Attraction of Homogeneous Species will very soon form two groups among them, if only in idle chatter or the exchange of views. The continual repetition of this over millions of years is bound to lead one to believe that there must be a reason that lies deeper than customary behavior would indicate.

But even from this obvious happening, men have drawn only quite superficial and, in proportion to its seriousness, really trivial conclusions; *too limited*, since they were formed by the *intellect*, which can always comprehend only the final coarse manifestations of the actual effects, but can never trace them into what lies outside matter, because the intellect itself has its origin only in the Gross Material World. And it is just in what is outside matter that the origin of all power lies, and of all the vibrations that unceasingly pulsate through the species of Creation.

Whatever has been formed on earth on the basis of this observation lacks actual life, lacks *mobility*! It has become *wrong* and *unhealthy*, through the rigidity of the gross material system that has come into being with every institution, and pressed all that is living into a *dead* form.

Man is then like a plant uprooted from its native soil, which can no longer thrive in the new ground offered, because the soil is no longer suited to its species. It is bound to wither, whereas in proper soil it would have come to full bloom and could have borne rich fruit solely for the benefit of its surroundings in Creation, for the purest joy for itself, and for the perpetual transformation of power.

This great error always holds the germ of collapse.

With the expression class consciousness nobody need point to any one particular people; for *all* peoples have possessed it! It *must* develop wherever there are human beings, but it will

always develop wrongly so long as the Laws in Creation remain unrecognized, as they have hitherto been.

And this wrong was bound to produce envy and hatred, an urge to destroy the existing order. The subconscious urge has grown in accordance with the Laws to an ominous wave, which as the blossom at the closing of the cycle of the happening has brought ruin, because there was simply no other possibility.

This reveals as fruit what has been false in the hitherto existing structure of *man's social life on earth*, reveals all the places where the Primordial Laws of Creation have been disregarded or deliberately distorted. These consequences *had* to come about, because the Light which is now breaking in is also driving everything that is wrong to its culmination, so that it will then collapse of its own accord in over-ripeness, and yield the soil for a new upbuilding in accordance with the Will of God, which from the very beginning was anchored in the Laws of this Creation, and can be neither distorted nor suppressed without ill effects.

This is the harvest of all the seed that has been sown through the volition of mankind since the beginning of their activity. The harvest of all that is right as well as of all that is wrong, whether the wrong once arose out of malevolence, or only out of ignorance of the Divine Laws in Creation. It will come to blossom through the increased Power of the Light and *must openly* show its fruits, which now during this Final Judgment, in the streaming-back of the reciprocal action, have to be accepted as reward and punishment by their authors and adherents, as well as by their hangers-on!

The unhappy dissensions and divisions among the various parties are not the result of a wrong political system, but merely the perpetuation of a wrong class system, which in its rigidity and distortion could never lead to harmony among the mankind of this earth!

Take also Creation's Primordial Law of necessary Movement, and you will recognize that the self-satisfied and placid middle classes were bound to suffer the greatest harm of all. — It was

simply the releasing of the necessary Primordial Law of Movement!

Self-satisfaction goes hand in hand with conceit and indolence in the spirit: Both *hinder* spiritual movement in the same way as prestige and power, which all too quickly bring arrogance in their wake, as could often be found in the upper classes. All these obstruct and retard spiritual movement, at the same time one-sidedly promoting the activity of the intellect.

Intellectual activity, however, is not also at the same time spiritual movement! There is a great difference between them.

But the envy and hate of the lower classes go much deeper. In its intensity it strikes the *intuitive perception* and with it the spirit, thereby *increasing* spiritual movement even in those who belong to the physically idle!

Since feverish activity offends *against* the Primordial Law of Creation as much as sluggish movement, disharmony was eventually *bound* to set in like whipped-up billows, exactly corresponding to the driving and self-acting operation of the Primordial Law! It simply could not have come about otherwise!

I am purposely speaking here of the upper, middle, and lower social classes, for this was the fundamental division. And that is where the mistake lay. These classes, which are really necessary, should not operate below or above one another, but *side by side*. Each class must operate as a *complete whole*, as an indispensable species which is intended to mature to full blossom and bear fruit in Creation, in order to bring about great, indeed the greatest achievements, upon the soil suited to its particular kind, which soil alone will enable it and equip it with the necessary power to do so!

Just look at the individual *races* on earth, you men! You can learn much from this. *By itself* each race can ennoble itself, mature and grow great and strong. But if *two* races mix, only the deficiencies, weaknesses and faults of *both* are reproduced, resulting with but few exceptions in a boundless aggravation of *all the faults*, and rarely in anything good!

Take this as a hint from Creation, and adjust yourselves accordingly. Here on earth you wear a gross material garment, your physical body, which you must take into account; for *therein* lies the propagation of the race here on earth! Always remember this. You can never evade these laws unpunished.

But all of you are jointly dependent on the earth. Each one has a right to work and to develop himself here; in fact not only a right but also a sacred duty! Yet not one below the other, but *side by side*. Just consider musical notes. Each note is an entity, it remains so and cannot be blended. Only when it is played in the *proper setting beside* other notes of a different value does it produce harmony, which has a pleasing sound. Transpose the notes and try to rearrange them, and the result will be disharmony, whose effects may well produce even physical discomfort and finally become unbearable.

Learn from this and grasp it! But do not once more begin everything at the wrong end!

All your past efforts have been against the harmony of the Divine Laws of Creation, and therefore you could not expect anything other than *those* fruits which you are now receiving and those which are still ripening for you! Cast them into the fire and begin to sow afresh. Only from the ground up can renewal take place.

Act accordingly, for you cannot distort any of the Primordial Laws of Creation without having to reap great harm in return. Learn to know the Laws and *then* build up accordingly, and peace, joy and happiness will be yours!

Furthermore, when you consider that in the last analysis everything, absolutely everything, has been developed solely on the basis of money, earthly power and earthly values, the present distress is not surprising, the collapse being conditioned by the Laws of Creation!

And as it was here, so is it with all else that does not rest upon the Divine Laws, which are so easily discernible in the Primordial Laws of Creation.

Everything must now be driven to the final release. Whipped up by the Light that is penetrating the Darkness of this earth, the perpetual building up of armaments with the thought of war, for example, was bound to lead to mass war. It was provoked solely by men's thoughts, men's volition, men's caution and men's fear. Through these man put the *forms* into Creation. Powerfully driven by the increased Light, these forms *had* to grow, to blossom and bear fruit, that is, become deed, as with all the forms still existing in Creation, whatever their nature.

They *must* grow, and in so doing they will be raised by the Light and strengthened for further existence, if they are in tune with the Laws of this Light-Power, or if they can neither harmonize with the Light-Power, nor on that account make contact with It, they will be strengthened only to shatter themselves at the height of their growth against the Power of the Light, and thus pronounce judgment on themselves. All that is wrong will consequently come to an end of its own accord through becoming visibly activated, even that which would still like to hide. Under the pressure of the Light nothing can continue to hold back, it must emerge, must come to light and must show its *fruits* through the *deed*! So that it may be exactly recognized for what it really is. *And everything through itself.*

It is no longer of any use to struggle against this, nor is intellectual sagacity, which in the darkness and twilight of this great confusion could so often stand the test in the past, of any avail. *There must now be Light everywhere*, in accordance with the self-acting and now greatly strengthened basic Laws of this Creation! Man with his volition is no longer of any account in the mighty mechanism which, permeated anew by God's Power, quickens its effects in order to bring about purification and to renew itself therein, as it surges onwards!

Do not speak of the mass-suggestion of certain leaders, for it does not exist in that sense. What happens is quite different. The efforts of a leader can only bring about uniformity of

thought. The driving power for the flaring-up of the deed is supplied solely by the perpetually self-acting effects of the Primordial Laws of Creation! Unfortunately however, owing to their fixed opinions men view everything from the wrong side, as if the power could issue from the individual or from man as such. But it is just the opposite! All power comes only from above!

Thus the most unsavory party squabbles were bound to break out, and they will be intensified *until the collapse of the parties themselves*, because owing to their ignorance of the Primordial Laws of Creation they also stand on the wrong ground, and can therefore never be brought into harmony. As the flowering of all the weeds in party affairs, newspapers now flourish which through their unscrupulous agitation poison even *that* part of humanity who wish to pursue their path inoffensively. Without restraint these papers try to outdo each other, because the pressing power of the Light now compels them to *show* their utter hollowness and the false aspirations they contain! And they do reveal them! They imprint upon themselves *that* stamp which they deserve, and which they will be unable to change or to erase when the hour of enlightenment comes for men through their *own experiences* and their own recognition!

There will be no retreat where they have gone too far, and have themselves thereby made a return impossible. And so here too downfall and self-destruction will come through their own guilt. When in accordance with the Holy Laws of this Creation all parties have lived themselves out through aggravation become deed, then the next result will be that the majority of newspapers will also cease to exist, because they will have nothing more to offer to their readers when, together with envy, hatred and hostility, their foundations have split asunder; for only on *that* swamp could they flourish as they have done. On *good* soil they can no longer exist.

*Everything* must become new! The churches themselves will not be spared in regard to what has hitherto been wrong with them. Here too everything now pursues its course in

accordance with the Laws of Creation, and can no longer be checked by anything. Whatever is not in absolute harmony with the Laws of God, which are firmly anchored not in books but *in Creation*, must reveal itself. Strictly in accordance with the nature of the seed the fruit will now ripen, to be harvested at the closing of the cycle of the events connected with all that has been interwoven in Creation by men's actions and volition. This is equivalent to the oft-promised Judgment, before the beginning of a new time that will be more pleasing to God!

Bitter is the taste of the fruits which man's activities have cultivated in Creation, and which mankind must now eat, even if they have to poison themselves and perish! Too long have they struggled against any recognition, because this did not accord with their hitherto prevailing views.

However, *everything* must first become new before there can be ascent, as has already been long proclaimed in promises, as the Son of God Himself already explained at that time. This means that *everything* has been wrong.

In his indolent thinking, however, every human being still continues to pass over this fact, even those who often speak of this proclamation. They know of it, but they do not regard it with *that* seriousness which would be necessary for their own salvation!

Unfortunately everything is always *so* taken up and interpreted as to correspond with the selfish or also comfort-loving wishes of each individual. And what does not suit him, or what he does not readily understand, he usually rejects or ignores, because that gives him the least trouble at the time.

It is not enough that the failure of all churches during the World War had to clearly demonstrate how little of their teachings was really *alive* in the faithful. The teachings remained but totally empty words and nothing but *outward* form instead of standing the test for once. This failure however was not the fault of the faithful but of the *interpretations* of the Word until now which totally lack the life energy of conviction! Which is why they are incapable of inspiring conviction.

Only where there is *living conviction* does the Word become deed and give men really firm support! Yet for all dogmata, the time of the war and its aftermath was only the time of maturing to the flowering. The *fruits* will *now* have to show themselves which will permit a precise recognition of the actual nature of the seed! With the increasing despair, churches and temples and any and all houses of God, are filling up with the faithful and followers, who hope to find help there in *the manner in which* they had been taught. All will then learn through their own experiencing how to discern what was genuine and what was false in the old teaching. All that is genuine and all that is false must expose itself so that it lies clearly before everyone, and all that is false, in the awakening through experiencing, will quickly collapse and never be able to rise again. Only through experiencing will man learn to differentiate! As long as he lacks the conviction gained through experiencing man will continue with a blind, inactive faith, which is of no benefit to his spirit, but paralyses and lulls it to sleep.

Go then, you men, and *experience*, for you are no longer able to come voluntarily to the recognition of Divine Truth through the movement of your spirit; because you keep the entrances thereto constantly blocked for yourselves.

Even your much-quoted saying: "All men are equal before God" will very soon vanish, with its hitherto wrong interpretation, if you persist in comforting yourselves with it according to *your* idea of the words!

The saying as such is quite correct, but hitherto it has been wrongly interpreted! Here again the Diving Laws in Creation do not permit such an indolent interpretation.

It is quite correct that *before* God men are equal, regardless of what already lies behind them. But to stand before God, that is, to reach the steps of His Throne, is possible for a few men only. In his superficial habit earthman does not consider this weighty circumstance. Instead he tries to persuade himself that absolute equality in spirit prevails before God. He makes

no attempt to consider the specific reference: "before God". He simply ignores it, and clings to the word "equality" in the sentence.

Quite apart from the fact that in this being equal before God there also lies an allusion to the futility of earthly honors before all the Laws of God, which make no distinction when a human spirit passes over from his gross material earthly cloak into the Ethereal World, as to whether he was a beggar or a king, a priest or a pope on earth, before God he is a *human spirit* and nothing more, who must answer personally for his every thought, for his words and for his deeds, then an even higher meaning lies in these words.

*Before God* means to be before the steps of the Throne of God, that is in the Spiritual Realm, the Paradise, which lies below the steps of the Throne. This is the most significant factor in this sentence, but man continues to disregard it. It is the most difficult, because a human spirit in Creation *only* reaches this place *before God when* he has atoned for everything which has burdened him in this Creation in the way of guilt and wrong things. Everything, even the last speck of dust! Not until then can he "stand before God"!

Nevertheless he will never behold God; for this he cannot do. Moreover the gulf from that place which is called "at the foot of His Throne" is still tremendous. It can never be bridged by a human spirit. For this reason man must be content with what he has. This is already immeasurably much, and indeed he hardly makes real use of the smallest part of it!

But the human spirits *here on earth*, as well as those in Creation, are *not equal* before God! Such a concept is a fatal error! Man must first be so advanced in his maturity and purity that he is able to pass or stand before God; *then* he may say that he can be considered *equal* with those who simultaneously stand before God. What lies *behind* him is of no consequence, because he cannot stand before God until everything that has previously been wrong with him has been effaced and redeemed, whether it concerned his opinions or his

deeds. As soon as he stands before the steps of the Throne it is redeemed and severed; for he does not arrive there until it is. Neither by cunning nor by force; for the Laws in Creation will not permit it.

But once he stands there, he is utterly and absolutely equal, as though there had never been anything wrong with him, no matter how great were his faults in the past! The same is also to hold good here on earth according to the Will of God, but men pay no attention to this in the laws they made for themselves – they do not follow the Will of God in these matters. Instead they always expect even more from God than they themselves are willing to give to their fellow-men! Christ has already expressed this clearly enough in His parable of the unfaithful servant. —

The empty words of the past are now becoming manifest in the Power of the Light! And thus the expulsion of all that has been diseased in the past and the restoration to health, will come about of itself. Also whatever is wrong will be called to life and must reveal its fruit to all mankind! So that they may thereby come to recognition! The Wrath of Almighty God will allow the evil to tear itself to pieces! Yet it was only through disregarding the Divine Laws that such excrescences and evil fruits were able to ripen, which you must receive everywhere today in order to taste them, and in so doing either free yourself from them or perish through them!

Only when these evils have been eliminated will men *then* gradually realize how in reality they have suffered through this poison. Only *then* will they be set free, and breathe a sigh of relief in the fresh air that has been produced by purifying storms of the severest kind.

Today however, things have not yet come so far. Fear still reigns everywhere! It is true that mankind are reluctant to admit this, but nevertheless fear rules their actions; for already hatred reveals itself! But the actual origin of hatred *is* fear! Whatever is attacked out of hatred is invariably also feared. Such is the way of men on earth.

Real hatred arises only from fear. Never from anger, and not from indignation, which in turn brings forth holy wrath. Nor can hatred arise from contempt or disgust.

And since fear is beginning to reveal itself in hatred, the end is no longer far off; for this fear now arises in earthmen through the pressure of the Light, which they cannot escape with their trusted and habitual intellectual subtlety, that now fails them for the first time in thousands of years, because it is powerless against the Living and Omnipotent Will of God! —

The happening I explain to you embraces all mankind. Therefore do not think in your human way that everything should now be over in days, weeks or months. It is a struggle that has already been going on for years, but whose end is also interwoven with the Primordial Laws of Creation as an absolute victory for the Light!

Men, *awake* in your experiencing, so that you need not be lost in it! For soon there shall arise a humanity that swings knowingly in the Primordial Laws of Creation, so that the disaster which results from wrong living remains averted, and only peace and joy can reign on this earth plane. For your salvation, and to the honor of God!

---

## Duty and loyalty.

The fulfillment of duty has always been considered man's greatest virtue. Among all peoples it ranked higher than everything else, higher even than life itself. It was held in such esteem that it retained first place even among the intellectuals who ultimately regarded nothing as sacred any more but their own intellect, to which they submitted like slaves. The consciousness of the need to fulfill one's duty remained; not even the domination of the intellect was able to upset this. However, the Darkness found a point of attack after all, and gnawed at its *root*. As everywhere so also here it distorted the *conception*. The idea of the fulfillment of duty remained, but the *duties themselves* were set up by the intellect and thus became earthbound, piecework and imperfect.

It is therefore only natural that a person of intuitive perception is often unable to acknowledge that the duties assigned to him are right. He comes into conflict with himself. He, too, considers the fulfillment of duty to be one of the supreme laws which a person must observe, and yet at the same time he is bound to admit to himself that in fulfilling the duties laid upon him he acts against his own convictions. As a result of this condition forms arise not only in the inner man, who thus torments himself, but also in the Ethereal World, forms which also cause discontent and discord in others. Thus a craving for fault-finding and grumbling spreads over the widest circles without anybody being able to discover the actual cause, which cannot be recognized because the effect comes from the Ethereal World through the living forms created by a person of intuitive perception, arising out of the conflict between his urge to fulfill his duty and his intuitive perception which wills otherwise.

There must now be a change in this matter in order to redress the evil. Duty and inner conviction must always *harmonise* with each other. It is wrong for a person to risk his life in the fulfillment of a duty which he cannot acknowledge within himself as being right!

Each sacrifice becomes of genuine value only when conviction harmonises with duty. But if a man only risks his life in the fulfillment of duty *without* conviction he thereby degrades himself to the position of a mercenary who, in the service of another, fights for the sake of money, similar to the lansquenets. Fighting of that kind thus becomes murder!

If, however, someone risks his life out of conviction, he also bears within himself love for the cause for which he voluntarily resolved to fight.

And this alone has high value for him! He must do it for the sake of love, out of love for the *cause*! Thereby the duty he thus fulfils comes to *life* and is so uplifted that he places its fulfillment before everything else.

Thus the dead, rigid performance of duty automatically separates itself from the living. And only the living has spiritual value and effect. Everything else can only serve and advantage earthly and intellectual purposes. Not for any length of time either, but only temporarily, because only what is living becomes of lasting duration.

Thus the fulfillment of duty arising out of conviction becomes genuine, self-willed loyalty, and natural to the one carrying it out. He is neither desirous nor capable of acting otherwise. He cannot stumble and fall because with him loyalty is genuine, is closely connected with him, indeed it is a part of him which he is unable to lay aside.

Blind obedience and blind fulfillment of duty are therefore of as little worth as is blind belief! Both are lacking life because they lack love!

From this alone man immediately recognizes the difference between a genuine sense of duty and a feeling of duty which has only been imparted to him. The one bursts forth from out

of the intuitive perception, and the other is grasped by the intellect only. Therefore love and duty can never oppose each other but are *one* where the perception is *genuine*, and from this blossoms forth loyalty in the sense of the Holy Grail!

Where love is missing there is also no life, there all is dead. Christ has often pointed this out. It is inherent in the Primordial Laws of Creation, and is therefore universal without exception.

The performance of duty which voluntarily breaks forth radiantly from a human soul can never be confused with a duty carried out for the sake of earthly reward, but each can quite easily be recognized. Therefore let genuine loyalty arise within you, or hold aloof where you cannot be loyal.

Loyalty! So often praised, yet never understood! As with everything else, earthman has also deeply debased the conception of loyalty, narrowing and compressing it into rigid forms. Its greatness, freedom and beauty became cold and devoid of all expression. Its naturalness became *forced*!

According to present conceptions loyalty ceased to be part of the soul's nobility and was made a quality of the character. A difference like day and night. Thus loyalty became soulless. Where it is required it has devolved into a duty. Man has thus declared it to be independent, it stands upon its own feet, all by itself, and therefore... wrong! Loyalty, too, was twisted and distorted by the human mind.

Loyalty is *not* something which is independent, but only a quality of love! Of the *right* love, which embraces everything. To embrace everything, however, does not hold the meaning of embracing everything at once in accordance with human understanding, which is expressed in the well-known words: "embracing the whole world"! To embrace everything means: *To have the capacity of being directed upon everything!* Upon personal as well as upon impersonal matters! It is not merely bound to something specific, nor is it meant to be one-sided. Right love does not exclude anything that is pure or kept pure, no matter whether this concerns persons or one's native land,

also such things as work or Nature. *That* is what is meant by embracing. And *the quality of this right* love is loyalty, which must no more be considered of small, earthly narrowness than is the conception of chastity.

There is no real loyalty without love, just as there is no true love without loyalty either. But the earthman of today regards fulfillment of duty as loyalty, a *rigid* form with which the soul does not need to vibrate. This is wrong! Loyalty is *nothing but* a quality of true love, which is merged with justice, but has nothing to do with being in love.

Loyalty rests in the vibrations of the intuitive perception of the spirit, and thus becomes a quality of the soul.

In performing his duty today a person often gives reliable service to someone whom he must inwardly despise. This, of course, cannot be described as loyalty, but remains merely the fulfillment of earthly duties which he has undertaken. It is purely an *external* affair, which in the reciprocal action can *also bring nothing but outward benefit* to the person concerned, be it improvement in his earthly means or earthly reputation.

In such cases true loyalty cannot manifest because it wants to be offered *freely* with love, from which it cannot be separated. Therefore loyalty cannot exert an influence of itself either!

However, if men would live on a basis of true love, as is willed by God, this condition alone would provide the impetus to alter many things among them, in fact everything! No man who is inwardly base would then be able to exist any longer, much less gain any success here upon earth. A great purification would set in immediately.

Men who are inwardly base would not enjoy earthly honors, nor would they hold office, for intellectual knowledge of itself shall not suffice to place them in authoritative positions!

Thus the fulfillment of duty would then always become an absolute pleasure and all work would become enjoyment, because all thinking and all working would be completely penetrated by true, God-willed love, and bring in its train not

only an unshakable intuitive perception of justice but also loyalty, that loyalty which as a matter of course remains unchangeable in its essence, and does not consider this as a merit that must be rewarded.

*This* is the nature of all activity in the future God-willed Kingdom of Peace on earth, however only after the Darkness has been eradicated. —

---

## Strive for conviction!

**S**trive for conviction in everything you do! Otherwise you are lifeless puppets or mercenary hirelings! In the Kingdom of God on earth the dead and the indolent shall be eliminated, and shall no longer have any justification for existence; for a man who in some way or other does nothing but run with the crowd is worthless before the Divine Laws. —

Look around you so that you may learn from everything. Daily and hourly you are given the opportunity to do so. Observe events in every country. The masses who in diverse factions have for years besmirched and attacked each other, even becoming violent to the point of murder, will sometimes overnight parade through the streets together, singing and waving torches of joy, just as though they had been loyal friends for many years. Overnight. And simply because their leaders decide to join hands for some purpose or other. Where do you find personal and really firm conviction in such matters, where any conviction at all! There is none. It is the marching along without any intuitive perception of many thousands who are thus worthless for what is great. No kingdom that swings in the Divine Laws can ever arise on such soil; nor can it ever become healthy by such means.

If parties oppose each other, and this struggle is based on conviction, it is utterly impossible for them to join forces without changing their convictions and ways. That, however, does not come about in just a few hours. Should this nevertheless prove possible, there could certainly have been no conviction; but only *one* uniform aim could have such a decisive effect: *the aim for power!* That alone tramples unscrupulously upon everything, stopping at nothing to fulfill its aim if there is no other way. But from the outset such forced unions also

harbor *distrust*, which always watches suspiciously over the other, and then has but little time for the main thing: the welfare of the people who look to them full of hope.

Such people, lacking in true conviction, can also be very easily diverted from the course given to them by the union. They have not that reliability which rests in personal conviction! A flood of meaningless words is enough to intoxicate them. But in such intoxication there lies no healthy deed.

With such people there can be no upbuilding that is able to withstand the storms! It is no different from the time of Jesus, when the masses called out "Hosanna!" and only a few hours later "Crucify!"

But wherever conviction forms the basis of an action, of a deed, this cannot happen; for conviction comes from knowledge, and knowledge gives endurance and stability, also imperturbability and victorious courage, because true knowledge arises from *experiencing*.

And bearers of the Grail Cross do *possess* knowledge.

Out of this a wave of power shall arise and pour forth over all mankind on earth. This wave must sweep before it with irresistible force all the dross that still prevents the awakening of men to a recognition. Therefore become strong, so that, together with the great purification now taking place through the pressure of the Light, you will be able to pass on strength to mankind for a new resurrection! For heavy storms must assail the souls, so that they will become different through pain and distress, so that they will arise purified or perish!

But learn and mature personally in the process, so that you may gain conviction! And the nature of the conviction will determine who can be saved, and who must remain forever excluded from the coming Kingdom of God; for conviction is at the same time the fruit of your volition!

Only the power of conviction makes man *alive* in Creation, that is to say, of full value! It enables him to form works which must be taken *seriously*, and which do not easily perish.

It was for this reason that I called out to men in the foreword to my Message that belief must now become conviction!

It is now high time for all to achieve this. And since conviction out of knowledge comes in turn only through experiencing, man is now forcibly and sharply pressed into the outward experiencing of everything that he has hitherto created in the way of forms, so that he may clearly recognize, in pain and in joy, what he has formed *aright* and what has been wrong in the thoughts and intuitive perceptions of his life. —

In the time of greatest tribulation, Cross-bearers in all countries will be regarded by men on earth as the guiding example they should follow. You cannot alter any of this, for it is so ordained. But woe unto you if they then find faults in you! Woe unto you for your sake and for mankind's! Therefore do not waste the time for the necessary maturing. Men themselves would bitterly avenge their disappointment upon you. Be alert and strong! — — —

The new Kingdom shall now come into being here on earth! The Kingdom of God, as it was prophesied to men by the Light! However, it will not come about with a gentle breeze, as a reward for the present-day humanity!

How greatly mistaken are the conceited believers, who have long been trembling with bliss at the thought of the Kingdom of God on earth, in the proud self-assurance that they will be permitted to enjoy it as the chosen children of God, because in their opinion they believe in their Savior, Who has died for them and thereby taken on Himself the burden of their sins. Much as a good child very often becomes used to being rewarded with sweets, so they also think of the coming of this Kingdom of God here on earth. At this thought sweet dreams float vaguely before them, as serene feeling of being sheltered in the faithful protection of God, Who showers them with His Love out of joy that they believe in Him! Who rewards them with It because they have openly confessed their belief in Him and have never been ashamed of Him before men. What unspeakable presumption lies in this attitude!

Just scrutinize things carefully and keenly, you men, and you will find that the majority of all Christians are just like *this* and no different! This is by no means exaggerated, sad as it may sound.

But the Wrath of God will strike these self-complacent ones with great severity! They are a slimy swamp, to be shunned with loathing! Just all those who now, in their arrogance plume themselves on being the chosen and true children of God.

The Kingdom of God, however, makes great demands on mankind, and brings work in the richest abundance! It is the very opposite of what the church believer imagines! And the hardest work that awaits man is *on himself*! In this respect, he has much to make good if he is to stand the test at all. I want to remove the bandage from your eyes, so that you may now recognize these earthmen in all their malice; because the end of my struggle is approaching and you are to cooperate in this Gross Material World and help to promote the victory of the Light, which will annihilate the self-satisfied and yet so evil-minded parasites. For now they can only be called parasites, and no longer human beings!

However, the sword which you carry in the name of God, to Whom you have sworn allegiance, is to be sharp-edged and shiny!

But who among you stands firm; who is alert and ready for the fight against the whole of mankind and against the Darkness that surrounds them!

You are well-meaning and willing, but you still cling far too tenaciously and rigidly to everyday trivialities, thereby laying such obstacles in your paths that you become hardly able to achieve the smallest fraction of *what* in reality you should and *must* achieve. Every one of you still lags far behind, because owing to all these petty trifles he cannot swing harmoniously *in that which is great*!

Become more flexible and free in your everyday work, and always and steadfastly keep in view and hold in your intuitive perception only what is great! Do not be too rigid in your

perseverance, for this would hamper you. You must not make yourselves human parts of a machine, but you must become alive, great and free! Wherever your faults tend to form an obstacle, there you must immediately seek *new* ways that come easier to you, through which nevertheless you will finally reach that place to which you must attain!

Act likewise with your fellow called ones. Then you will see that the harmony is not so easily disturbed! Drop all that is rigid in your relations with your fellow-men, and become instead *living* and flexible! Give in for a time where something does not seem to work, but in doing so never let the reins slip from your hands! With a little skill you will finally bring whatever resists you to the place where it should stand. A good rider will never have to ill-treat his horse in order to master it, if he knows how to handle animals. *He* must simply first learn to understand animals if he wishes to rule them! Rigidity on his part would bring only stubbornness in its train, or *that* kind of obedience which is liable to break down at any moment. He sits on a powder barrel, instead of his horse carrying him with love and care!

In reality *that* will which leads *to the goal* is unflinching, even if it has to alter its path, but not the will which allows its goal to be destroyed through its own rigidity. Perseverance alone leads to the goals, and not rigidity. Rigidity is *always* wrong, because it is unnatural, and also not in harmony with the Primordial Laws of Creation, which demand mobility. Any *rigid* clinging to something is incompetence, which does not recognize other alternatives, and therefore also hinders the forward striving of one's fellow men! —

Cross-bearers, awaken to the *new* way, let go of old and learned habits, be the first to become *new before the world*, even in your everyday thinking and action! There is *nothing* that does not need to have to become *new*; *this* I have already called out to you a hundred times! The beginning *must be with you*! Without a beginning there is no progress! *If you fail, the world will fall!*

## The beauty of the peoples.

The earth is now being encompassed by the Light. A strong cloak firmly envelops the globe so that the Darkness cannot escape. Ever stronger becomes the pressure, sharply forcing together all that is evil, so that one cycle after another of all that has happened must come to a close, and the end be connected with the beginning. Spears and arrows of Light dart here and there, swords of Light flash forth, and Lucifer's minions are being sorely afflicted to their destruction.

*Holy victory for the Light here upon earth!* That is God's Almighty Will. Light shall be everywhere, also among all the errors of mankind so that they may now recognize truthfulness. —

Rejoice, small flock, you who have been chosen to contribute to the immeasurably great work in the power of the Highest! Your time will come much sooner than you think today; for some day, it will come unexpectedly and overnight! Be strong in perseverance and, as if automatically, the fruits which you are to savor in joyful working as the chosen children of your Lord, will be yours! The power which HE conveys to you will protect you in your tribulation and will lift you to the purest joy which human spirits are capable of feeling.

For you the world Judgment will bring the *crown* instead of perdition, a work-filled, peaceful new life under the protection of the Holy Grail which you wish to serve with joyful volition in the upbuilding by God here on earth, by helping all people, who in true humility attune themselves to the primordial laws of Creation! In the New Kingdom your spirits will be able to swing strongly above all materiality, causing it to be beautified and bathed in the Light. —

The outcome after the purification is a strengthening and blossoming of the loyal ones; because all that is obstructive will be thrown off according to the Divine Law, even if it howls against the sifting, calling it unjust! The Light and thereby Justice will ruthlessly smash the intellectual sophistries which hypocritically ensnare the originators themselves, so that in their thoughts they actually imagine themselves to be right even when they act wrongly.

The bearers of my power will succeed in cutting off these shackles with the sword of pure volition as long as they keep it sharp-edged in the service to humanity and all of Creation! —

The great new time shall be ushered in as a blessing for all different peoples, so that they may feel happy upon the soil to which they belong, and thus come to full blossom in exact accord with their race, bearing rich fruit and working only towards the harmonious development of the whole of mankind upon earth.

Thus beauty will arise afresh! The entire earth will become a picture of beauty as though it had issued from the Hand of the Sublime Creator Himself, for all human spirits will then swing in the same sense, their joyful activity ascending in jubilant prayers of thanks to the Luminous Heights, there to mirror all the harmony of happiness manifesting on earth!

But this God-willed beauty cannot come about as long as the leaders try to force upon their people and upon their country foreign habits and customs, foreign clothing, and foreign architectural styles in the illusion that this makes for the progress of their people. Imitation is not uplifting, there is no personal achievement in it! Uniformity through copying is wrong!

The best measure of this is the sense of beauty which is given to you so that you may recognize what is right and what is wrong in these matters! Devote yourselves to the original, *true sense of beauty*, and then you can never err. For this is linked with the Primordial Laws of Creation, and is the expression of a knowledge of perfection which still remains hidden. It is an infallible signpost for every *spirit*, because only that which is

*spiritual* in this Subsequent Creation possesses the ability, at a very definite stage of maturity and in full consciousness, to recognize real beauty!

But here also you have unfortunately long since extinguished the unbiased intuitive perception through the fall of man, with its disastrous consequences arising from the domination of the intellect, which created caricatures of everything. The form which the intellect substituted for the conception of true beauty is the folly of fashion, to which your vanity only too gladly submitted. This slavery to fashion has completely buried your sense of beauty for noble, graceful forms, which is given to your *spirit* as a guide and a staff in this coarse existence upon earth, thus causing you to lose a strong support through your own guilt!

Otherwise, in *every* circumstance of life and in *all* places, you would always and at once intuitively perceive and *know* if something is not in order because wherever your sense of beauty is unable to vibrate joyfully the harmony which is a strict condition for Creation does not exist *as* it should. And where there is no harmony there is no beauty either.

Look at a Chinaman when he wears a top-hat, or a Japanese or Turk for that matter. Caricatures of European culture. Look at the Japanese woman who nowadays dresses herself in European clothes, and then see her when she wears the costume of her *own* country! What a difference! How much she loses when wearing clothes alien to her country! It is indeed a great loss for her. —

*In the advancement of its own culture alone lies true progress for each of the peoples!* There must naturally be *ascent* in everything, and no standstill. But this upward progress must always take place upon and out of its *own* soil, not through adopting foreign things, otherwise it is never progress. The word itself in its true sense rejects any imitation. A people can only *progress* through the upward development of what it already possesses, and not by the adoption of something it has borrowed. Taking something over is not progress, for progress

shows itself in the improvement of what already exists. This alone should cause some reflection. Nor is that which is borrowed or taken over really one's property, even if one wishes to make it so. It is not something personally achieved, not a result of the people's own spirit, of which alone it could and must be proud!

A great task rests therein for everyone overseas: To let each people there become great *within itself* entirely out of itself, through its own abilities, which vary so greatly among the many peoples of this earth. *All* must come to full blossom *according to the nature of the soil upon which they have developed*. They must remain adapted to this soil in order to unfold *that* beauty which swings harmoniously upon earth with the others. It is just through the *difference in kind* that right harmony comes into existence, and not through uniformity among all the peoples. If this had been willed then there would have been only *one* country and one people. This, however, would soon bring about a standstill and ultimately decay and death, because the refreshing influence of the complementarity would be missing!

Here again just look at the flowers in the meadows, which stimulate and refresh and indeed spread happiness around on account of their variety!

But failure to observe such laws of development will come home severely to the peoples, for this, too, will finally lead to retrogression and collapse; there can be no upward soaring because all healthiness is lacking. Man cannot strive against those things to which he like every other creature is subject, in as much as he will never achieve anything unless he takes into account the Living Laws which are woven into this Creation. Wherever he acts against and disregards them he *is bound to* suffer shipwreck sooner or later. The later it happens the more violently it will occur. Thus every leader must also bear the main responsibility for that which he mismanages due to *his* wrong attitude. He must then suffer for his entire people, who in their distress cling firmly to him spiritually! —

---

I repeat once more: True progress for each people lies solely in the development of its own culture! Adapted to the soil, the climate and the race! Man must become *indigenous* in the purest sense, if he wishes to develop and expect help from the Light! He should beware of adopting the habits and customs of peoples alien to his nature, not to mention foreign opinions. To be rooted in one's native soil is a basic condition and alone guarantees health, strength and maturity!

Has man not yet learned enough from the bitter experiences he often called forth through the gift of his own culture to foreign peoples, the decline of which he then had to experience? Only a very few have been induced to reflect upon this. But even this reflection has so far seeped away in the sand, unable to find any ground which could hold an anchor.

To sweep away the evil and form a new, joyful and rich life in countries overseas is a comprehensive task. The work is transformational, because it will affect *all* peoples upon earth, in a supportive, revitalizing and blissful way! But it is necessary as the first *outward* step if harmony and beauty are to arise and be celebrated among the peoples of this earth! —

---

## Man, how do you *stand*!

This is the question that thunders towards you in the Judgment! *How do you stand* now, not *how have you stood* in the past!

Therefore be on the alert if you wish to win through! Thus have I been calling to the human spirit for a long time now, but my warnings have died away unheard. Only a few have heard the call, have *wanted* to hear it! The others imagined that they had something far better in what they had hitherto accepted as satisfactory, whether in the doctrines of the churches, in what many sects have to offer, or in total disbelief in all that is not physically visible or tangible.

But those who *want* to listen are not nearly severe enough with themselves. They are not honest enough as regards their spirit. "Man, *how do you stand*!" will suddenly confront him in the working of the Living Laws of this Creation, just when he is not prepared for it. For even if he has been exerting himself for years to be in *such* a state that he can withstand the storms that will roar with mighty force about his head, it will avail him nothing if in the end he has weakened in his efforts for but a single hour. When his time comes he will nevertheless fall, because at the moment it happens he has not been *so* alert as he should have been in the Power of the Light, which was given to him for that purpose. And it will come overnight!

Much will be demanded of him to whom much is given! The *utmost* activity in spirit and in body is an inexorable law for any development towards ascent and service in the Light! Unless you use the Power constantly in *that* sense in which it was given to you, it will become fatal for you! It will crush you, precisely according to the state of *your inner being*!

There is no question of a middle course with the Power of the Light! Inactivity, as well as an attitude of passive waiting with good intention, will have the same result as wrong application, namely *the fall*!

Your volition must have become a deed when the waves already predestined from birth for each individual now reach you!

*Every* human being on earth has his time for purification or destruction. It comes over him according to the Law, and he alone holds his fate in his hand.

Not everywhere at the same time does it come, but it strikes each one as has been pre-ordained for him! This represents the last sifting before the Judgment!

Only *he* who is able to victoriously survive this automatic sifting, is thereby selected for action! For the up-building in the Millennium. And all of this he holds in his own hand!

If he did not apply the warnings I have so often given as seriously to himself as they had to be taken by each individual, then in inexorable justice he will bring on himself the adverse consequences; for it will strike him *according to how he is*. Exactly according to the *reality*, not like he *imagines* himself to be!

This will reveal whether someone fully applied the power in his striving to fulfill the calling or whether he had only toyed with it in fits of vanity, no matter how slight. It will become evident who was serious in his desire to serve, or who only wanted to be involved so as not to miss out on anything.

Woe, where conceit or false ambition have been able to gain a foothold, so that there was no longer any room for true humility! Much to the horror of him who has allowed himself to be poisoned therewith, it will manifest itself and fling him aside.

I say unto you that the weighing and measuring of everything that is stirring within you will be done minutely, including that which you imagine to be buried, unless it has really dropped away from you! —

*I fear for you; for you must now struggle alone through the last phase, so that you may either pass or fall!*

However, I wish to explain today that it will with certainty strike your weaknesses, great and small, so that they may be burnt out and henceforth no longer hinder a pure activity in serving joyfulness! Nothing of them will remain. You will now pass through the fire of a purifying process in which you *must* succeed, unless you wish to perish in it. —

But he who stands true and right in the earnestness of a volition for humble service is only strengthened in these waves, and uplifted through their tremendous buoyancy, which will bring him the last penetrating upward thrust which finally makes him ready for the fulfillment of his task in the service of the Grail! —

Every human being on the entire earth must go through this. Not one will be spared.

So that you may pass through these weeks knowingly, I also wish to explain to you the process that you have to undergo. But remember that this knowledge also increases your responsibility!

The course of every human being living on this earth today has been *so* adjusted from the day of his birth, that at the time which is now close at hand he will be subjected to certain rays acting as a preparation for the final Judgment, this being the last sifting which determines his fate. This will take *months* for everybody. It cannot be lived through merely in hours or days. Nor can anyone escape it. It cannot be halted, averted, or delayed for a single second!

In addition, there comes from above a pressure of the Light which is new, and which releases and increases the effects. So powerful that no resistance, however strong and tenacious it may be, can withstand this Light-pressure.

Thus man stands for a certain time as if under a shower-bath coming from all directions, which he is absolutely forced to endure. He cannot escape it, can move neither forward nor back, nor to one side, nor can he protect or hide himself.

All this is an unavoidable experience! The process might be compared to a pressure-test, though such a picture is not a true reflection of what happens. It is not only a matter of a very definite pressure, which every human being must be able to endure if he is not to collapse under it, but the pressure has life and also calls to life all else, rousing it to activity or compelling everything under it to stir, even what is slumbering.

Just as this happening takes place in the entire Creation during its purification, so it now simultaneously occurs within the individual human being, who cannot be exempted from it and must even be struck in the most severe manner. What has been awakened or animated in this way will be further strengthened, whether it be good or evil. It will thrive through this invigoration!

Being of a different nature the evil opposes the Light-pressure, and as the evil grows it also increases its opposition, which however is bound to cause pain solely to the evil, because the powerful Light-pressure will not retreat by so much as a hair's breadth. Thus the evil is literally compelled to beat its head against a wall and collapse and destroy itself.

Of course I am only giving you an illustration. But it actually happens, for the evil is compelled to destroy itself in every part and through *its own activity*, which is so greatly intensified by the pressure of the Light. All errors and wrong concepts are likewise abandoned to self-destruction, because they can have no *furthering* link with the Light.

Now imagine a person who carries within himself many weaknesses and faults, and who is unwilling to cast them off with all his strength. The inevitable consequence will be that his physical body is also unable to endure the tremendous impact, and will likewise perish, that is, it must *also* collapse, whereas with less obstinate faults the physical body will be affected only to a minor degree.

The body will naturally always be affected where weak places offer points of attack or where there is latent illness. It is quite possible that with many men the brain cells will present points

of attack, which will then produce disturbance in the thought processes, something which is erroneously called spiritual confusion. It is really only the intellect which is subjected to the confusion, never the spirit! Only the activity of the earthly brain suffers derangement, because there is no such thing as spiritual confusion.

With the laying aside of the body through physical death, the abnormal disturbance of such a patient is immediately removed.

It is just in the disturbances of the activity of the brain that the sin of many schools, which have over-burdened the frontal brain of the young with things for which they have not the slightest practical use in their earthly lives, will reveal itself. Here, vanity has become disastrous and criminal, for neither strength nor time have been left for what would have been more necessary and indeed is absolutely essential for every human being: To recognize the Will of God in Creation!

The attack on the body lies in the reaction of the rebelling wrong, and in the struggles which are bound to ensue from its powerful and sudden strengthening through the Light-pressure. The Light Itself attacks nothing, but simply *is* and *stands!* But the light-wall moves ever closer like an indomitable vanguard, continually restricting the space in which all that is wrong must live itself out to the end until it becomes completely crushed.

So is it with *those* human beings who do not stand aright towards the Light and therefore do not swing in the Laws either. However, he who stands aright in Creation is bound to be raised on high by these rays to the very boundary where he is not in danger of being drawn along into the coming disintegration. They will burn out everything within him that is not in complete harmony with the Laws of this Creation. But only if man provides the possibility for it by an inflexible and ruthless self-conquest through the recognition of his faults and wrong characteristics. *To be able* to do this is made much easier for him, as through these radiations all the

strengthened wrong within him becomes visible. Such faults, however, will not be revealed in simple illustrations, as man, because of his spiritually indolent ways, may once more erroneously expect, but instead he must exert himself, otherwise reward and help cannot come to him. He *himself* can perceive it if with an honest volition he opens his eyes to it! Then he will readily see in which way he disturbs his fellow-men and so injures himself. With a little effort he can soon recognize it in the attitude of his fellow-men towards him; for if he *really* wishes to ascend, then in all things, in small as well as in great conflicts and disagreements, in every disturbance of harmony, he will no longer seek for and imagine he finds faults in *others*, but only *in himself*! In *this* way, only *through experiencing*, will he still recognize in time everything he lacks! There is no other way for him to come to recognition.

If he looks around him *in that way*, he has already taken the most difficult step in the struggle leading him to victory! *The main thing for him lies in this first step*! If he disregards it he will never win through but must fall, *however* good his volition. If he neglects this step he also lacks the right volition, having either through self-complacency or love of comfort deluded and deceived himself, and the fruits of such presumption will fall back upon him.

It is quite different with those who really bear within them the honest volition that always brings forth the deed, and does not remain only a volition.

Through the pressure of the Light they receive an undreamt-of and powerful strengthening of their good and pure striving, which raises them on high, above the boundary that is ordained for the Judgment. This will grant them security when the storm begins, which will tear away all the others into the region of disintegration that is equivalent to eternal damnation.

Awake, you human spirits! You have not even a day to waste!

The Son of God has already sent out a warning call to you once: *Forgive thy neighbor*! Do you know what this implies?

You think far too superficially about everything, you do not want to delve for yourself in the Word, which holds such inexpressible treasures.

Forgiveness towards your fellow-man begins and ends with disregarding *his* faults! Not *seeking* faults in *him*! In other words, only attending to *yourselves* in this respect! First seeking and laying aside *your* faults before attempting to draw your neighbor's attention to his.

Jesus knew full well that you need the whole of your life on earth, if you wish to examine yourselves sufficiently to enable you to advance and to mature *as* you should.

Look closely at yourselves first, only then will you understand your neighbor! And in understanding lies forgiveness.

But how many human beings are there on earth who do so! Not one has absorbed the Word of the Son of God in this way. Not this *one* Word, much less His whole teaching. Your greatest fault lies in disregarding just *this* demand! It is in this that you sin most of all... and thus neglect the most, indeed you thereby gamble away your entire existence! And yet in spite of this you hope to pass!

"Man, *how do you stand!*" This is not a question but a *demand* ! It will shatter you unless you speedily come to your senses! I warn you ! Many a person already stands on the brink of the abyss, and will fall unless at the last moment he wrenches himself away from it with all his strength! No longer seek the faults in others but only in yourselves!

Do not throw away the last staff that I can hold out to you at the moment of utmost danger!

So often you have not heeded it at all, although the Son of God offered it to you in every sentence He uttered. Thus also when He said to you: "Love thy neighbor as thyself!"

Here, too, the meaning is the same. Ever again He gave you the same advice, through which you could advance vigorously if only you really wished to do so! For this, however, you yourselves also had to think and act, but that was asking too

much of you! Bitterly, bitterly, will this be brought home to you!

Therefore be alert at last, and stop dreaming of the past and of the future, but experience *the actual moment, the present!* This alone can benefit you!

“Man, *how do you stand!*” That is what the Law of Creation demands in the Judgment! —

For this reason I wish to give one more warning before this portentous demand must wake you out of your false delusion!

Do not concern yourself about what you have been on earth in former times! Such knowledge can avail you nothing during the Judgment, for it is of no account! Only later, when you are more mature, can it convey certain things to you! Then, if you think about it in the right way, you will be able to draw *lessons* from it, which will be of great benefit to you for the present time.

It is only curiosity or even vanity that urges some of you to ask about it so insistently. But you do not draw from this knowledge what even today you could and should draw, namely *contentment and gratitude for your present life*, for up to now you have been permitted fully to experience everything on earth! There is not one among you who has not been rich in the earthly sense, or in a ruling position of one kind or another. There is not one who has not already savored all the pleasures of this earth. Therefore you have no right and no reason to envy either those who are in authority today, or those who are rich and who perhaps had to endure hunger and want under you in your prosperous times!

You should learn from this that just at this time you are in *such* a position as you still need in order thoroughly to experience, so as thereby to mature or to atone for your former mistakes. Both can arouse nothing but gratitude for the Grace that grants you this through the working of the irrevocable Laws, which in their inviolable perfection are incapable of injustice or error, and which down to the minutest detail always return to man as a fruit *that which he himself*, through

the decisions of his free volition, has given into this Creation as a seed!

The suffering that befalls him *is his own deed*, as is likewise the joy which the Law bestows upon him! And when he is allowed to suffer or obliged to go in want, then he knows quite well that this is leading to his freedom from the consequences of a deed which he himself committed, and is thereby helping in his ascent, which alone can bring him to the Luminous Realms of pure joy. If he lives in riches or even as a ruler, then what he has hitherto experienced must be an admonition to him to administer all this *aright* in the sense of the Divine Laws, so that it may bring blessing to his fellow-men, and not lead him once more downwards, binding him to a future life of suffering on this earth, but must uplift him through the gratitude of those who have been able to find happiness and peace through his activities.

This knowledge is henceforth to serve you *for this alone*. But today you merely toy in vain self-complacency with the thought of what you once were, perhaps even boasting about it, as if it could possibly benefit you for your present life.

I say to you that unless you are able to gain from this for *your present life* in the sense I have indicated, it is worthless and can only harm you. What does it matter to the Law in this Creation whether you were once an emperor or a king here on earth, an apostle or a pope: “Man, *how do you stand!*” that is what everyone will have to answer *through his experiencing!* And your answer lies in this *present life*, in your innermost state alone!

And this solemn moment stands before you! *Be alert!* —

It can come at any hour!

Not to all at the same time, but only to each in turn, will it come! For each individual in a new way. The way depends on his weaknesses.

If he then implores for strength in the *right* sense it will be given to him. The strength will also help him through, provided he acknowledges and earnestly seeks to overcome

*those faults which he carries within himself!*

Therefore let no one trouble about the other, for there is none so pure that he himself does not have to struggle!

---

## It is fulfilled!

**I**t is fulfilled! These momentous words of the Son of God were taken and interpreted by mankind as the end of the work of redemption, as the crowning act of a propitiatory sacrifice which God offered to earthmen for all their guilt.

Trembling with gratitude, faithful Christians are therefore stirred by the sound of these words and, with a deep sigh of relief, feel themselves comfortably protected through them.

However, this *feeling* has no genuine foundation, but only originates from an empty imagination. In every human soul there always lies more or less hidden this anxious question: How was such a great sacrifice on the part of God possible! Is humanity so precious to Him!

And this anxious question is justified, for it comes from the intuitive perception and is intended as a warning!

The spirit rebels and wishes to speak through the intuitive perception. Therefore this warning can never be silenced with empty words which hint that God Himself is *Love* and that Divine Love remains incomprehensible to mankind.

One seeks to use such words to fill the gaps that arise wherever true knowledge is lacking and where it is necessary to suppress knowledge, or even thinking, in order to prevent the faltering and collapse of the arduous yet very faulty structure of former and present interpretations of the Word of God.

But the time is now past for empty phrases. The spirit must now awaken! It *must*, for it has no other choice if it does not want to be annihilated. The Light commands it, God wills it!

He who is satisfied with shallow excuses in matters concerning men's salvation proves himself spiritually indolent in the most important questions of this Creation, and thus

indifferent and lazy about the Laws of God which rest in this Creation. Therefore he will be cast away like a rotten fruit in the Judgment!

*It is fulfilled!* That was the last sigh of Jesus as He ended His earth-life and thereby His sufferings through mankind!

Not *for* mankind, as they in their irresponsible conceit try to deceive themselves, but *through* mankind! It was the cry of relief that now the suffering was coming to an end, and thus the special confirmation of the hardships He had already suffered.

In uttering it He did not wish to make an accusation for, being the personification of Love, He would never do so. Yet in spite of this the Laws of God work on everywhere, and thus also here, unswervingly and inevitably. And just here with double severity, for this great *suffering without hatred* falls back tenfold upon the originators of the suffering in accordance with the law!

Man must not forget that God is also *Justice* Himself in Inviolable Perfection! He who doubts this commits an outrage against God, and mocks at Perfection!

God is the Living and Inflexible Law from Eternity to Eternity!

How then can any person dare to doubt this by supposing that God is able to accept an atonement through someone who did not himself also place the guilt in Creation, who is not himself the author of it!

Such a thing is not even possible *on earth*, and how much less then in the Divine Realm! Who among you, you men, would believe it likely that an earthly judge would be capable quite deliberately of allowing a person utterly innocent of the crime to be executed in place of a murderer, and that instead he would then allow the actual murderer to go free without punishment! Not one of you would consider such an absurdity to be right! However, you allow men to tell you such things about God without even inwardly resisting it!

You even accept it thankfully and always endeavour to suppress as wrong the voice stirring within you which tries to induce you to reflect upon it!

I say unto you, the effect of the Living Law of God pays no heed to the wrong opinions which you seek to cultivate in these matters against your personal conviction, but it now falls upon you severely, simultaneously bringing about the reactions to the culpable neglect of such wrong thinking! Wake up, so that it is not too late for you! Tear yourselves loose from opinions which lull you to sleep, and which can never be brought into harmony with Divine Justice! Otherwise it may well happen that such indolent drowsiness turns into a death-like sleep for you, with spiritual death as the inevitable consequence!

Hitherto you believed that the Divine should allow Itself to be scorned and persecuted without exacting punishment, while you earthmen wish to claim true justice for yourselves! To your mind the Greatness of God shall consist in His being allowed to suffer for you, and in offering you good for the evil which you do unto Him! That is what you call Divine, because only a god in accordance with your conceptions can accomplish this.

In so doing you are declaring that man is much more just than God! You only wish to recognize in God all that is improbable, but even then only when it serves you for the best! Never otherwise! For when it threatens to turn against you, you immediately cry out for the just God!

You must yourselves recognize the childishness of such one-sided opinions! You would surely blush if just for once you attempted to think about it in the right way!

According to your way of thinking God in His indulgence would cultivate and strengthen that which is mean and ignoble! You fools, accept the truth:

God manifests towards all creatures in this Creation, thus also towards you, only through His adamant Laws, which are firmly anchored therein from the beginning! They are inflexible and inviolable, and their activity takes effect at all times with infallible certainty. This activity proceeds

---

irresistibly, crushing all that tries to stand in its way instead of *adapting* itself in *full knowledge* to their swinging.

Knowledge, however, is humbleness! For he who has true knowledge can never be other than humble. They are as if inseparable. True knowledge simultaneously brings humility into being as a matter of course. Where there is no humility there is also never true knowledge! *Humility, however, is freedom!* Genuine freedom for each human spirit lies solely in humility!

Take this also for your guidance for the difficult time! And never again forget that the *Love* of God is inseparable from the *Justice!*

As God is Love, so also is He Living Justice! Indeed He *is* the Law! Absorb this fact at last and use it as a basis for your thinking for all time! You will then never miss the right path to the conviction of the Greatness of God, and you will *recognize* it in your surroundings as well as through the observation of every-day life. Therefore be spiritually alert!

---

## Let Easter arise within you, man!

**A** call surges through the Universe! The great awakening begins, and is followed by the thundering chimes of this cosmic clock, announcing to you the hour of twelve, and therewith the termination of the present era and everything that has happened in it. —

The Day of Reckoning! The concept, which has taken on form, rushes along in the wake of this first clarion call on paths of the now greatly intensified reciprocal actions, confronting every creature with undreamt-of swiftness, coldly impartial, relentless; for behind and within it, is the Living Law, offering *those fruits* whose seed came into being in the life of every individual.

Thus, each human being is already embraced by tentacles as yet invisible to him, so that he can move neither forward nor backward, and must accept helplessly what his volition and actions have produced for him in the great hothouse of Creation!

Take the reward, oh man, that you deserve!

There are only a few *good* fruits ripening for you; because you have neglected and violated the sanctuary given to you by the inconceivable Grace of God, as a strong staff on your wanderings, which He once granted in fulfillment of your fervent prayers! This was the knowledge that lies in the perceiving of His Supreme Will, which alone grants continuance to Creation, because Creation, like you, arose from it!

This Will is for your welfare, for your joy, your happiness; for nothing else lies in the Will of Him Who has lovingly granted you the consciousness of existence. It was only necessary for you to keep to the paths which the Law of the Will in Creation

had already smoothed as a gift for you; to be led by them to all the blessings that are inherent in the consciousness of being!

But by your frivolous behavior, you have breached the protecting walls that came into existence along with you through the Law; you have destroyed them with your stubbornness and conceit, and have even wantonly placed your petty volition above the Law that lies in the Will of God. Therefore, instead of now protecting and uplifting you, it must destroy everything within you that has forsaken the path willed by God!

There are only a few among mankind who have not abandoned these paths!

Yet, among all those who have gone astray, many are simply the *victims* of those who have broken through the protective walls. In their human trustfulness, they allowed themselves to be diverted from the way that leads to the Luminous Heights, and now they no longer know how to return, but are lost in the tangled undergrowth of human opinions, going back and forth in their search without ever finding the right path out.

Therefore, *you* must now go forth, you to whom I have already given the way in the Word! Go forth, explain and interpret my Word to all who are earnestly seeking in the Light of Truth: the rays of my Word will accompany you; because the time for this has come!

The dawn begins to glow for the promised Realm of a Thousand Years! It shall now shine for *all* peoples, through those richly endowed ones who bear the Cross of Truth as the sign of their conviction!

The time is not far off when men will anxiously ask about the Cross, in the hope that through you they may now find *that* which carries true help within and pulls them out of their crushing despair, raising them from the ruins of the proud hopes that they placed in earthmen and in their abilities!

When all the props among the peoples now suddenly collapse, when belief in the power of money disappears, and likewise faith in the knowledge of the intellect, and above all, when the

last shadowy semblance of human dignity fades away, then ... then *your* time will have come, you bearers of the Holy Cross! Then, you will and *must* proclaim the Truth which you have received; for men will expect It from you, will ask for It, indeed will demand It, if you should hesitate!

Therefore, be now prepared! The time will bring mankind near to you! It will come about for you as though of itself, through high spiritual guidance. If you do not shun the stream, you will *fulfill* your duty! It will come towards you. Be courageous, proud and free! You are not to court the favor of men with begging, but only to *grant* where it is asked of you!

Victory will be yours at every step; for with you is *the* help of the *highest power*. Nothing on earth can compare to it!

*You* are the victors; for *God wills* it so! —

It shall now become Easter for the human spirits *here on earth!* Therefore you must be at your post!

Soon people will approach you. They all want to see faultless earthmen in you! They wish it, friends as well as foes! The keenest opponents of the Holy Word will nevertheless expect much from you, more than has ever been expected of men before. *This is a living Law!*

I wish to give you rules for this, which you must follow if your life is now to become a blessing, as it is ordained in the Will of God. *Keep* these rules; for they are commandments for you! Strict obedience will bring you joy and victory, and it will be for the salvation of men! Later they will look to you with gratitude. You shall become *living* examples for the ascent out of this confusion!

For this, I first give you the command to re-awaken within yourselves the sense of beauty, which is inherent in you from the beginning, and which you have wantonly buried! It will be an invaluable aid to you in your spiritual liberation, and for your ascent itself! Do not regard this lightly! There is more value in it than you imagine! Obey it, and you will soon realize, through your experiencing, how it advances *each one* in the stages of his life! Until then try to be obedient to me so that

you will partake in the benefit which you so urgently need!

Otherwise you cannot become victors, nor examples for this earth in your entire way of being. *In the first place* you must *live* in an absolutely exemplary manner *in the earthly sense*, if you wish to fulfill the task which you have received, and which you have undertaken with a free volition, when you asked for the Cross!

To lead an exemplary life *on earth* however, means to be natural! In the way Creation shows to you, so that you fit into it and do not merely sojourn there as caricatures, the way you are today. To guide you in leading a God-willed life here on earth, you have been endowed with the *sense of beauty*, which comes from the purest intuition. This intuition holds within it the memory of the Luminous Heights, where beauty is the natural thing! For Light and beauty simply cannot be separated. They are one! If you now wish to carry Light onto this earth, then you must also bring beauty. Beauty in all that you do!

But what you have hitherto considered beautiful, have been for the most part, the products of the intellect, cunningly thought out and formed by men, who relied only upon your weaknesses, and wished to stimulate them in order to gain earthly advantages, either money or sympathy, for themselves. Everything was based on calculation. There was no trace of pure beauty, only stimulation of the senses in some way or other!

Every *stimulation* is an inducement willed by the *intellect*, which can never be uplifting! It is an enticement for some purpose, be it only for the purchase of some material or clothing.

You have already become accustomed to adapting yourselves to foreign ideas in these matters; you accept them and thus become the victims of foreign calculations which confuse and degrade you more and more; for through this, you have voluntarily surrendered *a part of your freedom*, and, with the freedom, your *own* right to the sense of beauty. You imagine

that you still possess the freedom to decide when selecting a purchase. But in this you are restricted to a certain number of varieties which others have created as “fashion”, again only for a limited time!

Thus you have renounced rights, which should have afforded you great support, and have left behind on your journeying *that* staff which was to have been a strong mainstay for you and a protection against all that was false, whereby you would immediately have had to recognize the caricatures that are so enticingly set before you, but which have nothing to do with true beauty.

And one step leads to another. The second one soon diverted you from naturalness in your movements! They became awkward and artificial, thereby losing more and more of their beauty and strength.

Indeed you try to adapt yourselves to your clothes, instead of fashioning the clothes to yourselves. Look at your posture! Consider your walk, the movements of your hands! Even here *the intellect* dominates; for everything is artificial, one-sided. It is quite evident that the attention is always purposely directed to *one* point! *This* immediately reveals the activity and domination of the intellect!

It is always able to focus attention only on *one* part of the body. Therefore, in any activity of the earthly intellect, there is always *one* point which achieves special prominence, depending on the part on which the intellect concentrates at the time. So also with the movements of the body. But what is one-sided *disturbs the harmony of the whole!* And thus the beauty!

Just let your intuition come once more to full value, and you will perceive how the body then forms a complete whole in its movements. Everything then helps *simultaneously* to perform this or that action, which naturally brings about harmony of movement. As in a graceful play, the *entire body* then carries out everything willed by the intuition. It is much freer, more natural and less constrained. Always remember: the intellect

always *forces* towards one definite part only, which immediately destroys the sense of proportion and harmony. It is a restraint which man places upon himself, but no proud and free action.

Therefore, first of all, let the intuition for the beauty of naturalness re-awaken within you! This is the law for you from now on! For it is a great help in keeping to a straight path in Creation; a help which will never fail you, nor lead you into any doubt. But how greatly have you already sinned in this! Men behaved like fools in the eyes of anyone who has still preserved the healthy sense of beauty for himself, or who has regained it!

A few years hence, you will still shudder at the thought of how it was today and in past centuries.

How pitiful you appear when seen from the Light, with which you should have remained closely linked! You have no idea how much your failure, particularly in this matter has degraded you before all creatures. And among the creatures, man was the *only one* to trample underfoot the great support, and so make himself ridiculous. Just he who with his talents should and could have become a crown of Subsequent Creation!

It is now time to lay aside these faults!

Stand like a rock in the surging sea! You have nothing to fear if you follow the Law of Beauty! And everyone can easily observe it, if only he takes the trouble to listen to himself.

For this reason, you shall always be *dressed* accordingly. Do not let yourselves be guided by fashion which seeks to put a quite definite stamp of uniformity upon all human beings, especially on women, who are more sensitive to it! With regard both to color and to style!

That is certainly false! Where then does the vitality remain which should exist in Creation! Let your *personal* taste make itself felt at last! Force it through, each one for himself! Soon you will thereby have shattered all that is stereotyped around you, because your re-emerging individuality carries with it the Power and the Law of Creation!

Men should not appear outwardly as mere empty forms

either; they should not be so uniformly dressed, but should give expression and life to their own individuality, corresponding entirely to their own nature! Also to their figure and general appearance! It is just therein that imitation must end. It brings standstill, retrogression and finally the paralyzing indolence of your spirit! No wonder then, that much truly artistic talent was bound to be stifled therein. —

Your forms are at one with your inner being; for the outer forms shaped themselves according to your inner being; they must be the expression of your inner being! For this reason let *your personal taste* alone now be the deciding factor for yourselves at all times, and not fashion! Then your appearance, in color and style of dress, will also adapt itself to the nature of your spirit, whereby you will *at last*, have the effect of a *complete* being, and bring animation to your environment, each for himself.

Moreover, it is necessary for everyone to develop further in the mode of expressing the language, and even in speaking as such.

There is no excuse for a *human being*, who, as the highest creature in this Subsequent Creation, is also its crown, if he lets himself go, is careless in one way or another, and does not use his whole strength to unfold, to the highest beauty, all that was once given to him in trust!

The poorest of the poor has the duty and also the possibility to control himself in his behavior, his manner of expression and his speech! It requires only a serious volition and a little effort, nothing more!

It is contempt for the gifts of God, when a man behaves in an uncouth and ill-bred manner, thereby offending against every sense of beauty. In future, such a man shall also be despised through the reciprocal effect and cast out from human society, because he does not show himself as a human being, as the crown of this Creation.

To develop beauty in *all* things, even in the smallest detail, is to honor God, and a prayer of thanksgiving through the deed!

Obeys this commandment. You will see that everything will change for the best in the lives of individuals, in family and nation!

Much more lies in this than you may think today, and it guarantees peace, harmony and happiness!

You are to *ennoble* yourselves, not merely to change by imitating others. What lies *within you* should come to the most beautiful blossom! Otherwise you will not remain yourselves. Within every man lies another great treasure which should now also find expression outwardly in color and in form, as with the flowers.

Whoever submits to fashion plainly indicates his spiritual indolence in accepting an alien volition, merely to avoid having to listen to his inner voice, and to take from it what is appropriate for *him*.

And behind all that is classed with fashions and similar customs, there lurks nothing other than the greed for wealth of those who exploit the vanity and spiritual indolence of their fellow-men, in order further to increase their acquisition of earthly goods.

Take the trouble to think seriously about this! Everyone shall become an artist in his own taste, which *is only for him personally!* Not for others. In this way you will begin to re-awaken the true sense of beauty, so that it may rise anew and become a strong support in your wanderings through the realms of this Creation. You will need this help on each plane, in order to adapt yourselves to it and develop thereby. Not one plane is like another. Yet each is beautiful in its own way! —

As with the planes of Creation as a whole, so shall it also be with each individual human being! Not one is quite like another! Why then should you wish to conceal this outwardly, through imitation? Just for once, become what you *really* are, but *completely* so! Always seek to ennoble all that *already exists*. Only the sense of beauty can be the support for you in this! It is of much greater value than you think! It makes you independent and free! Like-minded persons will then

automatically be drawn to each other. For this too the sense of beauty indicates and eases the path, if you follow its call! *Again, in this respect, the woman should also take the lead! —*

In addition, I want to give you a second piece of advice for the future: whenever you are asked about the merits and demerits of different movements or societies, never enter into it, even if you recognize shortcomings! You yourselves have the Living Word! Comparisons between It and any other movements are not to be made, because there simply cannot be any comparison. The Word of the Message *is!* Whoever is unable to absorb It as It emanates from me, should leave It alone; because It is not for such a person! It is not you who should ask mankind to listen to It, but mankind themselves must in all sincerity ask that they may be allowed to receive It. *So it is willed by the Law!*

Be stern and severe! To be unnecessarily accommodating is to degrade the Word! Be proud and true in everything you say. There is no need for you to attack other movements and their leaders! Whoever does so, seeks to exalt himself through besmirching others; seeks *thereby* to draw attention *to himself*, because he has nothing else to give! He however, who has the Truth, goes calmly on his way! He leaves the others completely unmolested.

Agitators have always gained adherents more easily and quickly. However, these are not genuine; they are not pure enough for Luminous Truth. They are of the same kind as find pleasure in agitation! It is not a stock which is founded on conviction. He who talks much about others has little to say *himself!* Remember this and act strictly in accordance with it.

Go forth and *live* as witnesses for the Word! Mankind wants to measure the value of the Word by you! Remember this in everything you say and do! Woe to you, if these earthmen must become confused through you, because you show yourselves to be different from what is contained in the Word of Truth!

Then mankind itself will judge you! By mankind's conduct you will recognize *yourselves!*

Mankind wishes to see *examples* in you! *You are keenly watched!* Remember these my words! Even those who are unable to recognize the Message, even its foes will observe you in order to discover faults in you! And woe unto you, if they still find faults! What all mankind would understand and readily forgive in any one else, *they will forgive you nothing*, if they find even one fault!

In their expectations, men will unconsciously make quite undreamt-of demands upon Cross-bearers! They will castigate you with a relentlessness hitherto unknown, if you cannot fully live up to these expectations!

This will surprise you, but therein lies the effect of a law which you cannot escape.

Such striking behavior however should make you recognize that even the enemies and the scoffers, without realizing it, have a boundless respect for the Cross and its bearer! Without intending it, they *must* and will acknowledge it in such a way. That is only natural for everything that is luminous.

You yourselves will yet mature through it in those respects where it is necessary. Men will force you to do so! Quite unconsciously, they expect something special from you! Wherever that is expected, one looks also for a definite value; for without the recognition of some value, nothing is ever expected! What man does not take seriously he will neither attack nor heed.

The whole of mankind, however, senses the high value of the knowledge which you are permitted to bear within yourselves! And that is what will make them observe you keenly, friends as well as foes! Not one will leave you unnoticed, when the time has come. And it is beginning now, in its automatic working, it has already set in. — —

Through your *being*, you must now acknowledge before men, *how* you stand towards the Light, whether genuine or false. And men will feel urged to draw near to you, so that you *must* prove yourselves. Thus it is willed by the Light! You *must* do so and cannot hide from it.

Now show it with joyful courage, and victory will blossom for you on all paths! *That* is the battle you must win, which however will only steel and strengthen you, instead of exhausting you, which will bring you joy, instead of pain.

You need do nothing more, than simply *to be*. To be *examples* in working and in living for the Light! Let Easter now arise for mankind, here on earth! Let the glowing dawn at last be recognized, through you!

---

## At the boundary of gross matter.

Millions of earthmen call themselves seekers, but they are not so! There is a great difference between humble seeking and self-complacent and vainglorious investigating! Such earthmen are not seekers, but merely surface-scraping researchers; because, today, no one has sufficient *humility* for earnest seeking.

But in spite of this they call themselves seekers after the truth, and even imagine that they have already become “knowing” as a result of their investigations. In the best of cases, when they want to show humility to their fellow-men they claim to have partial knowledge at least; toward their fellow seekers, however, they definitely claim superior knowledge.

Such conceit could easily be classed as ridiculously grotesque but for the fact that it so often contains dangers, was indeed always dangerous. They are dangerous to their environment in an earthly sense; spiritually they are dangerous to these conceited ones themselves. Yet it cannot be otherwise as long as the intellect is held in the highest regard. For investigating and prospecting is the work of the intellect *only*. But what can this intellect, which comes from the gross material brains and which is therefore also subject to the gross material Primordial Laws of Creation, investigate of the *spiritual*, to the nature of which it is in no wise related. *Everything immediately collapses on account of this one quite natural fact!*

For this reason, all earthly humans who call themselves seekers for the Truth or for God show a total lack of capacity for any kind of spiritual seeking even in the very nature of all their activity. Indeed, the use of the term “seeking” is evidence of self-deception. Always, true seeking can only remain a

*finding*; put more correctly, it can only be a matter of receiving; receiving from the Wisdom of God which He laid into Creation. It remains a matter of “finding” the law which formed Creation and which keeps it in motion, thereby assuring its continued existence, supporting it and moving it toward perpetual development.

However, such a “finding of the law” cannot be achieved by man’s way of searching! He will quickly become stuck; for the beginning of the fine-material plane will stop him in every case. In his desire to investigate man is unable to continue even beyond the furthest point of fine gross matter.

For the human intellect ethereal matter is and will remain an alien species with which it can make no connection. But without such connection there can never be any understanding, not even seeing or hearing, much less any investigating, scrutinising or classifying into gross material conceptions, which the intellect cannot do without, proving that it is subject to gross material laws to which it remains firmly linked. Thus every “seeker” or “*spiritual investigator*” has hitherto always remained closely tied to the World of Gross Matter, and he could never get beyond its finest boundaries, not even through really high accomplishments. The Primordial Law of Creation holds him adamantly back. There is no possibility whatever for him to go any further.

That is why many so-called boards of examiners who condescended or felt themselves called to “investigate” the authenticity of mediumistic qualities and their results, in order to pronounce an opinion with which mankind is supposed to conform, were often bound to fail miserably.

The miserable failure was always on the side of these *examiners*, even if they wish to make it appear the other way round, and probably also believe in their judgment. The inference to be drawn from the immutable Laws of Creation, however, proves it to be otherwise and speaks *against* them. And every other form of argument opposes the irrevocable nature of the Divine Laws, and is thus the wrong and

erroneous work of men, the motive of which is base vanity and self-complacency of the narrowest kind.

For the same reason the earthly law courts are also hostile towards all ethereal happenings, because they are simply incapable of delving into things which are so utterly remote from their understanding.

That, however, is their own fault, a consequence of the limited conditions which they created for themselves through the indolence of their spirit, which they permit to sleep on quietly, while they mistake the earthly *intellect* originating in the World of Gross Matter for the *spirit* and value it accordingly. It is by no means always the fault of those who are summoned to appear before them. But despite this the courts have never shrunk from judging about things which they do not understand in a manner contrary to the Laws of God. What is more, on account of their lack of understanding they very often tried to impute the intention of wilful deception and even of fraud to these actual ethereal happenings and to the spiritual ones as well! It is the same procedure as was once applied by the churches and worldly judges in the trials for witchcraft, nothing less! It is just as repugnant and narrow, and as much a violation now as it was then of all the Primordial Laws of Creation.

Such exceptions as where actual impostors wish to benefit personally from something are to be found in *all* fields of activity of these earthmen, but that provides no justification for always treating the entire field with distrust from the very outset. Such things occur in every trade, in every kind of scientific pursuit, and in every branch of the various professions. But ultimately these deceivers can always be recognized without any difficulty, for an evil volition cannot be permanently hidden.

Therefore this singular enmity on the part of the earthly courts, as well as by all intellectuals, must appear all the more striking to the calm observer!

On closer consideration it can easily be found that the motive

behind this complete antagonism and the desire to suppress originates in nothing but the pressure of utter helplessness in these matters.

Today, indeed, no man has any idea of the greatness, the purity, and yet the overwhelming simplicity and really quite easily understandable nature of the basic Laws in Creation, to which churches and mundane laws *must* adapt themselves if they wish to be right and just, and consequently pleasing to God! They can and may not do otherwise without causing harm both to themselves and to their fellow-men.

There is in fact for all creatures nothing other than these irrevocable Laws of God in Creation, from which they issued and to which they must also adapt themselves if they do not wish to be detrimental to Creation. Being a creature, man must also at last condescend to adjust himself accordingly, if he does not wish to perish through his carelessness, his presumption and, closely connected with these, his intellectual sophistry. For the intellect plays but a small part in the greatness of Creation and serves purely to make movement possible in the coarsest material. What is beyond its boundaries the intellect can never grasp, and it is thus unable to work therein, much less pass judgment upon it.

The entire knowledge which mankind on earth possess today, the knowledge of which they are so proud, moves *only* within the Realm of the Gross Material and goes no further! This proves how narrow and limited such knowledge is; for gross matter is the *lowest* of all the rings in Creation, the densest and the heaviest, and consequently also the most narrow and limited in its conceptions in this Subsequent Creation!

Your thoughts, too, are only of gross material nature, being the products of your brain! They belong to fine gross matter, which consequently also embraces all the thought-forms that can so often be seen by mediums. They imagine, however, that these lie in the Ethereal Realm or even in the Spiritual Realm. In one of my earlier lectures I have already mentioned

thought-forms, and I also spoke about the centres formed by these, but not about the regions or the kinds to which they belong. Thoughts as well as thought-forms are still of a *gross material nature* even though they are part of *fine* gross matter. They are not *ethereal*. That which is ethereal has nothing to do with fine gross matter.

It is of an entirely different species, and the two cannot blend but must always stand side by side, because a different species is also subject to different law *forms*. It is true that the Laws of God are uniform in each species of Creation; they penetrate the entire Creation; but despite their individual uniformity the laws manifest in each species of Creation in a different form corresponding to that particular species. Therefore a person will never be able to examine or judge things of ethereal substance by means of his gross material implements, to which the brain with its intellect belongs; and just as little can he do so with things taking place in the Spiritual Realm as long as he lacks the connection thereto, which can only be attained through radiations.

The path of radiation out of gross material substance, however, is still closed to all those who have unconditionally submitted to the domination of the intellect, which is firmly bound to the World of Gross Matter and its conceptions. It is utterly impossible for these downright slaves of the intellect to send out radiations to other regions, because they themselves closed the borders and allowed everything that is necessary for sending out to perish within themselves.

Men are now only creeping along the ground, for their power to swing upward to the Heights fell away from them long ago, when they ceased to apply it or make use of it after giving their intellect the highest place, which bound them to the earth. You thus had to become subject to the Law of Adaptation, which works automatically in the World of Matter. It is the same with you as with the animals whose wings, when never used, first gradually deteriorate and then cease to develop altogether; or with fish which, in the course of time, lose the

air-bladder they use to raise and support them in the water, if they continually stay only at the bottom because of currents which are too strong for them.

Naturally this does not take effect quickly from one day to another, but only in the course of centuries and even thousands of years. But it does come about. And it *has* already taken effect with the human spirit!

Everything you do not use zealously in the right way must gradually become stunted and lost to you! Automatic adjustment is nothing but the consequence of the Law of *Movement* in Creation. This is only *one* of its many-sided effects. That which does not move in the right manner, and naturally also that which is not always *kept* in the necessary movement, *must* degenerate and be finally discarded altogether, also from every gross material form; for each form is shaped only in accordance with the kind of movement.

Do not protest that this is contradicted by knowledge of the sentence that the *spirit* forms the body! That only confirms it, and shows the immutability of this law; for every spiritual volition *is* movement, which in its continuing activity produces further movements.

Go out and seek in Nature. Observe Creation itself. You will find fish which cannot swim, because they had difficulty in holding themselves in turbulent waters and thus preferred to remain on the bottom. Their air-bladder degenerated and in the course of time they lost it entirely. There are also birds which cannot fly. Think of the penguins and ostriches and many others. Only *that* part and *that* ability is developed and maintained which is *used*, thus participating in the Law of necessary Movement.

You, however, have spent thousands of years for the purpose of clinging almost convulsively to the lowest and most narrowly limited Realm of Gross Matter, because it meant everything to you; you dug yourselves into it and now you are *no longer able* to look upwards! You have lost the ability to do so, you yourselves have broken the habit through the indolence

of your spirit, which no longer wishes to move upwards and which with many today is no longer *able* to move!

Therefore it now becomes hard for you to grasp the *Word* from the Highest Heights, and it will be utterly impossible for many. He who wants to measure it with his *intellect* alone will never recognize its true value; for he will then have to drag the Word of God down to the low gross material comprehension. He who can do nothing but think within narrow limits will also belittle the Word in his own understanding, and thus not recognize it and will lightly put it aside, because he does not see *what* it really contains; he is *unable* to see it!

However, in his smallness he will be glad to talk about it and criticise it, perhaps even wish to bring it into contempt; for such people do precisely *that* which *proves* the narrow limitations of their pseudo-knowledge, which clearly points to their inability to dig deeper. You can daily experience the same everywhere, that it is just the really stupid persons who consider themselves especially clever and try to discuss everything, when the intelligent man keeps silent. Stupidity is always obtrusive.

Just observe all those who like to make themselves conspicuous with their talk about ethereal or even spiritual happenings. You will soon recognize that they really know nothing at all about it. Particularly those who often speak about karma! Just let such people give you an explanation of karma. You will shudder as you listen to their confused and muddled words.

And as for the person who does not talk, but modestly asks about it, you should first observe him more closely before you answer. Most of the inquirers only wish to find in karma an excuse for themselves and their weaknesses. *It is this* which they long for so eagerly, that through their belief in karma they may quietly continue with their weaknesses, sometimes even ill-breeding or impudence, with the self-excuse when they consequently meet with unpleasantness that it is their karma. With hypocritical mien they love to sigh: "It is my karma

which I have to redeem!" They leave it at this sighing and become tyrants in their environment, destroying all harmony even if they could change and avoid many a thing by a little self-education and by showing a little consideration for their fellow-men!

They do not think of this and do not *want* to think of it, that they only burden themselves thereby with a karma which throws them back for centuries!

Prattle, nothing but empty prattle, is all such, emanating from vanity and the lack of genuine fresh volition! It is a pity for every single minute that a person sacrifices for such spiritually indolent ones. Let them carry on and take this to heart: A person with real knowledge will never indulge in idle talk!

He does *not* take his knowledge to be the *subject for conversation*, nor does he offer it for that purpose! He will answer a serious question only, and even then will hesitate until he knows the inquirer is driven by a really honest volition.

Men's talk in these matters is for the greater part but empty sound: for the comprehension of all earthmen has been unable to step beyond the boundary of gross material substance, due to the mistakes they made in Creation, which hold them down through the indolence of their spirit. They confuse the spirit with their earthly intellect, and thus create for themselves this low boundary.

In future, you earthmen of the present time, refrain from forming opinions about things which you cannot understand! *Too* heavy is the guilt with which you burden yourselves thereby. It is no less heavy than that which people in their stupid delusion once imposed upon themselves by plunging countless thousands into suffering and misery, even taking the earth-life of many through death by fire after days of torture. By the Law of the Lord it is the same whether you today accuse such persons of fraud or of practising gross deception only!

Exert yourselves at last to fulfill *your* duties towards your God and to *recognize the Laws of God* before wishing to judge! You have no right to expect forgiveness. You yourselves have forfeited the claim to that through your own law, that ignorance can protect no one from punishment! An eye for an eye and a tooth for a tooth, *that* is how it shall now happen to *those* who do not wish it otherwise, and who do not obey the Law of the Lord! Consider, men, that you are standing in the Judgment!

---

## Earthman before his God.

**M**en, what has been your attitude towards your God up till now! Hypocritically you have sought to deceive Him, even as you have always wished to deceive yourselves with the false piety which was only lip-service, but never shared by your spirit. *You* have established rules and observances, in your temples, your churches, without asking whether this way was pleasing to *God*. If only they pleased *you*, then that settled the service to God for you!

Do you not see how arrogant all this was. *You* wanted to decide the way everything should be arranged. In doing so *you* have never cared about *God's* Will. What you termed great was to be equally acceptable to God. You wanted to force *your* opinions in all things upon God as justified, irrespective of what you were dealing with.

What *you* considered right was to be rewarded by God as righteous; what *you* chose to call wrong, God was to punish.

You have never seriously wanted to find out what *God* regards as right, and what before *His* Eye is wrong. You have paid no attention to the Divine Laws, nor to the inexorable Holy Will of God, Which has existed from all Eternity and has never yet changed, nor ever will change!

It will now shatter you, and with you all the false works of man, which have created laws to serve *your earthly desires*. But you human beings yourselves stand before God as scheming, neglectful servants who in their selfishness, self-conceit and ridiculous claim to know everything have never respected *His* Will.

You have been and still are servants who thought themselves masters, and who out of arrogance and spiritual indolence have tried to resist and drag down all that they could not

understand, if it did not agree with the attainment of the base earthly ends which they wished to be regarded as of the highest order.

You miserable ones, who could so transgress! Everything was only to serve *you, even the Laws!* Only what served you, regardless of its form, only what helped you towards the fulfillment of your earthly desires, only *that* did you acknowledge as right, only such things did you still want to know about.

But should it now be required of you that you yourselves should eagerly and loyally serve your Lord, to Whom you owe your existence, then you are quite astonished, since in your opinion it is only He Himself Who should serve you with His Power, with His Glory and His Great Love!

How could it possibly be *otherwise*, in view of the high opinion you have of yourselves! For you thought it was service enough to God if you acknowledge Him, and ask in thought for His help to fulfill all the wishes you carry within you. To put it plainly, that He should *serve you* with the Omnipotence that is His own, and make your life pleasant! Nothing else enters your mind.

At its best your service to God has been *begging!*

Just think it over very carefully for once; it has never yet been otherwise.

When you examine yourselves in this respect, are you not seized with both shame and anger about yourselves?

The majority of mankind think that the only object of this earth-life is the purpose of acquiring material gain! Also at best the purpose of a family and children! He who does not *think so* still *acts* accordingly! But on such a basis what is the use of propagation, as you call it, which in reality does not mean propagation at all, but simply provides opportunities for other human spirits to incarnate so that these may continue to improve themselves and cast off old faults. By your behaviour however, you add to the burden of your guilt; for you thereby prevent all those spirits from ascending, whom you bring up as

your children for the same empty purposes!

What is the good of building up an earthly kingdom if it is not intended for the honor of God, if it does not work according to the Wishes of God, about Which you are still completely ignorant, and have hitherto not wanted to learn anything either, since *your* wishes are more important to you than anything else. You only want to *satisfy yourselves*, and then even expect God to bless your poor efforts! You do not care to serve and to fulfill your duty towards your God.

The strange activities of mankind on earth, who in their folly even dare to drag the Name of God into everything that is false, thereby defiling what is most sacred, will now be shattered!

You will be thrust from the throne of your intellectual artifice so that at least some of you may still become able, in pure humility, to receive true Wisdom from Divine Heights, Which alone can make you human beings; for you would never mature for this of your own accord.

What does not suit you, you slander, and you are quick to pick up stones to do away with anything that is irksome enough to disturb you from the continued belief in yourselves.

You would rather hail Luciferian satellites who, in flattering your vanities and encouraging your self-conceit, then all the more surely cut you off from the Light and keep you in spiritual indolence, which must lead to the sleep of death for your true being!

But I say to you that you are now awakened from the intoxication, the oppressive delirium, that is already holding you in its iron grip. You must awaken *against* your will, be it only to recognize with the most terrible despair, even at the last moment, all you have freely abandoned with such wanton indifference, before you are thrust into the bottomless pit that seems so desirable to you!

This earth and the whole world is now being purified! No longer shall any of the filth remain; so that the creatures will be able peacefully and joyfully to serve their Lord, the

Almighty God, Who in His Love once granted them the conscious enjoyment of all the blessings of Creation.

He who again tries to bring disturbance into it by disregarding or even opposing the Laws of God in Creation will be mercilessly eliminated; for with such conduct he brings to you only envy, hate, suffering, disease and death!

All this tribulation can only still be avoided if you really seek to recognize and honor the *Word of the Most High!* To do so, however, It must first be understood in *Its true nature!* But hitherto you have always construed It only as It pleased *you!* And not as It was given by God for your help, your salvation, out of the greatest need!

However, you have not shrunk from making even the Holy Word the slave of your arrogance, so that through the distortion of Its true meaning It might serve only *you*; instead of *you* serving the Word for your own salvation in *that* sense in which It was given to you!

What have you made of the Word of God in your explanations, and even in the Scriptures! That you can quarrel about It, that you as human beings can come together and deliberate this way and that way over It, even this in itself is evidence of an unsound foundation and of a lack of clarity in what you have dared to set up as the pure, sublime Word of God! The Word of the Lord is inviolable, simple, clear and indestructibly hewn into Creation.

Where It is not obscured and distorted there can be no analysing, no deliberation! It is clear to *every* creature.

But for you, with your ridiculous conceit, the greatness of this simplicity was still too small! In the gloom of your mental workshop you have laboriously toiled away at the Word until you could distort and mould It *in such a way* that It pleased *you*, so that It conformed to your petty earthly desires, your weaknesses, and also to your great opinion of yourselves and your importance.

In this way you created something that had to serve you, that flattered your vanity.

For also that humility which you display when you speak of your great sins, for which a *God* brought the sacrifice of atonement, is nothing but the basest vanity. *A God for you!* How valuable you must imagine yourselves! And you need do nothing further about it than graciously condescend, after much persuasion, merely to ask for remission!

This train of thought must surely make even the most conceited feel somewhat uneasy in his hypocritical humility.

But this is only one thing among many. You have thus distorted *everything* that is intended to clarify your relation as a self-conscious creature towards the great Creator!

Nothing of it has remained pure and sublime under the conceit of this humanity on earth. Therefore the right attitude towards God has automatically changed and become false.

Presumptuously expecting a good reward or disdainfully begging, only *thus* have you stood before your Lord, if indeed you have ever taken the trouble and time really to think of Him, forced to do so by many a misfortune that had to strike you in the reciprocal effect of your actions!

But now you must at last awaken and must accept the Truth as It *really is*, not as *you* think It is! With this what is false collapses, and the gaps due to your hypocritical claim of knowing everything better become apparent. Nothing can hide in the Darkness any longer; for through the Will of God there will henceforth be Light, so that the Darkness will fall and perish!

Now there will be Light also on earth and in the whole great World of Matter! It blazes forth radiantly in every part, disintegrating and burning all evil as well as all evil volition! Everything false must show itself wherever it seeks to hide, must collapse of itself before the Ray of God's Light, which now illuminates the entire Creation! All that is not and does not wish to live in accordance with the Sublime Laws of God will sink down to the region of destruction, where it can never arise again! —

The all-holy Will of God alone will rule on this earth!

## The recognition of God.

**A**lthough I have already explained that a human being can never really *see* God, because his nature is in no way endowed with the capacity to do so, yet he does carry within himself the gift to *recognize* God in His works.

This, however, does not come to him overnight, nor does it fall to him in his sleep, but it requires earnest efforts, a great and strong volition, which must not lack in purity.

You human beings have had the unquenched longing for the recognition of God bestowed upon you. It is so implanted within you that you cannot find any peace during your wanderings through Subsequent Creation, which you are permitted to undertake for the purpose of your development, so that in becoming self-conscious you learn gratefully to enjoy the blessings which the worlds hold for you and offer to you.

If during these wanderings you were to find rest within yourselves, then this rest would ultimately bring about stagnation, which holds exhaustion and decay for your spirit, and finally inevitable disintegration, because it does not thereby obey the Primordial Law of necessary Movement. The working of the self-acting laws in Creation, however, is like a conveyor belt which pulls the human spirit along without interruption. But all those who do not know how to keep their balance, however, will slip and thus stumble and fall.

Keeping the balance in this case is equivalent to keeping the harmony in Creation undisturbed by observing the Primordial Laws of Creation. He who wavers and falls, he who cannot keep himself upright therein, will be *dragged* along, because the machinery does not halt for his sake even for a single second. This being dragged along, however, causes injury. And to be able to stand upright again demands increased exertion,

and still more effort is needed to find the necessary balance again. It is not so easy in an environment where there is continual movement. If he does not succeed in doing so man will be flung completely out of his course right into the middle of the machinery and be crushed.

Therefore be grateful, you men, that the longing for the recognition of God does not leave you in peace during your wanderings. In this way without realising it you escape all sorts of dangers in the machinery of the world. But you have not understood the longing which lies within you; this you have also distorted, making only a low kind of restlessness out of it!

This restlessness you again strive to calm or satisfy in the wrong way by some means or other. As you only use your intellect to do this you naturally reach out for earthly desires, hoping to satisfy this urge by accumulating earthly treasures, through the rush of work, by pleasurable diversions, in weakening comfort or, at its best, perhaps through a pure kind of earthly love for a woman.

All this, however, brings you no benefit, nor does it help you onwards. It may perhaps for a short period deaden the longing which you have perverted into disquietude, yet this distorted longing cannot be obliterated forever, only repressed here and there. This unrecognized longing spurs on the human soul ever again, and unless earthman finally tries to grasp its meaning, it drives him through many earth-lives without achieving that maturity which will enable him to ascend, as is willed, to the lighter, more luminous and more beautiful fields of this Subsequent Creation.

The fault lies with man himself. He pays far too little attention, or even none whatever, to all the help given to him, suffering under the delusion of his desire to be sufficient unto himself. This arose through the snares of the intellect, with which he bound the wings of his spirit.

Now at last he has come to the *end* of his strength! He is exhausted through being driven by powers he has not yet recognized, the help of which he has stubbornly opposed in his

obstinate attitude of childishly thinking he knew and could do everything better himself, which manifests itself as a result of the enforced and self-inflicted crippling of his brain.

And yet it would have been so easy for every man, had he but simply and modestly permitted all those gifts to mature within himself, which the Creator bestowed upon him for his wandering through all the planes of Subsequent Creation, gifts which are absolutely necessary for the development of the human spirit. He would have become great thereby, much greater and much wiser than he ever dreamed of being. But without humbleness and modesty these gifts can never blossom into abilities!

It is a childish plaything, this knowledge of which you are so inordinately proud! A speck of dust compared with what you could know, and above all with what you could *achieve* and what already today you *should* achieve! What do you earthmen know of this wonderful Creation, which manifests inviolably everywhere in its respective species and beauty, but above all in its laws! It is with dull indifference that you stand before all this greatness. Now at last, men, seek *the recognition of your God* in Creation, of which you are the smallest part of that species which is allowed to develop to self-consciousness through the Grace of the Creator, in fulfillment of the longing that lies within it!

Do not merely seek to satisfy your vanity in this matter, as you have hitherto done through being the slave of your intellect! You have come to an end of this! You and your imagined abilities are about to collapse. And you are very far from real ability.

The results of your actions will now prove what little bunglers you have been. In obedience to the Divine Laws in Creation these results will now return like heavy waves to their originators, either greatly uplifting them or burying them beneath with all their works. It will then become quite definitely evident as to what was right and what was wrong. That which in recent times you could have already seen clearly

enough if you had only *wished* to do so, the failure everywhere of all efforts to avert the decline which has already set in, should have been a warning to you to turn back while there was yet time! And at last to think about examining *yourselves*.

But men neither hear nor see; despair drives them ever more frantically to the belief that help can come through their own abilities.

But I say unto you: He who does not stand and work in the Laws of God will no longer receive help from the Light now! The condition is now the knowledge of God's Laws in Creation! And without help from the Light the *real* upbuilding is utterly impossible *today*!

The belief of a man in his own mission and the belief of those who follow him are of no avail to any human being. Everything will break down with him at that point where the effect of the Divine Laws in Creation touches him.

And *every* person is now confronted with these effects in accordance with the Holy Law of God! Therein lies the Judgment which all the believers dread!

The believers! All you who count yourselves among the believers in God, just examine yourselves to ascertain whether the belief you carry within yourselves is really the *right one*! By that I do not mean *the form* your belief takes, whether Catholic or Protestant, Buddhist or Mohammedan, or any other form, but *I mean the nature* of your belief, to what extent it is *living*!

For God is God! And *how* you approach Him *in your inmost self*, *that* alone is decisive for the strength and genuineness of your belief!

Examine yourselves carefully *as to that* for once. I will show you how you can find the way in order to obtain support for this.

Just go with me in spirit to Africa to any Negro tribe. Think of such people's power of comprehension. Make an effort clearly to envisage their inner life and way of thinking.

These people believed in demons and all sorts of things. They possessed idols of roughly carved wood, and then Christian

missionaries visited them. They told and taught them about that great invisible God of their religion.

Picture this to yourselves, and then ask what, after being baptised, the intuitive perceptions of these natural men will be like when they pray to the Christian God Who is so new to them. Not much different to when they formerly prayed to their idols of carved wood! Most of them simply replace their former idols with the new God. That is the only difference! In doing so they have not changed their intuitive perceptions, but in the most favourable instances they adhere solely to the *doctrine*. Real *experiencing*, however, is lacking. With these ignorant men it cannot possibly be otherwise.

Accepting the doctrine itself does not make them *knowing*; for their acceptance of the belief rests solely upon a pretended knowledge of what others passed on to them. The profitable inner experiencing, and thus the true support, are lacking! It is always and everywhere the same. The missionaries and converters throw themselves upon the people and want to convert them to Christianity *without* any further transition.

The same thing takes place today with the instruction of children, and yet children are no different inwardly to the heathens; for baptism has not made them any more knowing.

But if man does not follow in sequence the steps which are designed in Creation, and which Creation offers him in the automatic Primordial Laws, since it is composed of those steps, he can never attain to the true recognition of God! Even *good* teachings will be of no avail to him, but only entangle his paths.

All missionary work has so far suffered from this. It simply *cannot* achieve a result which is really living because it does not proceed in accordance with the Laws of Creation. The Law of Development in this Creation does not tolerate any jumps when genuine maturity is to be attained. And man will never be able to lift himself out of and above this Creation to which he belongs, with which he is closely connected by innumerable threads, and of which he shall now form the most precious of fruits.

But if he really desires to become the fruit which this Creation is capable of producing in the pure power of the Lord, then there must not be any interruption in the process of his maturing! It is the same as with animistic activity in regard to the fruit of the tree. Wherever there is an interruption or some other interference in the development towards ripeness, be it through an early frost, too violent a storm, or the harmful arbitrary action of man, the fruit can never grow to full ripeness and thus cannot attain real perfection.

It is no different with earthman, who is a fruit of *spiritual* activity.

Nothing must be missing in the course of his development, not a single step, because a gap or gulf would then remain which does not permit of a continuous live upbuilding, and thus of a further ascent towards the Heights; it makes it utterly impossible. Where *but one* step is missing or faulty a collapse *is bound* to come, and a headlong fall. He can twist or turn as he likes, but man *must* submit to this. Least of all could the cunning and subtle sham wisdom of his intellect erect a substitute bridge to help him onwards.

And man himself has undertaken a harmful interference by the *one-sided* cultivation of his earthly intellect, which now fetters him with a firm grip, as if with steel clamps, to the World of Gross Matter only, from which the intellect originates.

Through this the gap arose which an acquired faith in what is highly spiritual and Divine cannot bridge!

Thus the human fruit of Subsequent Creation must wither on its way to maturity through its own guilt.

That is why even today many a man, after he leaves school to enter upon life, experiences how he entirely loses the faith acquired in his childhood, although struggling bravely to retain it. Sooner or later, if he is an earnest seeker for the Truth, he has to build up entirely anew from the very beginning.

Being rushed along with the enthusiasm of the masses is of no use whatever to the individual. It never offers him that firm ground which he needs for his ascent, nor is he able thereby to

find the necessary hold *within himself*, that support which alone permits him always to stand firm.

Thus at present all the instruction for growing children in matters of faith is not yet right. *Therefore* everywhere that faith which leads to the *true recognition* of God, and which alone grants real happiness and also peace, is missing!

The instruction given today is wrong and without life. The support the individual believes he possesses is imaginary. It is only a formal faith to which everybody clings. The peace and security with which they try to lull themselves are a pretence, often adopted only to prevent giving outward offence, sometimes in order to enjoy earthly advantage, or anyhow to be held in esteem. It is never genuine, and it *cannot* be so, because the foundations in accordance with the Laws of Creation are still lacking. And without these it is simply impossible.

Let us go back into the past, and consider the former conversions in the German lands. The thinking person who does not allow himself to be carried along with the average indolent masses must also recognize here how empty, and for the inner being *useless*, were the forms created at that time, which could not bring about any recognition of God!

Within every nation, indeed within every individual, as also within the people of the present time, there must *first of all* exist the *foundation for the acceptance* of the high recognitions of God which is contained in the teachings of Christ. Only out of such a mature foundation may and must the human spirit then be led into all the possibilities of a recognition of God through the teachings of Christ.

*So it is and so it will remain for all eternity!*

Could it be otherwise, then God would have permitted an *earlier* revelation of Himself among the peoples on earth. He did not do so!

Not until a nation had advanced so far in its development that it knew about the activity of all that is animistic could it learn about the spiritual, the Pure-Spiritual, the Divine, and finally also about God!

But always and only in such a manner that it was led intelligently upwards into a *higher* understanding by prophets called for the purpose, who never overthrew the old in doing so. *They built up!* Just as Jesus Christ Himself did, and often emphasised in His Word, which is something you hitherto *did not wish to understand*.

With their conversions, however, the Christian churches want to destroy much that is old and declare it to be wrong, or at least to get rid of it by disregarding it, instead of carefully continuing to build up on the old, and in so doing to pay due regard to the necessary bridging over. They expect and demand that the human spirit should jump immediately into this most exalted Christian teaching.

Thus the Laws of God are not observed in these matters, although the intention is often good.

The Germanic peoples were also closely connected with the elemental (animistic) beings at that time. Many of them were able to see and experience them, so that no doubts could remain with them about their actual existence, and just as little about their activity. They *saw* this and therefore *knew* about it.

It was the purest conviction for them and therefore sacred.

And with brutal fist Boniface attacked their existing shrine! He wanted to deny the Teutons the truth of such knowledge and declare it to be false. In its place he wanted to force upon them the forms of his Christian teaching. From the very beginning such an ignorant way must have made the Teutons doubt the truth of what *he* proclaimed to them, must have robbed them of all trust.

He should have confirmed the truth of their knowledge and then led them onwards with explanations to higher recognitions! But he himself lacked the knowledge of Creation. He revealed his ignorance about the weaving in Creation only too clearly by calling Wotan (Odin) and the other elemental (animistic) beings, whom the Teutons considered as active gods, an erroneous faith and non-existent. Although they are

not gods yet they do exist through the power of God and work in Creation.

Without the working of the elemental beings the spiritual could not possibly become anchored in the World of Matter and thus could not accomplish anything therein. The spiritual, from which the human spirit originates, thus needs the co-operation of that which is animistic in the World of Matter to further its own development!

Religious zeal can never replace knowledge in these matters.

However, the mistake made by Boniface and all those who wished to convert is still kept alive today.

The Greek *myths* are spoken about and taught. They were no myths, however, but real *knowledge*, which the men of today lack. Unfortunately the churches also do not know the working of the Holy Will of God in Creation, which still remains the home of all human spirits. They blindly overlook past happenings and are therefore unable to lead anyone to the *true* and living recognition of God. With the best volition they cannot achieve it.

It is only through the Laws of Creation themselves, which God has given, that the human spirit can come to the recognition of God. And this recognition is absolutely necessary for its ascent! Only through this does it receive *that* support which permits it to journey steadfastly along the path prescribed and useful for it towards perfection! Not otherwise!

He who wants to jump over the activity of the elemental beings, about which the peoples of olden times had an exact knowledge, can never come to the true recognition of God. This exact knowledge is an unavoidable step towards recognition, because the human spirit has to struggle from below upwards. Unless it first possesses as a foundation an exact knowledge of the lower steps in Creation to which it belongs, the human spirit can never learn to obtain a faint conception of the Pure-Spiritual and the Divine Spheres, which are above his ability to comprehend. This is an unavoidable necessity as a preparation for the possibility of higher recognition.

As I have already stated the knowledge of God was always first given to those peoples who stood in the knowledge of the activity of the elemental beings, and never otherwise. For the possibility to comprehend is never provided before this is achieved. In these matters the entire human race was carefully led by the Light.

A man who in purity stands and lives only in the knowledge of the Animistic Realm is to be valued more highly in Creation than one who merely stands in an acquired Christian faith and smiles about that which is animistic, considering it as fairy tales or myths; the latter is thus ignorant about it and thereby never obtains a true support, while the former still possesses the full possibilities for ascent in a strong, undimmed longing for it, which has not been undermined.

With a good volition he can animatedly grow within a few days into the spiritual recognitions and the spiritual experiencing, because he did not lose the firm ground beneath him.

In all missionary work and school teaching in future, therefore, the knowledge of God should be brought by way of the knowledge of the animistic forces that have taken on form and their activities, for only out of this can there develop the higher recognition of the spiritual and of the Pure-Spiritual, and finally also of the Divine and of God.

The *entire* knowledge of Creation is necessary in order finally to arrive at a faint idea of the greatness of God and thus in the end also at the true recognition of God. There cannot be anything vital in the Christian faith of *today* because it lacks all this! What is necessary for it is always left out, and the gulf can only be bridged by that which was given by God for the purpose in this Subsequent Creation, not by anything else!

Nobody, however, has learned from a calm observation of the past entire development of mankind here on earth what is *most important*: That all the stages through which men had to live *were necessary* and therefore may not be avoided or jumped over today either! The entire Creation gives you the clear picture and all the basic requirements to carry this out!

Therefore listen to what I say to you: Until it has achieved maturity the child of today is directly and closely connected only with the Animistic World. During this time it must become thoroughly acquainted with the animistic through experiencing! Only when maturity sets in does it proceed to the point of spiritual connection, building up and ascending as it develops. In so doing, however, it must firmly and consciously set its foot upon the animistic as the foundation, and must not sever the connection as mankind does today by never calling it to life within the children, but on the contrary suppressing it forcibly in their irresponsible conceit. For ascent, however, both want to and need to be connected knowingly.

The man of today should be ripened as a fruit of Creation so far that he bears *accumulated* within him the *complete* result of the past development of mankind!

Therefore what *childhood* alone represents to each individual today was formerly a great epoch of mankind within the entire development of Creation.

Pay close attention to what I am saying therewith!

The first development covering *millions of years* is *now*, for men at *today's* stage of development in Creation, compressed into the *years of childhood*!

He who is incapable of keeping pace with this must put it down to his own guilt; he remains behind and must finally perish. The development of Creation cannot be retarded by the indolence of men, but strides forward unceasingly in accordance with the laws inherent therein, which bear the Will of God.

Formerly, Creation was at such a stage of development that for many earth-lives men had to remain inwardly as children are today. They were directly connected with animistic activity only, slowly developing through experiencing, which alone grows into knowledge and recognition.

For a long time already, however, Creation has through continual advancing arrived at that point where the first stages of development of the human fruit here on earth, which

covered millions of years, are now crowded into the period of their childhood. The former epoch of mankind must and can now be hastened through inwardly during these few earth years, because the experiences of former lives now slumber in readily available form within the spirit.

However, they must be awakened and thereby come to consciousness; for they must not remain slumbering or even be pushed away, as happens today. Everything *must* come to life and be kept alive through the work of “knowing” educators and teachers, so that the child receives the firm foundation and support in the animistic world which it needs for the recognition of God in the spiritual world. One step only grows out of the other when the latter is completed, and not before. Nor must the previous one be taken away if the stairway is to remain intact and not to collapse.

Only as the child matures physically does the break-through occur which establishes connection with the spiritual. But this impulse can *only* have vital consequences when it is based on a knowledge of the animistic. Neither fairy tales nor legends are of any avail here, but solely the experiencing which must be achieved and completed by the beginning of maturity. It must also *remain* entirely alive in order to permit the spiritual to come consciously to life. That is an irrevocable stipulation of Creation, which you should all have learned by observation of the past!

You need it now or you cannot follow and must cease to exist! Without the clear knowledge of the animistic activity there is never a spiritual recognition. Without the clear knowledge of the spiritual and its activity the recognition of God cannot arise! Everything which stands outside this lawfulness is presumptuous conceit and imagination, also very often quite a deliberate lie!

Question your fellow-man about the irrevocable Laws of God in Creation. If he cannot give you the right answer he is nothing but a hypocrite, who deceives himself when he talks of the recognition of God and of the *right* faith in God!

For in accordance with the unswerving Laws of God he *cannot* possess it, because in no other way can he ever attain it!

Everything in Creation strides forward uniformly without interruption in accordance with an immovable law! It is only you human beings who still do not go along owing to your delusion, your ridiculous conceited knowledge, which is lacking in humble observation!

The children and grown-ups of the present time walk as if on stilts in the recognition of God! Truly they struggle for it, but they float in the air with it, having no living connection with the ground as is absolutely necessary for their support. Between their volition and the foundation which is needed for the upbuilding there is dead wood, without any ability for intuitive perception, just as with the stilts!

The dead wood of the stilts is the *taught* faith, which is entirely devoid of mobility and vitality. Man certainly has the volition but no firm basis and no proper support, both of which lie only in the knowledge of the past development of Creation, to which the human spirit always belongs inseparably! Therefore it is and always remains closely connected with this Creation, and can never go beyond it!

Men, awake! Retrieve what you have been neglecting. Once more I will show you your way! At last bring life and movement into your rigid volition, and then you will find the great recognition of God which you should already have possessed a long time ago, if you had not remained behind in the progressive development of the great Creations!

The time of the last turning point has come when you must prove yourselves and show whether you are still able to follow on the path upward or whether you must stay behind and perish!

Remember that you must not eliminate anything of that which the entire humanity was already compelled to experience here upon earth; for it always experienced what was necessary for it. And when mankind went wrong through its own volition destruction ensued. This is how it will be now!

When in your suffering you hear the great wakeup call, do not obtusely pass it by! It is the last one you will hear. Therefore, awaken and maintain your balance, lest you be torn down and swept away! Creation hurries onward unswervingly and casts off all rotten fruit now.

---

## Substantiality.

**I**n my Message I have often spoken of Animistic Substantiality in Creation. I spoke of its nature and its working, also of its significance for the human spirit, whose paths in Creation it smoothes as he develops towards perfection.

All this you already know.

In spite of this I now consider it necessary to speak once more in greater detail of all Substantiality, so that man is given the opportunity to absorb within himself the entire picture of this activity. —

“Substantiality” is an expression which I myself gave to you, because it best expresses *that* which can provide you with a definite form for your conceptions about the working and also the nature of this component part of Creation, which is so important for every activity that is brought into existence.

“Substantiality”, let us also call it for once that which is “essential” for *Creation* or, better still, that which “visibly manifests” in Creation; then perhaps what I actually want to say by the expression “Substantiality” will become even more comprehensible to you.

We can also use other conceptions from the vocabulary of your language \*(German) in order to fashion it even better. The expression appertaining here is “that which unites and combines” or, in short: “that which binds” and is thereby “bound” itself.

After all these transitory expressions I can now also safely say: “that which shapes forms”, without you thereby thinking that Substantiality would create forms out of its *own* volition; for this would be wrong, because Substantiality is only able to create forms when behind it stands the Will of God, the living

Primordial Law of Creation, setting it in motion.

We may just as well call Substantiality the executive and preservative motivating power in the creating of forms! Perhaps this is the easiest way to provide your mental capacity with the approximately *correct* conception.

That which is substantiate, i.e., that which manifests visibly in a form and which can therefore also be reproduced in a picture, comprises *everything* but God. God alone is Unsubstantiate, so called in order to differentiate from the conception of substantiate.

Therefore everything existing outside the Unsubstantiality of God is substantiate and formed!

Take this as a basic conception for your understanding.

Originating from Unsubstantiality Itself, i.e. directly out of God, are only the two Sons of God, nothing else; and the two Sons themselves bear Unsubstantiality within and are thereby one with God.

Thus everything apart from God is Substantiate. And since, apart from God, the only thing that exists is the radiation of God, it follows that Substantiality is the natural and unavoidable radiation of God.

Thus Substantiality is much more comprehensive and higher than you thought it to be. It comprises *everything* outside of God, but it is divided into many gradations depending on the degree of cooling off and the consequent distance from God.

If you understand the Message *aright* you will know that I have already spoken of Divine Substantiality, which exists in the Divine Sphere, also of Spiritual Substantiality, which in turn is divided into Pure-spiritual Substantiality and Spiritual Substantiality. Thereafter I mentioned the gradation of that Substantiality which is only Animistic, which is followed further downwards by the World of Ethereal Matter and finally by the World of Gross Matter, with all their various transitional planes.

Since *everything* is substantiate, however, outside of God Himself, I simply called the various species Divine, Pure-

spiritual, Spiritual and Animistic, as well as Ethereal Matter and Gross Matter, these being the various gradations downwards.

In the great basic structure, however, there are only two: that which is Unsubstantiate and that which is substantiate. God is Unsubstantiate, while His Radiation must be called substantiate. There is nothing else; for everything which is outside of God issues and develops solely from the Radiation of God.

Although if you study it *aright* this follows quite clearly from the Message already, yet many hearers and readers at present still think of the substantiate as being only the sphere of Creation between the Spiritual Sphere and the Ethereal World, the region from which the elementals originate, such as the elves, nixies, gnomes and salamanders; and also the soul of animals, which do not bear anything spiritual within them.

Actually the thought was not wrong up till now, because this region between the Spiritual Sphere and the Ethereal World is the simple Substantiality which is only Animistic, from which the Divine, the Pure-spiritual and the Spiritual have already separated. It is the heaviest of the layers still mobile within itself, from which in the process of further cooling off the World of Matter detaches itself and sinks. In the first stage of this cooling off process there remains the ponderous World of Ethereal Matter, from which in addition the mass of the Gross Material World severs itself, which is without inherent mobility.

But even within these two planes of matter, the species of which are alien to each other, there are still many special gradations. Thus the earth, for instance, is not the most ponderous of them. There are within the World of Gross Matter further gradations which are far heavier and denser, and where consequently the conceptions of space and time become much narrower still, quite different from what they are here on earth; and where the resultant mobility is even slower and the possibility of development consequently also more cumbersome.

The conceptions of space and time in each gradation are formed according to the capacity for movement, for not only do the stars journey more slowly in the greater density and heaviness, but the bodies of flesh are also plumper and firmer, and the brains therefore less mobile too. In short, everything is different due to the resulting entirely different character and effect of the mutual radiations, which are the impulse towards movement and also at the same time, after having been transformed, the consequences of this movement.

It is just because everything is subject to *one* Law in Creation that the forms and conceptions must always manifest differently in the various gradations, depending on the nature of the mobility. This in turn is related to the particular cooling off and the resultant density.

But I am again straying too far from the subject with this, for today I want first of all to enlarge the conception about Substantiality a little more.

In doing so I refer to an illustration which I gave once before, and say briefly:

That which is Unsubstantiate is God. That which is substantiate is the mantle of God. There is nothing else whatever. And this mantle of God must be kept pure by those who weave it or who may shelter in its folds, which also include the human spirits.

Since everything outside of God is substantiate, Substantiality therefore extends right into the Divine Sphere; indeed this Sphere itself must be called substantiate.

In order to prevent any errors from creeping in we must now make a finer distinction. It is best if we separate the conception "*the substantiate*" and the conception "*the animistic (elemental) beings*"!

"*The substantiate*" comprises everything outside of God because it is the opposite of the Unsubstantiate. But the substantiate also bears within itself the Divine, the Pure-spiritual, and the Spiritual with all its special gradations, which I have not yet explained because at present this would

be beyond your capacity to understand. It is necessary that the exact *foundations* should first be unshakably established in the consciousness of the human spirit, from which we can always and only gradually undertake the extensions by small steps, until the comprehension possible to the human spirit has become sufficiently embracing.

Thus in future when we speak of Substantiality *as such* this means the Substantiality which comprises everything but God. Only in the course of further lectures will you recognize how great this is; for there are not only the already known gradations leading downwards but also various important related species *side by side*, through the activity of which Creation develops.

If, however, we speak of *the* elemental beings in the plural, then this refers to *those* elementals which you have hitherto thought about as comprising the Substantiality which is only Animistic.

This includes all those beings which deal with *that* which men in a very superficial way call *Nature*, which include the seas, the mountains, the rivers, the forests, the meadows and the countryside, as well as the soil, the rocks and the plants, while the soul of the animal is again something different, although it also comes from this Sphere of Substantiality which is only Animistic.

All this is quite correctly designated by the expression "Beings". Elves, nixies, gnomes and salamanders are thus beings, whose activities lie *solely in the World of Matter*. It is *therein* that we now find the real possibility to classify them.

But there are also beings active in the Spiritual Sphere, others working in the Pure-spiritual Sphere, and still others busy even in the Divine Sphere.

This recognition must completely undermine the conception you have hitherto held, based on your assumption that the spiritual stands above the elemental beings. But this is true only for a very definite species of elementals, for those which are active solely in the World of Matter, such as the already-

mentioned elves, nixies, gnomes and salamanders, and also for the souls of animals. But not for others.

You surely cannot imagine that a being active in the Pure-spiritual Sphere and even in the Divine Sphere should stand *under* you human spirits.

To further an understanding of this matter I must first give a more precise explanation as to the difference between spirit and being; for only thus can I give you a key to the right conception.

*In Creation* there is actually no difference in *value* between the creature "spirit" and the creature "being". The only difference lies in the difference of species and the consequent necessity for a difference in their activities! The spirit, which also belongs to the great Substantiality, is permitted to follow roads of its own choosing and work correspondingly in Creation. The being, however, stands directly in the pressure of the Will of God, and therefore it has no possibility to make personal decisions or, as man expresses it, it does not possess its own free will.

The elemental beings are the builders and administrators of the House of God, i.e., of Creation. The spirits are the guests therein.

At present, however, all the beings stand *higher* in Subsequent Creation than the human spirits, because the human spirits did not place themselves voluntarily under the Will of God, which the *normal* course of development would have automatically assured. Instead they turned their will in a different direction, pushing it in between and thus disturbing all harmony and upbuilding, and going other ways than those willed by God.

Thus the only standard of value for a creature in Creation is *the quality of the activity* in which it is engaged.

The smaller beings working in the World of Matter, however, suffered greatly through this disturbing work of the human spirits with their wrong volition. But now they eagerly draw from the Living Source of Power which came to earth with the

Will of God, and all the harm caused by the human spirits now rolls back upon its originators.

But more of this later. Today it is a question of forming the conception as a basis for a further understanding.

The Archangels in the Divine Sphere are beings, because under the immeasurably great pressure of the proximity of God no other volition but that which swings pure and undistorted in the Will of God would be at all possible.

Only at a distance so vast that it is beyond your power to grasp, at the extreme boundary of the Divine Sphere, there where the Grail Castle is anchored in the Divine as a counter-pole, only there for the first time can an ego-consciousness manifest itself in the Eternal Ones or, as they are also sometimes called, the Elders, who at the same time are the Divine Guardians of the Holy Grail. It is only their remoteness from the proximity of God which made this possible.

And only further downwards therefrom, at an ever greater distance from the proximity of God, could there also develop the smaller ego-conscious ones. Unfortunately, however, they also lost their real support thereby and finally strayed away from the swinging of the pure Will of God.

Likewise it was only due to the ever-increasing distance that Lucifer was able long ago to change, and through his wilfulness to cut himself off from the connection, thereby automatically opening up chasms which in time became unbridgeable, so that he himself became darker and heavier and sank ever deeper. Thus in the process of densification and cooling off he became a spirit possessing free volition, and with the great capacities bestowed upon him by his origin he finally stood in this Creation as the *strongest spirit*.

His wrong volition then brought the evil upon everything spiritual in the World of Matter, which at first felt attracted by him and then *voluntarily* succumbed to his enticements. Of their own free will because, in accordance with the Law in Creation, the human spirits *themselves* had to make the decision leading to their fall. Without their own decision to do

so it would have become impossible for them to sink and now consequently to fall.

However, this also is but the logical fulfillment of the Perfect Law. —

Thus spirits with a volition of their own cannot possibly exist in the immediate proximity of God. This is a lawful condition of the Almighty Power of the Living Light! —

Where there are archangels there must also be other angels, as the word implies. There are very many of them in the Divine Sphere, also in the Pure-spiritual and Spiritual Spheres, but they are all *beings*.

The beings which are called angels *swing* in the Will of God and are His messengers. They carry out the Will of God and spread it abroad.

Besides the angels, however, there are also innumerable beings, all linked together like small wheels in a great machine, and yet apparently working independently and faithfully in the building up and maintenance of the entire Creation, because they are firmly anchored in the Law. And above all these stand individual leaders equipped with a power incomprehensible to man; and again above these there are still higher and more powerful leaders, always of a species alien to the one below.

And so it goes on and on right up into the Divine Sphere. It is like a great chain, the links of which penetrate the whole of Creation without a break, their joyful activity like the verses of a hymn of praise resounding to the honor and glory of their Lord.

Remember that what you see around you here is but a coarse image of everything which lies higher, which takes on ever more glorious, more noble and lighter forms the nearer it is permitted to be to the Circle of the Divine. In all these circles, however, the *beings* always work exactly in accordance with the Will of God that rests in the Laws!

All beings stand in the service of God, which spirits themselves must first acknowledge voluntarily if they wish to

---

work beneficially in Creation. If spirits follow the path which is exactly designed for them, and which they can easily recognize if they only wish to do so, then a way of happiness and joy is assured for them; for they will then swing together *with* the beings which help to smooth their paths.

But the spirits must compel themselves to take any wrong path by a very special decision. They only bring about failure, however, and create suffering for themselves therewith, and ultimately their fall and the necessity to expel them from Creation into the funnel of disintegration, as being useless for the God-willed and lawfully conditioned development of everything that has so far come into existence.

The spiritual alone has evolved in the wrong direction and to the disturbance of harmony. After the Judgment it is now once more granted a period in which to change through the God-willed Millennium. If it does not by then become absolutely firm in its striving for the good, the spiritual must again be drawn back to that border where it *cannot* develop itself to become self-conscious, so that at last peace and joy will prevail for all creatures in the Realms of God!

Thus you, man, are the only one who has a *disturbing* effect in the desired beauty of this Creation when it is now to be uplifted for its necessary change to the state of a gross material Paradise. Make haste; for only in the *knowledge* can you still swing yourselves up, you men! Learn from what I tell you; use it to build your *new* path which must lead you to the Light. You will receive the strength to do so as soon as you open your souls for it.

---

**He, who for the sake of another, does not wish to  
know my Word, him I will not know in  
the hour of his need!**

**W**hoever does not wish to know my word! This sentence is not meant as a warning but it is a blow. A blow directed sharply against all indolence and laziness of the human spirits, against their conceit and wanting-to-know-better.

Far reaching implications are encompassed in this not-wanting-to-know. It is not only rejection of the Word and every kind of wanting-to-know-better which is judged, but also lukewarmness, indolence or timidity for whatever reason. And he who has already accepted the Word but does not seek to bring it to life within himself with all his might is a dreamer, lame and inactive, in the delusion of securely possessing my Word. It is much the same as the pernicious habit of so many faithful believers in the church and such a one will be struck with the same, undiminished force.

And when it is said: "For the sake of another!" this also contains more, much more than any superficial reader and listener wishes to take from it. For these short words comprise *all human weaknesses*, of which there are more than a few.

Even the beloved vanity moves many to suppress their confession of the Word at an appropriate moment. They are afraid to show a weakness or to provoke ridicule from a fellow human being. A mere smirk on the lips of another would be embarrassing to them.

Like a coward he inwardly excuses and reassures himself that the Word is "too holy" for him to expose It to mockery.

This works quite well as reassurance for weaklings; but it is wrong in all instances where a question about It is raised.

Cleverly evading an answer or dodging a question is the same as denial. A strong person will always provide a serious, calm but firm answer, and such an answer will never be derided, because it holds help from the Light which suppresses any urge to ridicule.

If an aggressive questioner will still not let up, he can be rebuked briefly and sharply, without one having to deny or timidly suppress one's own conviction.

The words "for the sake of another" do not refer only to another human being, but also to any other "thing"! That is any other matter.

Thus, the Holy Word must not be denied out of consideration for another human being, be it out of love or fear. Nor must it be neglected because of convenience or for the sake of one's occupation or daily work, under the delusion that, after work, one deserves some relaxation or that recreation is more necessary than cumbersome study, or that cares about the daily bread do not permit the opening of one's soul which the Word requires.

All this, then, is included in "not wanting to know the Word for the sake of another!"

The time has now come for frank, courageous profession! Profession in response to direct questioning. The Word should definitely not be taken after anyone who *does not ask for it!* This provision remains in effect, since it is part of the sifting process of human kind.

The Holy word must never be touted, advertised or carried after anyone, which means that every individual must show whether he truly carries a longing for the Truth within.

Where such inner yearning is truly present, and where it is not tarnished or repressed by the intellectual vanity of wanting-to-know-better, there spiritual help intervenes so strongly, that such a person will definitely come into contact with my Word at the right time, and thus receive the opportunity for a final decision concerning his own path.

Those, however, who *no longer* have such yearning within are judged already!

It is an automatic effect of the law which now strides inexorably forward, also on the earth.

That is why for every earthman now comes the hour of his extremity where he is in dire need of the Word!

I and the Word are one! Thus, he who knows my Word also knows me. Seeing me physically is not necessary for this; because through this he has received spiritual connections with me, no matter whether he is aware of it or not. The man who has accepted my Word has thereby also accepted me, and is connected to me.

He who is connected in this way cannot be pulled away by the darkness. The darkness is unable to drag him down into the regions of disintegration where the darkness itself is now being pushed by the pressure of the Light!

This decisive moment will be, for every human spirit, the hour of his extremity!

If he does not live firmly in the Word, the thread which holds him securely cannot be tied; his spirit continues to stray randomly, if indeed, it does not actually attach itself to the darkness and, together with it, sink into the horror. In *such* cases, even those spirits, who are otherwise always willing to *help*, have to stand by idly.

If a spirit remains unattached, if it has not anchored itself in the Word, the sinking darkness will drag it along on its downward fall, because it is not held by the Light and because no spirit can continue to float and stray aimlessly in indecision and lukewarmness. Either upwards toward the Light, or down into the darkness! The time for hesitating, waiting and weighing is now over.

Thus, "Him I will not know in the hour of his extremity!" is a grave verdict in all of Creation.

It is a pity that men pass by even serious matters with indifference, and that owing to their spiritual indolence they only recognize everything when they *must* recognize it. But then it is too late. The root cause of this fateful indolence is also to be found in the effects of the hitherto wanton misuse of

their *free volition* by mankind which forced itself into such stupor. —

All men stand in the Law as does every creature; they are enveloped and penetrated by the Law, and in the Law and through the Law they have also come into existence. They live in it, and with their free volition they themselves weave their own fate, choose their own ways.

When incarnated here upon earth these self-chosen paths also lead them unfailingly to those parents whom they absolutely need for their childhood. Thus they also enter into *those* circumstances which are useful to them, because they receive just *that* which has ripened for them as the fruit of the threads of their own volition.

In the resulting experiences they also continue to mature, for if their previous volition was evil then the fruits they will have to taste will be exactly in accordance therewith. This happening with its inescapable final consequences is at the same time the continuous fulfillment of wishes once cherished, which always lie hidden in every volition, and which indeed form the central motive of every volition. Except that such fruits often do not appear till the next earth-life, yet they never fail to appear.

In addition these consequences simultaneously hold the *redemption* for everything which man has formed up till then, be it good or evil. As soon as he learns the lessons from these experiences and thereby comes to recognize how he is, then it is also definitely possible for him to ascend at any moment, as well as out of *any* set of circumstances; for no burden is so weighty that it could not be changed by an earnest volition for what is good.

Thus it operates in constant and uninterrupted movement throughout the entire Creation, and the human being also, along with every other creature, keeps on weaving his fate, his particular kind of path in the threads of the Law. Every stirring of his spirit, every wavering of his soul, every action of his body, and every word he utters automatically and

unconsciously ties ever new threads to the existing ones, *attaching* them, *connecting* one with the other, and *interweaving* them. The human being forms and forms, and *even thereby forms in advance the earth-name which he must bear in his next life on earth*, and which he *will* inevitably bear because the threads of his own weaving surely and unswervingly lead him to it!

Thus every earth-name also stands in the Law. It is never accidental and never without the bearer himself having provided the basis for it beforehand, because in the process of incarnating every soul runs irresistibly along the threads of its *own* weaving, as if on rails, to the place where it exactly belongs in accordance with the Primordial Law of Creation.

As this happens the threads finally become ever more taut in the increasing material condensation at those points where the radiations of coarse ethereal matter are in close contact with the radiations of fine gross matter, and join hands for a firm *union, as if magnetised*, for the period of a new life on earth.

The particular earth-life then lasts until the original strength of these radiations of the soul changes on account of various redeeming experiences during life on earth. Therewith this magnetic power of attraction is also directed more upwards than downwards to the gross material; whereby in turn the separation of the ethereal matter of the soul from the gross material body finally takes effect in accordance with the Law, because a real fusion has never taken place, but merely a *union*, which was held together magnetically through a very definite strength arising from the degree of heat of their mutual radiation.

Thus it also happens that the soul must separate from a body which has been forcibly destroyed, ruined by disease, or weakened by old age at the very moment when *this body*, owing to its changed condition, can no longer produce *that* strength of radiation which brings about such a magnetic power of attraction as is necessary to play its part in the firm union between soul and body!

This results in earthly death, or the falling back or falling off of the gross material body from the ethereal cloak of the spirit, thus separation. This is a process in accordance with firmly established laws and takes place between two species, which only unite at a precisely corresponding degree of heat through the radiation thus produced. But they can never merge into each other, and they fall apart again when one of the two different species can no longer fulfill the condition ordained.

Even when the gross material body is asleep its firm union with the soul is loosened, because during sleep the body produces a different radiation which does not bind as solidly as the one required for the firm union. However, since the union still exists only a *loosening* takes place, but no separation. This loosening is immediately eliminated at each awakening.

But if a person inclines only towards gross material things, for example, as with those who so proudly call themselves realists or materialists, then hand in hand with this goes the fact that through this desire their soul produces a specially strong radiation directed towards the World of Gross Matter. This process involves a very hard physical death because the soul tries to cling one-sidedly to the gross material body, and thus a condition arises which is called a heavy death-struggle. The kind of radiation is therefore decisive for much, indeed for everything in Creation. It provides an explanation for every process.

How a soul comes just to the gross material body ordained for it I have already explained in my lecture about the mystery of birth. The threads linking it with the prospective parents have been knotted through their mutual homogeneity, which at first had an attracting influence that increased more and more, until at a certain maturity of the growing body the threads joined and knotted themselves to this body, thus forcing a soul to incarnate.

And the parents also bear *that* name which they acquired through the way in which they wove the threads for themselves. For this reason the same name must be suitable

for the approaching homogeneous soul which has to incarnate. In spite of the apparent reflection given to the matter even the first names of the new earthman are always and only given in such a way as will correspond to *the homogeneous species*, because the thinking and reflecting always and only conform to that particular species. The *species* can always be accurately recognized in the thinking, and therefore in spite of their thousand fold variations *those* species to which particular thought-forms belong can be clearly and sharply distinguished. I have already spoken about this in my explanations about thought-forms.

The *species* is fundamental for everything. Consequently even with the greatest pondering about the names to be given to an infant at its christening they will always be so chosen as to correspond with the Law to which the species is subject or which it merits, for man cannot act any differently because he stands in the Laws, which affect him according to his species.

Notwithstanding all this the free will is never excluded, since each *species* of man is in reality only a fruit of the personal and actual volition which he carries within himself.

It is nothing but an utterly detestable excuse if he seeks to deceive himself that under the compulsion of the Laws of Creation he has no freedom of his will. Whatever he is forced to experience for himself under the compulsion of these Laws are fruits of his *personal* volition, which has preceded these fruits and woven the threads leading to them, allowing them to ripen correspondingly.

Thus every person on earth bears precisely *that* name which he earned for himself. Therefore his name is not only what it is, he is not only called by this name, but he *is* this name. Man *is* what his name says!

There is no chance about the matter. In some way the prescribed combination is *achieved*; for man cannot tear apart these threads until they are *lived* off by the human spirits concerned with them and to which they cling.

That is a knowledge which mankind of today does not yet

possess, and which they will therefore very probably smile about as they do with everything they themselves cannot comprehend. But neither does this mankind know the Divine Laws which have been hewn firmly into Creation from its primordial beginning, the Laws to which Creation owes its very existence, which also affect man every single second, which are likewise his helpers and judges in everything he does and thinks, and without which he would be absolutely unable to draw a single breath! And all this he does not know!

Neither is it astonishing, therefore, that he does not want to recognize many things as the immutable consequences of these Laws, but tries to mock and laugh at them. However, just in those things which man *should* and *must* definitely know he is utterly inexperienced or, to put it bluntly, he is more stupid than any other creature in this Creation whose whole life simply swings therein. And just through this *stupidity* he laughs about everything he cannot understand. His mockery and ridicule are the direct proof and admission of his ignorance, of which he will soon be ashamed when it causes him to be overcome with despair.

Only despair can still achieve the destruction of the hard casing which now envelops men and keeps them so much imprisoned.

Therefore, I need not tell you what kind of sensations were evoked in me by the hostilities already flung at me by men. You can imagine what I see before me as the consequences of the law, when so many wish to judge my Message or ridicule it; and when they regard you, who are trying to follow me, as having gone astray. *Each one of them must now pass by the sword of God's Will.* They will have to account for every word, every single thought; for none of them will be excused any longer!

They will be smitten with the power they cannot oppose, against which they are powerless and which runs through these threads and strikes them; threads they themselves have spun and woven through their volition and their actions!

## The little elemental beings.

Today I continue with my explanations about Substantiality and its function in Creation. To do so it is necessary that I first give you a small glimpse into the *nearer* surroundings of earthman, which is easier for the earthly understanding, before I bring to life before your gaze the vast picture of all the happenings, beginning from above and continuing downwards.

Let us therefore first consider *those* elemental beings which are concerned with the Gross Material World. These consist of many special groups formed through the nature of their activities. There are, for example, groups which work entirely independent of the human spirits and which, being led only from above, busy themselves with the continuous development of new celestial bodies. They further their maintenance as well as their course, and likewise their disintegration wherever this becomes necessary due to their over-ripeness, in order that they may come into existence again in a new form in accordance with the Primordial Laws of Creation, and so on. But *those* are not the particular groups with which we want to deal today.

Rather it is the *little beings* we want to consider. You have often heard of the elves, the nixies, the gnomes and the salamanders, which are occupied with the gross matter of the earth here which is visible to you, also similarly on all the other gross material globes. They are the densest of all and can therefore also be most easily seen by you.

You *know* about them, but you are not yet acquainted with their actual work. At least you imagine you already know *what* they occupy themselves with; but you are absolutely ignorant as to the manner in which they perform their task, and how

their activity is always carried out strictly in accordance with the Laws of Creation. You do not know this.

Generally speaking, everything that you already call knowledge is not yet real and authoritative recognition, but merely an uncertain groping: indeed a great shout goes up when here and there something is found through this groping, i.e., when these desultory and, in comparison with Creation, trifling attempts to clutch at something happen to reveal a little speck of dust, the existence of which is often a surprise.

However, today I still do not want to unveil this for you either, but I first want to tell you of *that* which is closely connected *with you personally*, which is linked up with your thoughts and actions, so that you will gradually achieve the capacity of careful observation at least in *such* matters.

These groups about which I speak to you today also belong to the *little* elementals. But you must not forget that every tiniest one of them is immensely *important* and more reliable in its activity than a human spirit.

They carry out the work assigned to them with an accuracy so great that you cannot even imagine it, because even the apparently most insignificant of the elementals is *one* with the whole and therefore through it also works the power of the whole, behind which stands the *one* Will furthering, strengthening, protecting and leading: the Will of God!

It is like this throughout the whole of the realms where beings are active, and it could and *should* also have been the same long ago with you, the spirits of Subsequent Creation which have developed to ego-consciousness.

This firmly-established connection automatically ensures that, should any one of these elementals fail in some way or other, it is immediately expelled by the pressure of the whole and thus remains cut off. It would then wither away because the power no longer flows to it.

All that is weak is quickly shaken off in this way and does not even have a chance to become harmful.

I now want to talk about these elemental beings which,

though seemingly small, are yet so great in their activity; these you still have no knowledge about whatever, of the existence of which you have hitherto not known anything.

But you have already heard about their *activity* in my Message. However, you will not have associated it with Substantiality, since I myself did not link them with this because it would have been premature at that time.

What I then revealed in short sentences *objectively* I am now giving to you in its real working.

I have already once observed that the little elemental beings around you are influenced by the human spirit and can accordingly produce either good or even evil.

However, this influence does not take effect in *that* sense as you imagine it. It is not that you could be *masters* over these beings, that you could direct them!

In a sense, of course, it could be described like that without saying anything wrong; for it is actually expressed in the right way as far as *your* conceptions and your language are concerned, because you look at everything *from your point of view* and also judge accordingly. Therefore I very often had to speak to you in my Message in the same manner to make myself understood. I could also do it *here* because in this case it makes no difference as regards your acting in the right way.

Because it more closely corresponded with the attitude of your intellect it was much easier for you to understand at that time when I told you that with your volition you always strongly influence everything of the animistic around you, and that it adjusts itself to your thoughts and actions because you are spiritual!

That in itself remains literally true, but the reason for it is different; for the actual guidance of all creatures standing in the Law of this Creation, which thus live in the Will of God, is exercised solely *from above!* This includes *all* the elemental beings.

They are never subject to an alien volition, not even temporarily, nor in cases where it seems to you as if they were.

The little elementals which I mentioned do indeed adjust their activity to your *volition* and your *actions*, you human spirits, but nevertheless their work stands entirely in the Will of God!

This appears to be a riddle, but its solution is not so difficult; for now I only need to show you the other side as against that from which *you* consider everything.

Looked at from your angle you do influence the little elementals! Looked at from the Light, however, these only fulfill the Will of God, the Law! And since any power to act can only come exclusively from the Light, therefore this side which is *different* to you is the *right one!*

But nevertheless, for the sake of a better understanding, let us first consider their activity as seen *from your side*. In accordance with the Law that with every volition the spirit exerts a pressure here in the Material World, also upon the small Substantiality that is only Animistic, so you leave an imprint upon the little elemental beings with your thoughts and deeds. These little elementals then form in *fine gross matter* everything which is transferred to them by this pressure. Let us therefore say, from your point of view, that they carry out all your volitions!

In the *first* place your *spiritual* volition. Spiritual volition, however, is *intuitive perception!* The little elementals form it in fine gross matter exactly according to the volition that has issued from the spirit. They immediately take up the thread which springs forth from your volition and from your deed, and fashion at the end of the thread *that* form which corresponds exactly with this thread of will.

Such is the nature of the activity of the little elementals, which you do not yet know in their actual working.

In this way they create or, better said, they *form* the plane of Fine Gross Matter, which awaits you when you have to pass over into the Ethereal World! It is *the threshold* thereto for your soul where, to use your expression, it must first “purify” itself after earthly death, before it is able to enter the Ethereal World.

The stay of the soul on this plane is of longer or shorter duration depending upon its inner quality and upon whether, through its various propensities and weaknesses, it strove with greater or lesser strength after the gross material.

This plane of finer gross matter has already been seen by many people. It still belongs to the World of Gross Matter and is formed by the elemental beings which prepare the path of the human spirit everywhere.

This is very important for you to know: The elemental beings prepare for the human spirit, and thus also for the human soul as well as for earthman, that path which he *must* follow whether he wants to or not!

These elemental beings are influenced by man and also apparently directed by him. But only apparently, for the *actual* direction in this matter does not come from man but from *the Will of God*, the adamantine Law of Creation, which stationed this group of elementals at this place and directs their activity in the swinging of the Law.

All the thought-forms also come about through a similar activity of the elementals. However, this work is again carried out by a different group and a different species of the elementals, which also develop a special plane in fine gross matter alongside the first.

In this way landscapes, villages and towns also arise. That which is beautiful and that which is ugly. However, the different kinds are always precisely linked together, i.e., the ugly with the ugly, the beautiful with the beautiful, corresponding to the homogeneous species.

These are the places, the planes, in which you must still move about after your earthly death, *before* you can enter the Ethereal World. The coarsest which still clings to your soul in the earthly sense is cast off and left behind here. Not one little speck of this dust can you take along with you into the Ethereal World. It would hold you back until it has fallen off, i.e., until you have lived it off through recognition.

Thus the soul must journey slowly onwards after earthly

death; it must climb step by step, i.e., plane by plane, through constant recognition by personal experience of that which it acquired.

Wearisome is the path if the elementals had to build dark or gloomy places for you, depending on your volition here upon earth. It is always you who give the cause for it. —

Now you know what the little elementals do and how they work for you under your influence: It is in the Law of Reciprocal Action! The little elementals thereby weave your fate! They are the little master weavers which work for you, because they always and only weave *in such a manner* as *you* wish it through your inner intuitive perception, likewise through your thinking and also your actions!

Yet in spite of this they are not in your service! —

There are three species of such elemental beings alone which are busy with this. The one species weaves all the threads of your intuitive perception, the second one the threads of your thinking, and the third the threads of your actions.

It is not to be assumed that this is *one* weaving only, but there are three; however, they are linked with each other and also again linked with many other weavings besides. A whole army is busy at this work. And these threads are coloured according to their nature. But I must not carry my explanations so far yet, or we shall get into depths which are still incomprehensible to you and would never find an end. You could not get a clear picture thereby.

Therefore let us concern ourselves with the individual person for the time being. Apart from other things there issue *three* weavings from him, each of a different nature, because his intuitive perception is not always identical with his thinking, nor is his thinking always in strict accord with his actions! In addition, the threads of the intuitive perception are of an altogether different nature, for they reach into the Ethereal and Spiritual Spheres and are anchored *there*, while the threads of his thinking remain in *fine* gross matter *only*, and must be lived off *there*.

The threads issuing from the actions, however, are *still* more dense and heavy, and they are therefore anchored closest to life on earth, and must *first* be journeyed through and lived off after departure from the earth before it is at all possible for a soul to continue.

You have no idea how far many a soul must travel just to be able to enter the Ethereal World, not to speak of the Spiritual Sphere!

In his superficial way man simply calls all this the beyond and is satisfied with that. In his indolence he pours everything into one pot.

Many souls are earthbound over a long period because they are suspended on threads which are firmly anchored close to this heavy gross matter. The soul cannot release itself from them until it has lived itself free of them, i.e., when in the course of its compulsory journey through them it came to the recognition that all these things possess neither the value nor the importance which the soul had attached to them, and that it was futile and wrong to waste so much time on them while on earth. This often takes a very long time and it is sometimes very bitter.

Meanwhile many souls are again attracted from out of heavy gross matter, and they are incarnated again and ever again on earth without ever having been in the Ethereal World during that time. They had to remain in fine gross matter because they were unable to free themselves quickly enough. The threads held them too tightly therein. And in this it is impossible to slip through by cunning.

So much is possible for man here upon earth which he is unable to do after his departure. He then hangs more firmly in the Law of this Creation, experiencing everything instantly without the interference of a ponderous gross material cloak to delay matters. The earthly cloak is able to *delay* through its dense heaviness and impermeability, but it can never actually prevent. Therefore many things awaiting redemption are only postponed, but nothing is ever cancelled.

*Everything* that man here upon earth has perceived and thought is awaiting him, as well as the strict and just consequences of his actions.

When a man perceives intuitively then the threads thereby produced, which seem like small seeds sprouting forth from the soil, are taken up and cared for by the little elementals. And just as it is in heavy gross matter, the weeds receive exactly the same careful attention as the best plants. As the threads develop they are anchored for the first time at the border of fine gross matter, where they pass into the hands of a different species of the elementals, which lead them onward through the Ethereal World. They are again anchored at the border of the Ethereal World, and passed on into the Animistic Sphere. From the Animistic Sphere they then reach the Spiritual Sphere, where they are finally anchored again by a different species of the elementals.

Such is the path of a *good* volition which leads *upwards*. The path of an evil volition is guided *downwards* in the same way.

With each anchorage at a border these threads lose a certain species of their substance, which they leave behind in order to be able to proceed into the next sphere. This, too, takes place in a lawful manner, exactly corresponding to the particular species of the spheres. And all these developments are subject to the activity of the elementals!

As the intuitive perception of a good volition originates in the mobility of the *spirit*, these threads are consequently carried into the Spiritual Sphere. From there they pull at the soul or at least *hold* it fast when it still has to live through or redeem many a thing in fine gross matter. Thus, if there are many such threads anchored in the Spiritual Sphere, the soul cannot sink and fall so quickly as can a soul which carries with itself threads only for fine gross matter, because the latter was spiritually indolent while on earth and only bound itself to the World of Gross Matter, considering its pleasures alone worth striving for.

The soul that is being pulled by the threads of its volition no

more sees these threads than does man here on earth, because they are always of a somewhat finer substance than the outermost cloak in which the soul still moves about. At the very moment, however, when the process of living off these threads through recognition enables the cloak to attain the same consistency as the densest among the still existing threads, whereby the soul through the homogeneous nature of its outer cloak could see them, these threads have already fallen off as being redeemed. Consequently it never happens that the soul connected with such threads actually sees them.—

Thus from the *earthly* point of view these little elementals are in the service of the human spirit because they adjust their activities to the nature of the conscious or unconscious volitions of men. And yet in reality they only act in accordance with the Will of God, Whose Law they thereby fulfill!

Thus their activity is only *apparently* influenced by the human spirit. For the difference to become evident it depends entirely from which side you look at the matter.

When in the lectures about reciprocal action I spoke of threads which, as they issue from you, are thrust out and attracted, you perhaps until now saw only a conglomeration of threads before your mind's eye. However, it was not to be supposed that these threads would continue by themselves like worms, but they must pass through hands, must be guided. And these hands belong to the little elementals working therein, of which you could have no knowledge up till now.

But now the picture has come to life and stands before you. Imagine that you are constantly surrounded by these elementals, which observe you and at once take up every thread and guide it to where it belongs. Not only that, but they anchor it and care for it until the seed springs up, indeed until the blossoms and fruit appear. Just as it is here in the World of heavy Gross Matter with the seeds of plants, which are tended by the elemental beings until you can eventually have the fruits thereof.

It is the same basic Law, the same activity, but carried out by other species of the elemental beings which, as we would express it in an earthly way, are specialists in this field. And thus the same weaving, the same activity, the producing of seed, the germination, the growth, the blossoming and the fruit-bearing under the supervision and care of the elementals, penetrates the entire Creation for *everything*, no matter what it is and to which species it belongs. The activities of the elemental beings cover every single species, and without their activity there would in turn be no species.

Thus through the activity of the elemental beings, under the impulse of the base volition of men, and through the anchoring of the threads springing forth from this volition, there also came into existence the so-called hell. The threads of the evil volition were anchored there, grew, blossomed and finally bore the corresponding fruit, which *those* human beings who produced the seed had to accept.

Therefore a consuming lustfulness has dominion in these nether regions, the lust for murder, for quarrelling and for all the aberrations of human passions, each with its corresponding place. However, everything springs forth from the same Law, in the fulfillment of which the little elemental beings also fashion the fairy-like *beauty* of the more Luminous Realms! —

Thus I shall let one picture after another arise before you from Creation until you receive a great and uniform survey, which will never allow you to waver upon your ways nor let you go astray, because you are then knowing. Whoever even *then* would still *not* wish to direct his path towards the Luminous Heights would fundamentally prove himself as absolutely depraved and only worthy to be cast out.

---

## In the gross material workshop of the elemental beings.

So far we have been considering the activity of the little elemental beings in regard to that which *issues* from earthmen, such as their intuitive perception, their thinking and their actions.

Now, however, we want to remain just as close to earthmen as before, but observe therewith the activities of *those* elemental beings which develop their sphere of work in a direction *leading towards* earthmen. Thus they are not the beings which build the paths of the soul leading out of the heavy gross material substance of the earth, but those which strive in the opposite direction towards the gross material substance of this earth.

Everything shows movement, nothing is without form. Thus it appears as if man is surrounded by a huge workshop, the activities of which partly stream towards him and partly diverge from him, thereby intertwining, knotting and loosening, building up and pulling down, in constant change, continually growing, blossoming, ripening and decaying in order to offer new seed the opportunity to develop in fulfillment of the cycle which is in accordance with the Laws of Creation, the cycle of the necessary development and decay of all forms in the World of Matter. This is ordained by the Law of continuous Movement under the pressure of the radiation of God, the Only Living One.

It effervesces and surges, melts and cools off, hammers and pounds without ceasing. Vigorous fists push and pull, loving hands guide and protect, unite and separate the wandering spirits in all this tumult.

But the man of this earth is dull, blind and deaf to all this as he staggers about in his gross material attire. Greedy in his pleasures and knowledge, his intellect shows only this as its goal: Earthly joys and earthly power as the reward for his work and the crown of his existence. For the sluggish and indolent, the intellect tries to conjure up pictures of quiet comfort which, like a narcotic, hostile to the spirit, paralyse the will for activity in Creation.

He does not want to submit, the man of this earth, because the choice was left to his volition! And therefore he chains his living spirit to the dying form, the origin of which he does not even know.

He remains a stranger to this Creation, instead of using its gifts to build up for himself. Only the right knowledge offers the possibility of a conscious adaptation. Therefore man *must* step out of his ignorance now! In future he can only work *knowingly* under the rays of the new Star, which will separate the useful from the useless in the whole of Creation.

That which is useful, not judged according to human thinking, but only according to *God's Holy Law*! Thus all that is useless in the first place includes every person who is incapable of receiving the blessings and mercies of God in humility, something which he can only achieve through the knowledge of all the activities in Creation.

Only out of the *Word* can he receive all the knowledge which he needs for this. He will *find* it therein if he seeks earnestly. He finds exactly what *he needs for himself*! But Christ's words are now more than ever a law: "*Seek, and ye shall find!*"

Whoever does not seek with true eagerness of his spirit shall not and will not receive anything either. And therefore he who sleeps or is spiritually indolent will also find nothing in the *Word* which is living. It does not give him anything.

Every soul must first open itself for this of its own accord and strike the Source which lies in the *Word*. Therein rests an adamant and sifting law, which now fulfils in all severity.

You must become *knowing*, otherwise you will lose every hold

and will stumble and fall when now, during the course of the on-rolling world events, you are forcibly compelled to take *that* course which you must take in accordance with the Holy Will of your God, in Whose Works of Grace you have so far trampled about like ignorant animals in the most beautiful flower garden, destroying instead of furthering the upbuilding and helping, indulging in conceited audacity without exerting yourselves to obtain the understanding as to *why* you are allowed consciously to stay and enjoy everything in the beautiful Creation.

You never thought of giving the necessary service in return, you did not observe that great Law of God which ordains that the right to take lies in *giving* alone. But you have taken thoughtlessly; with or without petitions you have made boundless *demands* without even once thinking of your *duty* towards Creation, in which you guests wanted to make yourselves unscrupulous masters!

The Creator was expected to give, always to give. You did not even once in serious reflection ask how you really came to deserve this, but you only complained when you had to undergo suffering which you yourselves brought about, and you grumbled when something you had hoped for was not fulfilled for once. And your hoping, your wishes, were directed always and only towards *earthly happiness*. You have never as yet properly concerned yourselves with genuine longing for all else, for that which is more real. Where you *did* so it was the urge for earthly knowledge, nothing else.

You wanted to find in order to make yourselves prominent thereby. And when it happened that because of some distress you tried to investigate, then it was only done in order to escape from this trouble, no matter whether it was earthly distress or distress of the *soul*. *But it was never done for the purpose of honoring God!*

Now, however, learn at last to know the structure of this Creation in which you dwell and through part of which you also have to wander, so that you will no longer remain as

foreign substance therein. With the recognition which will then become ever stronger you will also receive *that* humbleness which you need in order to absorb the last and great gift: that of being allowed to exist eternally!

With the cognition, which must lead to *recognition*, you also shorten the period of your wanderings through Creation by thousands of years, and arrive much more quickly and surely at those Luminous Heights which must remain the longing and the goal of *that* human spirit which does not wish to become lost through being useless.

Thus follow me today further along the paths through the nearer surroundings of your existence upon earth.

Imagine that you are striving towards this earth as it is with every incarnation, no matter whether it be the first or already the fiftieth.

Thereby it is not possible for the soul which is waiting for incarnation to slip into a physical body without further ado. The soul itself, which on account of its nature never unites with the physical body, but which is capable of *joining* a physical body only when the conditions required for this are fulfilled, could never move or set aglow the physical body without a special bridge. The threads which are tied through the attraction of homogeneous species are not sufficient for such a purpose.

In order to give an absolutely clear picture I will go back once more and in brief outline touch upon a few requirements for an incarnation which are already known.

The effects of the Law of Attraction of Homogeneous Species are not decisive in *all* cases for incarnations, but there are also other possibilities and compelling reasons.

The Law of Reciprocal Action also intervenes in this matter and sometimes with a strength which eclipses all else. A soul outside of the physical bodies, which through threads of reciprocal action is strongly linked with another soul dwelling upon earth within a female physical body, will absolutely be led to this woman upon earth by way of these threads as soon

as there is an opportunity for an incarnation with her.

In addition to such conditions, which cannot be avoided, there is then also the Law of Attraction of Homogeneous Species. But there are also besides these two happenings other kinds and possibilities about which we shall talk in the course of time only, because today any superfluous deviation would only dim the clearness of the necessary picture.

So for the present let us only say that all the threads, no matter what their nature, cannot suffice to enable the soul to move the gross material body and to set it aglow.

Even when the condition is fulfilled that, due to some threads, the soul remains in the neighbourhood of the growing body, and that the body in its radiation also reaches that degree which is able to *hold* the soul, as I have already mentioned in an earlier lecture, then although it is true that the soul would thereby be bound to the body, yet it would still not on that account be in a position to move or set aglow the physical body connected with it.

A bridge for this is still lacking. Instead of saying bridge we can also call it an implement, which is especially needed by the soul in addition. And this bridge must again be built by the little elemental beings!

Like everything else this also takes place within the laws of the exact *meeting together* of very specific radiations, which in this case concern earthly manhood and womanhood, as well as various active threads of fate concerning these two human beings and also the soul. This process, too, needs a special explanation later on. Today it should be sufficient to hint that all of this forms the decisive starting-point for the activities of *those* little elemental beings which build the bridges for the incarnation of souls.

And these bridges are what many today already call the "astral body".

The astral body consists of medium gross matter. It must be formed by the little elementals directly *preceding* the heavy

gross material earth-body, so that it almost appears as if it were being fashioned simultaneously. But this is not so, for the astral body – I still want to retain this known designation for the sake of simplicity – must precede *everything* which is to be formed in the heavy gross material substance!

There are many people who have arrived at the knowledge of the *existence* of so-called astral things. But they neither know their actual purpose nor the real process of their coming into existence.

Those who have hitherto known about astral things again looked at everything only from their angle, and therefore thought of them as having originated from the heavy gross material substance. In most cases they consider them to be *images* of heavy gross matter, because every plant, every stone, and in fact *everything* of heavy gross matter seems to be reflected in the astral world.

These, however, are not *images* but *prototypes* of things in heavy gross matter. Without them nothing whatever would or could form in the World of heavy Gross Matter! That is the difference.

According to earthly conceptions this field of medium gross matter could best be called the workshop for models. Just as an artist first fashions a model, so the so-called astral body comes into existence *before* the heavy physical body. Except that there is nothing in Creation which would serve one such purpose *only* and then just be put aside, as it is with earthman. Instead everything, even that which appears the smallest, necessarily has a many-sided value in Creation.

In the working of the elemental beings every single thing belongs as a necessary part to the whole. Each part is also flooded through and pulsated through *uniformly* by the whole and with the whole.

So every piece upon the earth, even the earth itself, has a co-operating model. Some of those who are allowed to see call it the “shadow”, while others, as already mentioned, call it the “astral body”. There are other lesser known designations for

this, but they all mean the same thing. None of them, however, hits upon that which is right, because it was again considered from the wrong side, whereas there is no knowledge whatever about the origin.

There is nothing on earth which has not already been fashioned beforehand in an even more beautiful and more perfect way by the little elemental beings in medium gross matter!

Everything taking place in the World of heavy Gross Matter, even the skill of the craftsmen, the creations of the artists, etc., is only *drawn from* the preceding activities of the little elemental beings. They have already completed this and much more besides in medium and finer gross matter. There all this is even more perfect in its forms, because the elementals work directly in the laws of the Will of God which is perfect, and which can therefore only give expression to what is perfect in form.

Every invention, even the most surprising one, is only *borrowed* from things already achieved by the beings on other planes. There are very many such things yet, ready for men to draw upon in order to transfer them here upon earth into the World of heavy Gross Matter.

And yet, although the models are so easily attainable for those who are not only serious but also humble seekers, much has again been distorted here upon earth through the intellect, because in most cases those endowed with the ability lacked the requisite humility to draw in purity, and furthermore because the inhabitants of the earth, through their conceit which hampers everything, have so far paid no attention to the Laws of God in Creation. Not until they obtain exact knowledge of these Laws will the inventing or, more correctly expressed, the discovering on other planes, and consequently also the *correct* transfer into the heavy gross material substance of this earth, become much easier and more accurate than it has been so far. It will also become much more extensive.

The astral plane is therefore *not* a reflection of the World of Gross Matter! In the first place this plane in itself still consists of gross matter, only of a somewhat finer species than the earth, and secondly the *reverse* is true, that the heavy earthly gross matter is a reproduction of medium gross matter, of the so-called astral plane.

However, the astral plane contains two ways and thereby also two great basic divisions. One leading towards the heavy gross matter and another leading away from it again! The part striving towards heavy gross matter is the bridge which is necessary for the upbuilding in the earthly; the part striving away from it, however, is the formed expression of the thoughts and actions of the human spirits which are upon earth in earthly garments.

Men's knowledge of this has so far been isolated piecework only, whereby owing to their ignorance these few pieces are in a confused medley without any real connection. Thus nothing but a fantastically composed picture floating in the air was devised, which seems like a Fata morgana \*(mirage), and therefore probably exerts a special fascination upon many people who are inwardly unstable. Man can then revel so beautifully in irresponsible things. He can allow himself to establish daring suppositions in these matters, which he naturally likes others to consider as knowledge and certainty, knowing that nobody can hold him responsible thereby if he errs. In his opinion he has been given the opportunity to be held in esteem for once without having any responsibility.

Yes, before men! But not before the Laws of God! Towards these everybody is *fully* responsible for everything he says! For every word! And all those who follow his wrong opinions, even those whom he merely incites with his erroneous teachings to new and fantastic ideas of their own, all are firmly chained to him, and he must help to free them again individually before he can think of himself and his ascent!

After having again taken a brief glimpse at these matters, we must now return to details. Thus the little elemental beings

fashion the astral body beforehand as the necessary bridge for the soul, so that it is able to control, direct and move the growing body.

The soul is connected with *the astral body* and works *through this* upon the heavy physical body. Likewise the physical body with the radiation necessary for this can really bind the soul to itself only through the astral body acting as a mediator. The radiations issuing from heavy gross matter, through which the animistic pulsates, must first penetrate the medium gross matter of the astral body, for otherwise they cannot connect with the radiations of the soul, the outermost cloak of which is by then already of finest gross matter.

Let us at present distinguish only between three basic species of gross matter, although there are still various intermediate and side species in addition. For the time being we will only consider the fine, the medium heavy and the heaviest gross material substance. In this sense the physical body also belongs to the heaviest earthly species, and the astral body to the transitional species of medium heavy gross matter, i.e., to that species which *lies next* to the heaviest.

When an incarnation is to take place this astral body is *first* fashioned by the elemental beings, and immediately afterwards the physical body is formed so that it appears as if both occur simultaneously. In reality, however, the fashioning of the astral body precedes the process in heavy gross matter; it *must* precede it, otherwise the physical body could not be completed and the soul would be unable to do anything with it.

I am only giving you the *picture* of the process here, so that the conception can arise therefrom. Later on we shall perhaps follow *step by step* the growing, the maturing and the decaying, with all the logical order and with all the threads which are part of it, as soon as *the whole* stands before you *like a picture*.

The astral body is connected *with* the physical body, but is not dependent upon it, as has been assumed in the past. The lack of knowledge of the actual process of development in

Creation brought in its train the many errors, especially since man always basically presented the little knowledge he acquired by considering it from his point of view.

As long as *he* imagines himself as the *most important* point in Creation, where in reality he does not at all play a special main role, but where he is nothing but a creature like innumerable others, he will always go wrong, also in his investigations.

It is true that after the soul has severed itself from the physical body the astral body decays along with the physical body. But this must not be taken as proof that it is therefore dependent upon it. This does not even give a justifiable foundation for such an assumption.

In reality the process is different: When it severs itself the soul, being the mobile part, draws the astral body away from the physical body. Figuratively speaking: The soul upon stepping out of and leaving the physical body pulls the astral body out with it. That is how it appears. In reality the soul only pulls it *off* the physical body, because a fusion has never taken place but only a telescoping, as it is with field glasses which go in and out.

In so doing the soul does not draw this astral body along very far, because the latter is not only anchored with the soul but also with the physical body; and, moreover, the soul from which the essential movement issues also wants to sever itself from the astral body and consequently strives away from it too.

Thus after the earthly departure of the soul the astral body always remains near the physical body. The further the soul then moves away the weaker the astral body also becomes; and the ever-increasing severance of the soul finally brings about the decay and decomposition of the astral body, which in turn immediately brings in its train the decay of the physical body, in the same way as it also influenced its formation. This is the normal process in accordance with the Laws of Creation. Naturally special acts of intervention also bring about special conditions and disarrangements, but without being able to eliminate the lawfulness.

The astral body, which is first and foremost dependent *upon the soul*, is the mediator to the physical body. Whatever happens to the astral body is also definitely suffered by the physical body. The sufferings of the physical body, however, touch the astral body much less, although they are closely connected with each other.

If, for example, some part of the physical body is taken away, let us suppose it is a finger, then the finger of the astral body is not also taken away simultaneously, but it still *remains* as before. That is why a person on earth can actually still feel pain or a pressure periodically at that spot where he no longer possesses a member of his physical body.

Cases of this kind are well enough known, but man never found the proper explanation of it because he lacked the survey.

Thus the elemental beings knot and connect all the souls to their astral bodies, which we shall call the bodies of medium gross matter, while the heavy earth bodies, even when coming into existence, are directly connected with the body of medium gross matter and form and develop accordingly.

It must be reserved until possible later lectures to show the way in which the soul works through this cloak upon the heavy physical body, for to reach such a point much has still to be clarified beforehand in order to presuppose the right understanding.

All this, however, is also pervaded by one *single* law, which is zealously and faithfully fulfilled by the little elemental beings without any deviation. In this they are models for the human spirits, which can and also *shall* learn therefrom, until at last they work hand in hand and without presumption with the little master-builders in this Creation, so that through deeds which lead to complete harmony they will jubilantly and gratefully praise the Wisdom and Love of their Creator!

## A soul wanders...

In the last two lectures I explained the happenings in the planes of medium gross matter, formerly called the astral plane by those who knew about it, which are *directly* connected with men's existence upon earth.

There are many other happenings besides those mentioned therein which also belong to the fields of activity of the elemental beings. But since these types of work only touch men's souls *indirectly*, we do not yet want to speak about them but first to consider what lies nearest at hand: *the human soul itself* in connection with what has already been explained.

Therefore follow me for a short distance along the path upon which a soul must wander after departure from its physical body. Let us, then, observe its first steps.

We are standing in medium gross matter. Before us we see threads of fate of various colours and strengths, of which we talked in the last lectures when considering the activities of the little elemental beings. Let us eliminate everything else this time; for in reality there exists in this region much more, flowing closely together and through each other, than just these threads. Everything swings in the strictest order in accordance with the Laws in Creation. We look neither right nor left, but stay only by these threads.

These threads appear to trail along with only slight movement, showing no particular activity; for they are such as were already spun a long time ago. Suddenly one of them begins to quiver. It vibrates and increases its movement more and more, swells out, deepens its colour, and starts to become more active in every respect... A soul which is connected with this thread has released itself from a physical body. It approaches the place where we are waiting.

This bears a resemblance to a fire hose into which water is suddenly driven. One can accurately observe the path of the oncoming water as it forces its way forward in the hose. It is the *same* process with the threads of fate, which become released when the soul is forced to wander along the path thus marked out for it. The radiation of the spirit within the soul streams ahead of it and animates the thread of its path, even if this thread was only in weak activity up till then. Through this stimulation the tension becomes stronger and pulls the soul more vigorously to the nearest anchorage of this thread.

This place of anchorage abounds with homogeneous species of such threads, which in turn are connected with souls still dwelling upon earth in gross material earth bodies. Yet other souls which have previously left the earth are already at the anchorage, and must now at this place partake of the fruit which ripened through the activity and care of the little elemental beings according to the species of the threads, which work like seed stalks.

The forms of the fruit are of a very definite and uniform nature at this particular place. Let us assume it is a place of envy, which is very widespread upon earth and finds excellent soil among earthmen.

That is why the anchorage for these threads is such an immensely large and many-sided place. Landscape upon landscape, towns and villages, with corresponding activities of every kind.

But envy lies in wait everywhere, arousing repugnance. Everything is permeated by it. Envy has taken on grotesque forms which move about and work in these regions. They work on all the souls drawn to this place in the most decisive and increased way, so that these souls may themselves experience with greater intensity that which they so obtrusively favoured their fellow-men with here on earth.

Let us not occupy ourselves with individual descriptions of this place; for it is of such a thousand fold variety that no firmly given picture would suffice to provide even the shadow

of a conception. But the expression nauseating is a mild and exceedingly glossed-over description of it.

It is to this place that the thread which we observed leads; the thread which we suddenly saw becoming more active, richer in colour, and fresher through the approach of the soul which had left the earth.

As the soul now moves towards the place itself, there also at a very definite spot where the thread is firmly anchored everything gradually becomes more mobile and colourful, let us call it more animated. Everything flares up.

This revival, however, issues quite unconsciously from the *spirit of the soul*; it comes about through the radiation of the spirit, even though this soul, as occurs in most cases, journeys along the path with eyes still closed. It then awakens at its destination, *at this very place*, where everything had just become more lively at its approach through the radiation. For here are the fruits of *that* thread, or perhaps also of various threads connected with *this* very soul, because they were produced by it.

Through this coming to life under the personal radiation of the soul concerned, the spirit living in this soul impresses a certain *personal note of its own* upon its new environment, which was already awaiting it – a note which always differs from that of the other souls. This always makes it, so to speak, a quite distinctive world in itself for each soul, despite the fact that everything is closely interwoven, that the souls molest each other to excess, and that the whole place can be considered as one single, great, uniform plane.

Thus it happens that in spite of the experience which so many souls simultaneously share in this place, and also basically in the same form, each individual soul always experiences and lives through it only according to its very own nature, i.e., each soul receives an entirely different impression of it from the other souls which have to live through the same with it! What is more, this soul will also see things differently from a second or third soul which has the same picture before it.

Picture this to yourself. A soul awakens at such a place. This place or plane possesses a very definite picture as regards its formation and everything that moves therein. Even the happenings there may be called uniform, because they also remain subject to one single great law through which they take effect.

This soul which we are considering now sees the other souls already there or those arriving later experience *the same* which this soul is also forced to experience. However, the soul sees this of itself and of the others in a very definite way which is entirely *its own*, and it also lives through these things correspondingly.

One must not come to the conclusion from this that the other souls too see and experience everything in exactly the same way as does this one soul which we named; for this is *not* the case, but each of these souls sees and experiences things in accordance with its *own personal* nature and quite differently from the others! They see the *happenings* differently, likewise the *colours* and the *landscapes*.

This is because the radiation of the inherent spirit also lends to the environment there the personal expression which belongs only to this particular spirit, and the expression is animated according to *its* nature. In the first moment this may seem very strange to you.

But perhaps I can furnish you with a few similar although much more clumsy illustrations from the heavy terrestrial World of Matter, which will give you an idea towards a better understanding.

Let us take two persons who are visiting a beautiful park. Without a special understanding between them it is seldom that both will designate the same point as being the most beautiful therein, even if they walk through the park side by side. Each will find something different as beautiful for himself. One of them perhaps nothing whatever, but he only says otherwise out of politeness, though he prefers the wild forest to the cultivated park.

This is then simply done away with by saying that the one has no “sense” for what the other declares to be beautiful. This, however, does contain a certain wisdom. The “sensing” of the one simply goes in another direction! Therefore the scene looks different to him from that viewed by his companion.

In the recognition of a picture, in the way as to *how* one sees it, it is the purely *personal sensing* or the direction of the sensing of him who looks at it which is decisive, not the picture or the landscape which is being observed. One person experiences it differently from another.

That which becomes evident here in such a clumsy way is more lively and impressive in the more easily mobile layers of matter. This is why it happens that the same place with the same events calls forth different experiences in the individual souls, depending on *their* own particular natures.

We can delve more deeply into this matter, however.

Let us again take two persons to serve as an example. While they are young a colour is shown to them and they are told it is blue. Thereafter each of them always considers this particular colour he saw as being blue. But this does not prove that both of them also *see* this particular colour *in the same way!* The opposite is the case. In reality each one sees the colour which he calls blue differently from the other. Even here already in the physical body!

Even if you closely examine the physical eyes and find them of an exactly similar quality, this condition is not decisive to define how the colours are seen. The brain also has a say in this, and in addition, as *the main thing*, the *personal nature* of the human *spirit* itself!

Let me try to take the explanation further. Let us stick to blue. You yourselves have thereby quite a definite colour before you which, with all its shades, was once pointed out to you as being blue. And if your fellow-man who was taught likewise will also pick out from all the colours when questioned the same colour which you yourself call blue, it does not prove that he sees the colour which he also calls blue in the same way as you do!

As for him, it is just *this* very particular kind which is blue. You do not know *how* it looks to him in reality. Naturally he will and is bound to regard everything of this colour which he sees, and which is thus designated, as being blue, just as he would also call the white colour black if he had been told it was so from the very beginning. He will always say blue to this one definite colour which you also call blue. *In spite of this, however, he does not see it in the same way as you do!*

It is the same with the tone. A certain tone you hear *is*, for example, an “E” to you. To every person! Because he learned to hear and call it as such. He will also form it in this way with his mouth, but always in accordance with his *own* sensing, which will naturally always bring forth the same tone for what is also considered “E” by you. However, this does not at all mean that he actually *hears* it *in the same way* as you hear it. But in reality he always hears it only in accordance with the nature of *his* spirit, *differently* from his fellow-man.

Now I come to what I wish to explain with this. In Creation the colour *in itself* is *constant* and each one for itself remains unchanged. The same applies to the tone. But *experiencing* of this colour and of the tone *differs with every person* in accordance with his personal nature. That is *not* uniform!

Part of the experiencing is also the seeing, no matter whether gross material with its different species, or ethereal, animistic or spiritual. As it is with the *colour* and the *tone*, so is it also with the *form*.

Each one of you experiences his surroundings in a different way, sees and hears it differently from his neighbour. *You have merely become accustomed to finding uniform designations for things*, but these lack vitality! Thus you have pressed that which is mobile into fixed forms, and you think that with these fixed forms of your language all movement in Creation must also become rigid for you!

This is not so. Each person lives and experiences absolutely according to *his own nature!* Therefore he will someday also see and recognize Paradise in a different way from his fellow-man.

And yet if one of them would design a picture of it as *he* sees it, the others would also immediately recognize and see as being right in the picture *that* which they themselves experienced by Paradise; for they again see the *picture* according to their own nature, and not as the one who reproduced Paradise in the picture sees it.

The thing in itself is always the same, it is only the way in which the human spirits see it which varies. Colour is colour, but it is absorbed in different ways by the human spirits. Tone is tone, and form is form, of a very definite kind in the entire Creation. The various human spirits, however, experience them differently, always according to *their* maturity and *their* nature.

That is how a person can suddenly experience Spring and all the awakening in Nature in an entirely different way to that in which he experienced it in past decades, just as if he had never really observed or “enjoyed” it. This occurs in particular when a man has had to pass through some critical period in his life which enabled him to *mature* inwardly!

Nature and Spring have always been like this; but it is *he* who has changed, and according to *his* maturity he experiences them *differently!*

Everything depends on *him alone*. And thus it is with the entire Creation. *You human beings* change and not Creation! Therefore you could already have Paradise here on earth if *you* were mature for it. Creation can remain the same but you, you and always again only you, must change in order to *see* it differently and therewith to *experience* it differently. For seeing, hearing and feeling belong to experiencing, are part of it.

That is why the *World* is seen and experienced in millions of different ways by human spirits. These differences, however, are put into it by men alone; for Creation itself actually has quite simple basic forms, which always repeat themselves. They are formed, ripen and decay in accordance with *one* uniform law in order to arise anew in these same forms.

Everything which is real is simple, but this simplicity is *experienced* by men in a thousandfold ways.

With this knowledge you now already come nearer to the process of what happens to the soul once it is released from heavy matter on earth. It experiences the so-called beyond *in accordance with its inner nature*; for *it animates the forms* which had to be connected with it *through its personal radiation*, it vitalises them in accordance with its own character, which must spend itself out therein!

The fact that the soul may thereby come to the recognition of whether that which it created for itself was right or wrong, i.e., to the recognition of which paths it took, remains a special act of grace in itself. *One* of those which the Creator wove into *everything*, so that the struggling soul will *always* have lifebelts in every place and at all times in order to rise above the entanglements, and so that with a really good volition and recognition at the right time it need not become lost.

The many-sided indispensable value of everything that exists in Creation always proffers the possibility of ascent again in *some* way or other, even amid the greatest confusion caused by men. Whether or not the soul recognizes and uses these possibilities is *its* affair alone. The lifebelts are there! The soul only needs to reach out for them with a good volition in order to swing itself up on them. —

Having changed inwardly man also sees everything differently, as the popular saying goes. However, this is not a mere saying, but in reality man does then see everything differently. With his inner change his seeing and his hearing change to a certain degree; for it is the *spirit* which sees, hears and feels through the corresponding tools in the various different planes, and not the physical or ethereal eye itself. If the spirit changes then the way of seeing changes with it, and consequently also the way of experiencing. The tools play no part in this whatever; they are merely mediators.

The *radiation of the spirit* absorbs the resistances which it meets and leads them back to the spirit in a sort of reciprocal

action. In this World of heavy Gross Matter the leading back goes through the gross material organs provided for the purpose, such as the eyes, ears and brain. Thereby the brain is the meeting place for the mediations of all the lower organs.

Only later shall we speak about this in more detail.

Today I am only trying in this way to make it clear to you that the nature of the impression of the outer world, i.e., of the surroundings, is dependent upon the particular spirit *itself!* For this reason one and the same form always affects the various spectators differently, even when they have become equally clear as to its beauty. And if one person sees a certain form differently from his fellow-man, then a sketch of the form seen by the one must yield for the other a picture identical with the form itself.

At this point everything must indeed come together again in one; for only the seeing is different, and not the actual form.

Men have created a common name for every form. *Only* the *name* for it is *common*, but not the way in which it is recognized or seen!

In this you have also so far gone wrong in your opinions. But if you now seek to approach the experiencing in the so-called beyond more closely from the viewpoints newly shown to you, much will become clearer to you. You will be able to understand many things more easily when I now continue with my explanations, and so much that is puzzling will become clear.

What has been shown to you also explains why two or more persons with mediumistic abilities see, hear and interpret one and the same thing quite differently, without there being any justification for reproaching them; for they see it according to *their* nature, and therefore always in a different way from the other. The subject being dealt with, however, is only of a very definite type. And only he who has learned to reckon with these happenings through the knowledge of the Laws of the Divine Will in Creation also knows exactly how to find the connection in the various reports and thus to recognize what is right therein, how it *really* is.

But you have sought to press Creation and yourselves into rigid and stationary forms by means of *the language* with which you make yourselves understood. You will never succeed in this; for Creation is *mobile*, as is your inner life also. When you seek to reflect about this, however, you think in the firmly-moulded words of your language!

Just think how foolish this is. The firmly-moulded language never suffices to reproduce correctly anything that is mobile!

Here again the impediment is your intellect, which can *only* work with very definite words, and which is also capable of absorbing only very *definite* words. You can realize from this how you have firmly chained and enslaved yourselves by considering the intellect to be the *highest* for man, whereas it is only useful for and applicable to the heavy gross matter of this earth. And even then only to a limited extent and not for everything. Little by little you recognize how really paltry the intellectuals are.

For this reason I have already called out to you often that you must try to absorb my Word, the Message from out of the Light, in *such a manner* that as you read it you see *pictures* of it before you! For you can understand it only in pictures, not with the paltry words of these earthmen which I am compelled to use in order to tell you about it.

You will *never* learn to understand Creation in words, nor that which is *within* you, because all of that is and must remain *mobile*, whereas *words* press everything into firm and rigid forms only. And that is impossible, an entirely vain effort with and for everything that is mobile. Understanding will not come to you with words!

However, as soon as the soul lays aside the terrestrial heaviness of the physical body it enters the mobility of Creation. It is drawn into the constant surging and seething, and will then experience its surroundings in a much more mobile way. The surroundings often change in the redemptions awaiting every soul, to which the soul is drawn by the animating of all the threads clinging to it.

And all this is again reciprocal in its effects. When the soul withdraws from the physical body, when it strives away from it and lets it fall back, i.e., when it no longer radiates through it, then its radiations, which manifest even more strongly through becoming freer, go in one direction *only* with their full strength towards medium gross matter, the nearest anchorage of the threads of fate.

The threads receive a much greater animation thereby, called forth by the soul's radiation, which is now guided in this one direction. Through this animation their capacity to attract is also intensified, which retroactively strikes the connected soul and attracts it more keenly. All these are automatic, absolutely lawful and thus completely natural happenings, which you can also easily understand if you try to go deeply into it.

Thus the soul is drawn along on its path by threads which it animates through its radiations, which it cannot hold back or avoid. And in this way it goes either towards its purification or towards its destruction. All this happens ever again through the soul itself. The elemental beings only *form* and build in accordance with the Law. The *animation* of the forms and the releasing are brought about by the souls themselves through their radiations. And according to the *nature* of the radiations, the forms which are animated in such a variety of ways then exercise a more or less strong retroactive effect on the soul.

Here, too, the saying becomes valid: As you call it into the wood so it echoes. In this case it *means*: As it radiates into the forms so are they animated and *work* accordingly. A great lawful simplicity and unswerving justice is inherent in all this! —

What I have described to you herein *solely* concerns the *human spirits*, for it is also inherent in the activity of the free will. With the elemental beings it is again different! —

Let these happenings come to life before your eyes for once. Exert yourselves to achieve it, for the effort is worthwhile and the reciprocal action will bring you rich reward. You will thereby again become *knowing* as regards a part of this Creation. —

I have described to you how it has been so far. But now it comes like a lightning flash out of the Light! Divine Power suddenly strikes unexpectedly into the threads of fate of all earthmen, as well as of all the souls which dwell on the planes of Subsequent Creation.

Thus everything now comes to its final release, immediately and unexpectedly! The elemental beings are newly strengthened to unprecedented power. In their activity they turn against all those human beings who through their doings and dealings have compelled them in the past to create ugly forms in obedience to the Law of Creation. Now, however, the Power of God is *above* all human volition in the entire Creation; the Will of God which permits only the pure, the good and the beautiful to be formed, and destroys all else!

The Power of God has already penetrated into Subsequent Creation also in order to work here Itself, and all the elemental beings, supported by this Highest Power, quickly, joyfully and proudly seize the countless meshes of the weaving of all the threads of fate for men in order to guide them jubilantly to their end!

In obedience to the Command of the Light they tear the threads which are only weakly anchored in the spiritual, so that the souls will remain completely severed from the Light when the dark cords, with everything clinging to them, rebound sharply upon their originators!

But the tearing of these threads also proceeds in an absolutely lawful manner, whereby the *nature* of men themselves is decisive; for the elemental beings do nothing arbitrarily.

The Divine Power of the Light now strikes like lightning into all threads! Those threads which bear corresponding similarities to the species striving for the Light, and which through the really strong volition of those attached to them also became strong enough to bear the sudden penetration of this unaccustomed Light-Power, will gain enormous firmness and freshness thereby, so that the human souls attached to

them will by the strong attraction be wrenched upwards from out of the dangers of Darkness, and thus from out of the danger of being dragged along into disintegration also.

However, the weak threads of light produced only by a weak volition cannot stand the sudden and tremendous pressure of Divine Power, but they become singed and are *thereby* severed by the elemental helpers; thus those who were tied to these threads remain a prey to Darkness. The cause of this natural happening is their own lukewarmness, which was incapable of producing threads of sufficient strength and firmness.

Thus you find nothing but justice in every happening! Therefore it is promised that the lukewarm will be spewed out, as it literally happens therewith from the Light.

All the elemental helpers, great and small, now become *free* from having to form what is dark under the compulsion of the evil or false volition of men and in fulfillment of the Law. And simultaneously everything that is animistic is drawn back from this severed Darkness by the Power of the Light, to which they closely attach themselves in jubilant joy so that they may now form and maintain what is willed by the Light. Thereby they become strengthened in new power in order to swing in exultant accord with the entire Creation amid the surging Light of God!

Honor be to God Who sows but Love! Love also in the Law of the annihilation of the Darkness!

---

## Woman and man.

With my lectures on "Substantiality", "The little elemental beings", "In the gross material workshop of the elemental beings", and "A soul wanders" I gave a piece of knowledge about the constant activity in Creation. I explained a small part of your nearer surroundings, and only about that which is very closely connected with you personally. However, I did not just give it so that you might become aware of it, but for the *very* purpose of enabling you to draw benefit from it for your life upon earth, *now*, in the physical body. At the same time also as a blessing for those who are with you and around you.

The *knowledge* of it brings you no advantage; for it is the sacred duty of every human spirit to apply any knowledge for the development in Creation, for the progress and happiness of all those who are connected with him or who simply come into contact with him. *Then* his spirit profits greatly from it, but never otherwise.

The spirit will become free of all repressions, and in the Law of Reciprocal Action it will be uplifted unflinchingly to a height upon which it can perpetually draw powers, powers which are penetrated by the Light, and which must bring blessing where they strike the right soil here upon earth. Thus the knowing one becomes a strong mediator of high Divine Power.

Therefore I want to show you what you could draw from the last lectures for your path on earth, and what you must draw from them; for the Word must not remain without practical application.

In broad outlines I called your attention to a small part of the weaving and working of very definite species of the elemental beings in Creation, and I also showed you that the human spirit has so far walked about in Creation in a completely ignorant manner.

The beings of Substantiality supervise and weave in loyalty in the household of the great Creation, while that which is spiritual is to be considered as a guest journeying therein, a guest who has the duty to adapt himself harmoniously to the order of the great household and to use his best abilities to further and support the ministration of these beings. Thus he should lend a hand in the maintenance of the great work which offers him a dwelling, the possibility to subsist and a home.

To view it aright you must put it *thus*: *The high Substantiality has released the spirit from out of itself or given birth to it, and offers it the possibility of a joyful existence in its great household of Creation!*

Provided, of course, that this spirit does not disturb the harmony of the household; for then it is a disagreeable guest and will be treated accordingly. Then it will never be able to receive and enjoy a really happy existence.

The guest is also naturally obliged not to hamper the household, but to adapt itself to the existing order, and even *to support and to protect* it in return for the hospitality.

Finally, for a better understanding one can also express it differently without altering the actual sense: The great all-embracing Divine Substantiality has divided itself into two parts, into an active part and a passive part, or into a positive part and a negative part.

The passive or negative part is the *finer* part, the more sensitive, gentler part; the active or positive part is the *coarser* and not so sensitive part!

The more sensitive part, i.e., the passive part, is, however, *the stronger* and predominant part, which in reality has a *leading* effect. Through its delicate sensitiveness it is more capable of absorbing and is more responsive to pressure, and consequently qualified to stand and act more securely in the power of the Holy Will of God, this being the highest pressure. Pressure here means the lawful *impressing of the higher species* upon the lower species, but not perhaps some arbitrary act of force, no pressure of a violent and unstable craving for power. —

Therewith you see the great picture before you, coming from above, and it is no longer difficult to comprehend that the after-effects in Creation are always and quite naturally repeated *in the same way*, and are ultimately also to be transmitted to the split-off parts, the human spirits of *Subsequent Creation*, being the effect of one uniform Law which penetrates the entire Creation. Only it is named differently on the various planes and cooling-off stages.

Thus in the grading the human *woman* of Subsequent Creation embodies the more sensitive element of Substantiality as being the negative, passive part, and the man embodies the coarser spiritual as the positive, active part; for the splitting that has once set in is also further repeated in the parts which already split off ever again and continuously, so that one can say that *the entire Creation actually consists only of splittings!* That part which is really stronger, which actually dominates, is at the same time always the more sensitive part; thus among human beings it is *womanhood!* According to her nature it is much easier for her intuitively to perceive the pressure of the Will of God and to obey it. Thereby womanhood has and provides the best connection with the only real Living Power!

This Law of Creation should also be observed by investigators and taken into account by inventors. The part which is really the stronger and more powerful is always the more sensitive, i.e., the negative or passive part. The more sensitive part is really the *deciding* one, while the active part is only the *executing* one!

Therefore in every normal development all that is womanly exercises a strong and solely *uplifting* influence which, in its unconscious beginnings, always swings purely upon the male as soon as the latter attains physical maturity. With physical maturity there simultaneously awakens the great generative sensing, which forms the connection or the bridge for the activity of the *spiritual core* of earthman in the plane of coarse matter, i.e., here on earth.

You already know this from my Message. All this takes place *simultaneously*. One immediately necessitates the other. In this you recognize the enormous help which a human spirit on earth receives through the Laws of Creation! You see the almost indescribable protection and the merciful, scarcely-to-be-overlooked supports provided for ascent. Also the secure *paths* precisely given therein, from which no one can go astray unintentionally. A very evil will indeed is needed, even opposing efforts, when a person tries wantonly to push all these things aside and leave them unheeded. In fact man must even forcibly resist all these automatic aids in order *not* to use them!

In spite of this, however, he does it. I therefore purposely said that in the “unconscious” beginnings of maturity the womanly influence will *always* result in a pure upward swinging to the heights on the part of the male, because it then operates uninfluenced by the decadent intellect and only according to the Laws of God in Creation! Not until the intellect with all its cunning is also awakened in this, and sets to work, does this purity and all the aids with it become dragged into the dirt and debased through evil thinking.

The evil thinking is brought about through the impurity of womanhood, moral corruption, persuasions by false friends, bad examples, and last but not least also through the false trend in art and literature.

However, when once the many bridges to Luminous and Pure Heights are burst and broken down then it is very difficult to find a way back! And yet also in this matter the All-Wise Creator in His Grace gives through the Laws of Creation a thousand possibilities and also further automatic aids, if only a human spirit which has gone astray tries to bring up within itself the really earnest volition towards purity.

The Message already throws sufficient light on all these things, so that it is no longer necessary to give you any further references to it.

Men, you do not at all know what mercies you tread

underfoot ever anew and almost daily, and therefore you likewise do not know how great and ever greater your burden of guilt becomes with every hour, which you must *pay* for in *any case*, for all the Laws of God which rest in Creation and help you also turn against you when you refuse to observe them!

You cannot get around the *necessity* of recognising them. Not one among all the creatures. And the Laws are the *Love* of God, which remained incomprehensible to you because you tried to make something entirely different of it from what it really is.

Learn and recognize! Woman, if you do not awaken to your *real* value in Creation and then act accordingly, the reaction of the great guilt will shatter you before you divine it! And you, man, at last recognize in woman that great help which you need and can never dispense with if you want to swing in the Laws of God. And honor in woman that for which God destined her! The way in which you intuitively feel towards the woman will become the Gate to the Light for you. Never forget this. —

Just meditate deeply upon all these descriptions for once. You will find them confirmed everywhere by your experiences. Always let these words form a basis for your observations. Thereby you will *see* much quite differently, and you will also recognize it more readily than you did in the past. Even in the smallest things the effects are quite evident, not only on earth but in all Creation.

You will now perhaps ask yourselves *why* the human woman is the *more sensitive* part. Therefore I also want to answer this right away:

In the separations or splittings-off the woman forms *the bridge* between Substantiality and Spirituality! Therefore the Primordial Mother also had to come into existence *first*, before further splittings could follow or take place.

And always the woman of the particular separated plane is the bridge between the next higher form of Substantiality and the Spirituality which has emanated from the latter. For this reason woman has still kept within herself a special part of the

higher Substantiality which is closest to her own plane, and man lacks this part.

The popular saying is also again quite right when it noted that woman is *more closely connected with Nature* than is man! Woman, indeed, is actually nearer to Nature in *every* respect. You students of the Message, however, know that the expression connected with Nature means nothing else than being more closely connected with Substantiality!

This is how it is in the great household of Creation! From this you must draw lessons for yourselves and wisely apply them to life upon earth. I will tell you today *how* you can do this. When you neglect to do so, you do *not* submit to the swinging harmony of the household in which you are guests. And if you wish to act differently and go on other paths than those Creation clearly points out to you, then you will never be successful, nor will you receive genuine joy and the peace for which you long so much.

Everything which does not swing in the sense and the Laws of this Creation is bound to fail and collapse; for then it not only loses all support, but it creates for itself opposing currents which are stronger than any human spirit and which in the end will always overpower him and his work.

Therefore adjust yourselves now and at last to the perfection of the harmony of Creation, then you will find peace and success.

In this the woman has failed first and foremost; but the man is also mainly guilty of this. Of course, not by a hair's breadth less the woman on that account, for she had no need at all to adjust herself to him. Each is responsible in this for himself or herself alone. The greatest evil of all herein was again the voluntary subordination to the intellect.

The woman of Subsequent Creation should have formed the bridge from Substantiality to the Spiritual; the bridge from *that* Substantiality from which the spiritual element of Subsequent Creation originally severed itself! Not from that animistic substantiality which, after the separation of the last

remnants of what was spiritual, sank down still further in order to form the bridge to the World of Matter, and to provide the origin for all the animal souls.

In the values of Creation, grading downwards, there thus comes first of all the woman and *then* the man. But the woman of Subsequent Creation has utterly failed therein. She does not stand in *that* place which Creation assigned to and ordained for her.

Woman kept the great part of Substantiality not of the lower animistic kind but of the higher kind as a bridge within herself and thus could and *should* remain accessible to the Will of God as is Substantiality itself, which always swings only in the Will of God. Naturally it was a condition that she kept this part of Substantiality *pure*, pure for perceiving the Divine Will, the Laws in Creation!

Instead she opened this intuitive perception only too quickly and too easily to all the seductive arts of Lucifer. And since through her peculiarity, which lies in the connection to Substantiality in Creation, woman is stronger than the coarser spiritual species of man, and consequently the *decisive* factor, or let us say in the most literal sense, she sets the standard, she very easily dragged man down with her into the depths.

For this reason I have already called out to all womanhood in my Message that she must *take the lead* over man in ascent; for this is her duty, because it is inherent in her capacity! Not just because she thereby redeems the guilt with which she has burdened herself from the very beginning. That in itself is an act of Grace, the retroactive effect of which sets in automatically through the volition for ascent.

The woman of Subsequent Creation *could* fall so deeply despite her attribute of substantiality because, being the *last of her species*, she is *furthest away* from the proximity of God. As a compensation for this, however, she had through that part of the higher Substantiality a strong anchor within herself to which she could cling, and she would indeed have clung to it if it had only been the woman's earnest will to do so. However,

the coarser spiritual element within her wanted it otherwise. And the distance from the proximity of God allowed it to triumph!

Woman *could* fall but she did not *have* to do so! For she had help enough at her side. But by not making use of it she never accepted the help.

In the Millennium, however, she must be *different*. Woman will now change and live only according to the Will of God! She will be purified or perish in the Judgment, for she is now receiving the Power of God on earth directly! Therewith *every* excuse for all womanhood has already fallen away! And every woman who has not yet *entirely* buried the element of substantiality within herself through frivolity and sinfulness *must* intuitively perceive the nearness of God, and therein gather strength for higher power and enormous force! In accordance with the living Laws in Creation! But only those who are still capable of gratefully recognising the pressure of the pure Power of God as such will have this automatic help.

Whoever is *unable* intuitively to perceive this Power any longer, nor wants to do so, will wither away, and will not much longer have the possibility to call herself woman.

You will now, of course, ask yourselves how it can then happen that many a human soul can be incarnated on earth alternately, at one time as a woman and at another as a man. The solution to this is not as difficult as you think; for a woman who is genuine in *every respect* will *never* get into the position of having to be incarnated in the gross material as a man.

Such a happening is again merely one of the evil consequences of the domination of the intellect, strange as this might sound.

The earthwoman who subjugates herself to the intellect, just by doing so represses her *genuine womanliness*. This becomes suppressed because the *delicacy of perception* which it represents is walled in by the cold intellect. The threads of fate are thereby so knotted that such a woman *must* be incarnated as a man the next time, because after this repression and

walling in only the coarser spiritual element prevails, and in accordance with the Laws in Creation the threads simply cannot be knotted otherwise. Such changes in incarnation are then necessary because *everything* that is touched in the spiritual core of man *must* develop. In particular the present unnatural imitation of men by women, which is contrary to the Laws of Creation, as well as the pronounced intellectual work, are bound to have serious consequences for womanhood because they disturb the harmony in Creation!

All such women suppress their genuine womanliness and *must* thereupon be incarnated in male bodies the next time. This in itself would not be so bad, but although the circumstance is such that the soul of the woman through this distortion of her task may well work *cleverly* in the male body, nevertheless this is only physical, and she will never be a truly genuine man in spirit and soul! It is and remains an aberration.

In the distortion of Creation these things have happened *hitherto*, but it will no longer be possible in the Millennium; for then all such souls of women who have walled in their womanliness will be absolutely unable to incarnate on earth but, being useless, they will fall into the category of those masses which are drawn into disintegration during the Judgment. They are all lost unless they remember their task as women in time and work accordingly.

But the reverse is also true. The soul of a man which through weakening has inclined itself too much towards the female species in thought and action, has thereby forced itself through the threads which have thus come into existence to enter a female body at a later incarnation. But here, too, it was just as little possible for such souls to become *genuine* women, because they lack that part of the higher Substantiality which belongs to womanhood.

For this reason we often find on earth men with predominant feminine characteristics and women with predominant masculine qualities! In neither case, however, is the respective

*species* of soul genuine, but it is distorted. In Creation itself they are useless except for the possibility of physical procreation.

In this also the *first resolution* of the spirit-germ is decisive and fundamental for its whole existence; this resolution, however, is not made consciously but lies only in an inner, awakening urge! If this urge leads to a more delicate activity, then the existence of the spirit-germ is determined to be of a female kind; for thereby it keeps or holds a part of the higher Substantiality from which it severs or splits itself off. If it is inclined towards the coarser, active or positive working, then gradually the delicate and finer part of the higher Substantiality entirely severs itself and stays behind; in fact it is automatically cast off, so that for such a spirit-germ the masculine nature has therewith been determined as fundamental.

Thus right at the beginning the guarantee of the one-time free resolution, which is called the free volition, is fulfilled for the spiritual also here.

Woman! How much does this word alone express as a collective or radiating conception in the way of purity, grace and longing for the Luminous Heights!

What was meant to become of you, you earthwoman, something so great, so high, so noble, and *what* have you made of yourself!

You can no longer even perceive that your wish to enjoy admiration and appear desirable in the social trifling you so much favour, and every *word*, even every *glance* therein from the male side, are really insults to your womanly dignity... a besmirching of your God-willed purity!

If there were not still a *few* among you on earth in whose souls the Will of God could yet be anchored, verily it would be better if a movement of the Hand of God would sweep away these caricatures of womanhood from the smooth soil of this glorious Creation.

But for the sake of those few faithful ones the earthwoman,

through the nearness of God, shall be permitted to rise to that height which was already ordained for her from the very beginning!

Blessed are you, mankind, that you may receive this grace although you do *not* deserve it!

In the future, however, strictly observe the laws of God!

The *purity* of earthly woman lies in her *faithfulness*! For *faithfulness is purity*! A woman without faithfulness is unworthy to be called woman! And unfaithful is every woman who playfully trifles with men, either in words or in thoughts! Unfaithful to herself and to her high task in this Creation, therefore also on earth!

*Faithfulness* alone calls forth *all* the virtues in woman. Not one of them will be lacking!

Just as mankind had formed for themselves a one-sided, rigid, thus utterly wrong and narrow conception of chastity, so through their base thinking they have whittled down the high conception of purity to become something clumsy and ridiculous! They made a caricature, an unnatural fetter of it, which is contrary to the Laws in Creation, is utterly wrong, and merely shows the narrow limits of their paltry intellectual thinking.

The purity of the human woman rests solely in her *faithfulness*! Indeed, purity for mankind *is* faithfulness!

In absolutely plain words: Purity among men is *personified* in faithfulness! He who grasps this *aright* will always be able to find and to walk upon the right path therein, and not push aside the Law of Creation through psychic distortions. Therefore you must try and learn to understand it aright.

Purity as such is *Divine*! Therefore *man* himself cannot possess purity in its original form at all; for he is but a small part in Creation and as such is subject to very definite laws. *Purity, however, can lie only in Divine Perfection; it is a part of this Perfection!*

Man cannot therefore just possess purity in the true sense, but he can only *personify* it figuratively in accordance with his

nature, by expressing it in a changed form in faithfulness! Faithfulness is thus the gradation of purity for mankind. Man puts faithfulness in the place of Divine Purity. And above all and in the most noble sense woman does so! Whatever she does is *pure* when it is done in faithfulness! Nor is it otherwise with man. Faithfulness *is* purity for every human being!

Naturally faithfulness must be *genuine*; it must not merely spring from the imagination. Genuine faithfulness can only live in true love, never in passion or phantasy. This again contains a protection and also a standard which serves for self-examination.

Man cannot be divine and must adjust himself to the laws of *his own species*. All else becomes distorted, unnatural and unhealthy, merely the consequence of false opinions, of a conceited craving which strives to draw attention to himself at all costs, or to stand apart from his fellow-men, to be admired or also perhaps to do something special before God. Never does it hold anything genuine and natural, but it is a nonsensical, forceful crippling of the soul which also brings physical detriment. It by no means contains anything great or sublime, but merely shows a grotesque distortion which has a ludicrous effect in Creation.

Man can only come to useful value in Creation when he remains what he is meant to be, and when he tries to bring *his species* to perfection through ennoblement. However, he can only achieve this through swinging in the laws, not when he places himself outside them.

Therefore faithfulness is the *highest virtue* of every woman; it also enables her fully to accomplish her high task in this Creation!

Heed *this* well, ye men:

The high, fine Substantiality, that which is most perceptive and more gentle, *leads the household* in the great Creation! Therewith woman is also appointed to her office, which she is completely capable of fulfilling: To lead the *household* in the earthly existence, to offer a home in the right sense! In the

future it is the task of the woman to make this earth homelike and harmonious, and she can develop this task to artistic heights! Therein lies everything, and upon this everything must be founded if it is to thrive and blossom forth!

The *home* must become a *sanctuary* through the woman! It must become a Temple for the Will of God! *This* contains worship of God when you listen in to His Holy Volition in Creation and when you adjust your life and your activity on earth accordingly.

And also man, whose profession in the past has proved to be based exclusively on slavish subjection to the intellect, will change through the nature of woman when he is forced to recognize in her the hint to what is more noble.

Always look into the household of this Creation and you will know how you have to arrange your life *on earth!*

However, man must not disregard the order of a household in an inconsiderate way, no matter whether through neglectful non-observance or a craving for power; for the activity of the woman in the household is just as important as is that of the man in his profession. It is merely of a different nature, but it cannot be dispensed with. Woman's task in the home swings in the Law of God of which you are urgently reminded by the physical body, in that the latter seeks recreation, rest and nourishment, and last but not least... *harmony among the souls* therein, which refreshes and provides a new incentive and new strength for *all* man's activities!

The balance in this, however, must be absolutely harmonious. For this reason the woman, too, must respect the work of the man, and not think that *her* activity may alone be decisive. The activity of both parts shall be joined *to* each other in an even swinging. The one may not disturb the other.

Thus man must not wilfully upset or confuse the orders in the household, but through being punctual and showing a growing understanding he must even help so that everything can keep its harmonious course.

*This* is what you can and *must* learn from Creation. In the

Millennium you will yet be compelled to do so, otherwise you could never exist therein. And whoever is then not able to continue to exist in it will be eliminated according to the Law of Creation, for he no longer remains worthy of the blessings of Creation.

You know that the Kingdom of the Millennium means *disinheritance* for every man of this Subsequent Creation! It is disinheritance of his free will which had prevailed in it until now. He has failed in his childish-self-willed actions and thoughts and must therefore learn *obedience* or perish. With the moment that the *Will of God* stepped onto the earth, the human will, which had been able to rule until then, became *subject to His Will* according to the Law of Creation! None of this can be changed. This alone is sufficient reason why human will is no longer determinative. This will now manifest quickly in Nature, amongst and within people themselves and in every creature.

*Only for himself* does man still have his free will *to decide*, just as he did until now. The exercise of man's free will lay, and still lies, in the individual freedom of choice. *In the freedom of choice*, exclusively! The *consequences* of all of these decisions made by him always fall back on him, whether he likes it or not; and there is nothing he can do to change this. Except that now they strike him more quickly than before.

Through the disinheritance the essential difference for him between what was and what is now, is that formerly, his actions and volition had an impact on the workings of Subsequent Creation, mostly on the development of this earth. *This is no longer so!* From now on man's volition strikes *only him alone*, with double and triple the severity of before, and also with a speed undreamt of and unknown before now.

He can no longer cause harm to anyone but himself and those of the same nature; for anything else that is not of the same nature remains untouched by it and is subject to God's Will alone which, in Creation, is more powerful than all human volition put together!

And all those who now do not wish to obey the Laws of this Creation are rebels against their home, against their Creator, their God! They will be cast out and destroyed without Mercy by the Laws themselves, which through the increased Power of God now quickly and invincibly turn against everything that destroys the God-Willed harmony.

Therefore pay heed to your home, men, and learn to understand this Subsequent Creation! You *must* become familiar with it and now at last adjust yourselves to the order also here on earth; otherwise you will be lost and must perish.

---

## Distorted souls.

**M**an asks question upon question! As soon as I offer him a new knowledge he immediately comes with new questions, even before he has understood and absorbed everything which I proffered to him.

This is his great mistake! He wants to *hasten* forward. If I were to adjust myself to *him* in this matter he could never accomplish anything; for with his questioning he always remains stationary only at his spot, like a lazy wanderer who seats himself comfortably in the shade of the woods and lets others tell him of his goal, instead of pulling himself together and striding towards the goal.

On his way he himself would then *notice* and *experience* everything he would like to know in answer to the questions which he always allows to arise within himself. He must *move*, otherwise he will not get to the goal!

In my lecture "Woman and man", I said that each person should draw from my words practical applications for his present life on earth! If he wishes to follow this advice then there is nothing else for him to do but to *make* my Word come to life within him just as I give it to him; for I know exactly what man needs for this, and I always arrange my lectures accordingly. He must follow the discourses word for word, for they contain a step-ladder which carefully leads his soul upwards. A path which the soul *is able to* follow if it only will!

His quick questioning, however, shows that he wants to *learn* in his hitherto accustomed intellectual way, and again brushes aside the necessary experiencing. *Learning* is of no avail to the *soul*, for that which has been learned stays behind with the body as soon as the first step is taken away from this earth. The soul takes along only that which has been *experienced!*

I have said this often before, and yet despite this earthman always approaches the Holy Word in the wrong way again! He does not trust me in this and he wants to know better, or he does not like to relinquish his long-accustomed manner of doing things.

There is a wise guidance in the structure of my lectures which he does not understand. Nor is it even necessary for him to recognize it therein as long as he only follows it and does not seek to hurry on ahead in his desire to know, like the superficial readers of a book who read for the sake of the *suspense*, just to fill in free hours with it, and to divert themselves from one-sided thinking about their everyday activity.

While reading they do not see the characters in the book coming to life before them, they pay no attention to the various developments which the persons acting therein have to live through inwardly, they do not perceive the precise consequences arising therefrom, which are continually capable of changing the circumstances and the surroundings. All this they disregard, but they advance by leaps and bounds just to learn quickly about this or that in the action! They derive no profit from the *best* books describing a part of life on earth, from which the reader could draw much for himself if he *experienced* everything within himself aright!

Just as those readers who absolutely seek to devour all books in their zeal without ever recognizing their true purpose and sense, but knowing how to differentiate between only two kinds, the fascinating and the non-fascinating books, so are men who immediately allow questions to arise within themselves again as soon as they read a lecture concerning the knowledge of Creation.

First of all with the greatest effort and expenditure of energy they should seek to *draw* from each lecture what it offers!

If then something does not immediately appear quite clear to them they must not look *ahead* in their seeking, but they *must look back in the Message* in order to delve *therein* and find enlightenment *there*.

And man will *find* it if in his spirit he lets the Message arise in pictures before him! He finds *everything* when he really seeks. Through this necessary seeking, however, the Message becomes continually clearer, stronger and more secure within him. Thus he learns to know it ever better and... to *experience* it! Just *in this way* I force him to do something that he would never do voluntarily owing to his spiritual indolence, which in part still hangs over all men.

Therein lies a guidance which he did not recognize, but which is an invaluable help to him in bringing my Message to life. He thus learns to recognize all that is expressed in the Message, all that it contains, about which he had so far no idea in spite of reading it. He sees *how* he can delve into this Message and makes what appears to him the ever new discovery that indeed he does find *everything* therein; that it was only due to himself, to his weak manner of seeking, when so much escaped his attention previously.

The current and subsequent lectures are an *expansion* of the Message! To understand them, one must also know the Message. It is an integral whole, the specified sequence of which must be retained if it is to become true *knowledge*.

Not *one* passage can be avoided thereby. And this is not asking too much for a knowledge of Creation. Whoever finds this too much will never be able to make an end of it. And without this knowledge ascent or further lingering are impossible, since the time for existing in ignorance thereof is over.

God, your Lord and Creator, now *demand*s it of you! God will withdraw from him who withdraws from this knowledge! And man cannot exist without God's Grace. You have no choice if you wish to continue to be; for God now places His conditions upon His creatures!

Look around you with *undimmed* vision, not dazed by some smug idea, and you will have to recognize how all things which are not in accordance with God's Will must topple and fall, one by one! From now on, there is no power which could

successfully oppose the Laws of God in Creation! Heed these my words, and recognize in current and coming events the hand of God visibly intervening in human affairs! —

I am trying to guide you along the path which is best for you. However, you must go along *with me* with firm steps, and you must not always desire to try and hurry ahead as do the readers whose superficiality I quoted to you as an example.

It is the same, too, with my last lecture about “Woman and man”. From what I know of people they will again have questions arising in their brains before they take the trouble to find an answer from the Message or in the lecture itself, and by no means last *through observation of their fellow-men in the present life on earth!* It is just *in this* that you will discover the most, because in observing it through my Message it offers you abundant confirmation of everything I explained to you! But mark well, only when you regard it from the contents of my Message!

This stipulates that you must stand in the Message aright. If you are able to do so then you can immediately and exactly recognize everything, absolutely everything in your surroundings, and thus you become knowing, you become wise! You will then read in the life on earth just as one reads in a book. It is opened up to you for this purpose through the Message!

Just try it! Your eyes will then be quickly opened, and you will therewith have awakened. Do not shun any trouble to achieve what is so necessary!

It is not that you should only see the faults of your fellow-men in this way! That is not how it is meant, but you shall recognize *life itself* therein with all its consequences and changes, to which my Message is your guide and always will remain as guide in unchangeable faithfulness! Only *in* life or *through* life itself will you recognize all the values of my Message, and not with your pretended knowledge. And through the Message you can in turn view life aright, in such a way as is beneficial for you. Here, too, everything works in a

reciprocal way, and true knowledge only comes through experiencing!

In this way you will soon become *one* with the Message; it becomes life for you, because only from out of this life are you able to recognize it; for it speaks to you of life.

Therefore you must not seek to recognize the value of the Message in the book itself, but through the observation of life! With eager and most careful observation of all that happens around and within yourselves you must contribute to the possibility of *finding* the Message *again* in life, out of which it speaks to you.

*That* is your path to the true recognition of my Words, which must bring you benefit and in the end victory over Darkness! Therewith quite automatically you will receive the Crown of Eternal Life, which is being permitted to exist eternally as a self-conscious being in this Creation. Thereby you can then cooperate in its further development by spreading blessings for the joy and peace of all creatures. —

And after my last lecture there indeed *arose* questions within you again! Questions which are bound to bring a certain oppression even though an answer is easily to be found in the Message; for there it states consolingly that each consequence of a wrong action also contains the possibility of release and thus of redemption, as soon as the human spirit learns from it and recognizes the wrong.

And yet a certain anxiety exists when a person with advanced knowledge says to himself that he is a distorted human soul, if once he was a woman on earth and the next time a man, or vice versa. His soul becomes oppressed.

That, of course, is wrong and once again throwing the baby out with the bathwater, for what lies nearest to this is the recognition that such a person *had* distorted his soul! The distortion does *not* necessarily *still exist*. In reality he has only changed his garment, the body! But in spite of all the changes the *spirit* itself always remained that which it had originally resolved upon at the start of its wanderings through Creation;

for in this respect there is also for him, as with everything in Creation, only *one single* and decisive free resolve to which the spirit then remains bound.

Thus the oppression arises only from a too superficial absorption of the Message; for everyone should know from the Message that just such a change could be of benefit for the one concerned. It does give him the possibility of putting things straight again; it induces him, indeed it helps him in the strongest way to make everything good again. The soul can even *grow strong* through compulsory experiences of this nature.

Now it must not be imagined again that those whose path remained straight have missed something. This is not so. But where a distortion occurred through one's own wrong volition, only *there* can the change mercifully become beneficial in order to strengthen this distorted soul which showed such a weakness, to strengthen it to such an extent that it will not repeat the mistake. With this, of course, the fault has also fallen away from it.

Now look around you for once and observe your fellow-men! You will soon find among them women who bear *masculine* characteristics in their nature. Just today there are more of them than ever. One can say that much that is womanly appears to be absolutely *infected* with this; for it is not difficult to understand that a woman or a girl of this kind has and *must* have something in her nature which is *distorted*, because a woman naturally neither can nor should be a man.

With that, of course, I never mean the body; for this is almost always markedly female with the exception of the hips, which in most such cases are reminiscent of the male through their narrowness, which is therefore actually *not womanly*.

I mention this purposely because I immediately name therewith a distinctive *outward* mark. In most cases the female body harbouring a distorted male soul will have this distinctive mark of the narrow hips inclining towards the male structure, in contradistinction to those whose soul is just beginning to

strive towards the masculine in some way, be it in their opinions or in their activities, causing a propensity through which the threads develop for the next incarnation into a male body.

Of course there are also exceptions through the degeneration of the physical structure of women, which are due to over-breeding, also to one-sided sports or wrong physical activity indulged in by mothers, the consequences of which are transferred to the children.

We have therewith also designated two principal groups which we must keep separate from each other.

The one group of women and girls on earth who already bear a distorted male soul within themselves, and the other group who still harbour female souls but who are striving towards the masculine due to distorted conceptions, which they have either adopted voluntarily or received through wrong public education.

I probably need not specially mention that in the last-named cases not only the female souls themselves have to bear the consequences, but those who gave cause for this will also be woven into the threads of guilt.

However, we do not want to digress too much with this, but remain with the two groups we have found for the present. Let us eliminate those still developing, for they are female souls in the process of distortion whose physical bodies, due to the density and heaviness connected therewith, naturally cannot change any more in this present life on earth. This is reserved for them in their next incarnation.

But they are offered deliverance even from this. When in *this* present life they still pull themselves together and energetically shake off all that is unwomanly! Through this, new threads must immediately form which will incline and pull towards *female* incarnation, while the other threads no longer receive any supply of power.

What is finally decisive, however, is the *exact condition* of the soul *at its departure*, the side towards which it is personally

inclined most strongly. If up till then the female volition, thinking and activity has regained the upper hand within the soul, its radiation at its departure from earth will mainly strive towards *those* threads, and thereby revive *such* as lead towards the womanly; while the others after only a short and light experience in the beyond can then quickly dry up and fall off, providing they were not knotted *too strongly* beforehand.

It is also possible that these wrong threads are already redeemed during the time on earth through a strong womanly volition, and that the soul becomes free from them before it has to pass over. All this depends on the nature and strength of each particular volition, and on whether the soul incarnated on earth has still sufficient time left before its necessary departure to do this; for the Law must be fulfilled in any case, either here on earth or after passing over.

However, for our consideration today let us take *only* those distorted souls which are already incarnated in corresponding physical bodies as a result of this distortion.

First among them the earthly womanhood in which weak masculine souls were incarnated, because in their former lives they deviated too much from the purely male thinking and activity. This already explains that in the case of such earth-women only *weak* male souls can be concerned. Thus it is not at all praiseworthy when a woman, contrary to the feminine nature, seeks to push male characteristics into the foreground or even to show them.

A woman of this kind is not really strong in any direction as regards her thoughts and actions, neither towards the male nor towards the female direction. She would also gain more for herself *in the earthly sense* if she tries to suppress the distortion.

Her experience, however, helps her to change; for she must soon notice that a genuine man never feels happy in her proximity. He finds within himself no understanding for her. Much less can any harmony arise, because genuine manhood is repulsed by everything false, thus also by the masculine

striving of a woman! A marriage between a genuine man and a woman who carries within herself a distorted male soul can only take place on a purely intellectual basis. Genuine harmony will never arise therewith.

Such a woman will in any case be automatically drawn to *those* men who carry within themselves a distorted female soul!

Also the latter are subconsciously not taken seriously by men with undistorted souls. This unconscious intuitive perception and action, however, contains the force of truth, of reality.

However, all the consequences of such instinctive and intuitive actions, which we can describe as *natural*, produce an educational effect on the distorted souls who, through the painful experiences arising from their disappointments, are again bent towards the right direction, at least in many cases. But this does not preclude that later on they may ever again relapse into such or similar faults. Unless they become stronger through these experiences they will remain like reeds swaying in the wind. Much, much, however, can men *now* spare themselves in the future by becoming knowing in these matters. Much suffering and much time! For not until now could a soul become conscious of being distorted.

Just as it is with male souls in women's bodies so it also is with female souls in men's bodies. The same consequences arise for both parts out of one uniform, immutable law.

One thing which I have already mentioned in my lecture today will strike you when observing your surroundings: that strangely enough female souls in men's bodies feel drawn to male souls in women's bodies, and vice versa. Thus here the woman with a stronger intellectual volition and with predominant male characteristics feels in most cases unconsciously drawn to a man with more delicate characteristics.

Therein lies not only an unconscious seeking for balance, but also the great Law of the Attraction of Homogeneous Species is at work here!

The homogeneous species lies *in the distortion of the souls!*

The souls of both are distorted, and through this there exists a real homogeneity, the species of which attract each other in accordance with the Law.

The attraction of the man towards the woman, sexual instinct being excluded from this, is the consequence or the effect of *another* law, and not that of the attraction of homogeneous species. For the sake of a better understanding it is appropriate if at this point I say something about the homogeneous species and explain what is to be understood by that term; for therein lies that which is decisive here.

The attraction of the homogeneous species is not the only kind which seems to have an *attracting* effect. There is a great difference in the process of the apparent attraction. The attraction of homogeneous species, this great Law of Creation, however, is *fundamental* for *everything striving for union* in Creation, no matter how this happens. This great Law as such is the *cause* of all these happenings, brings them about and also regulates them. It floats above everything and works like a motive force in them and through them in the entire weaving of Creation.

Therefore I first want to *separate* the species of attraction according to the character of their actual working, i.e., according to their manifestation, into the genuine *attraction* and into the *desire for a union* of split parts of a definite species, such desire being forcibly brought about by this great Law which overtops and conditions everything!

Consequently there is an *attracting* and a *desiring for union* in the working of Creation! The effects of both processes appear to be the same outwardly. The inner motivating power for this, however, is entirely different.

The *attraction* results from similar species which are complete within themselves, and the *desire for union* arises in the *split* species which continue to strive for the formation of a species again!

The assertion made by people that opposites attract each other but like poles repel each other is therefore only an

*apparent* contradiction of the Law of the Attraction of Homogeneous Species.

In reality, however, this holds no contradiction; for this man-made assertion is valid and correct for the process in which there is the desire by the various split species for union into a definite species of full value. *But only in this!* Only among the complete species themselves does there come into force the actual Law of the Attraction of Homogeneous Species, which in addition calls forth the motivating effect of seeking union to establish a definite species of full value. It swings above and in it.

What man has hitherto recognized through his science are but the small happenings among the *split* species. He has not at all so far discovered the effect and manifestation of the real species, because on earth and in its nearer circle there exist only *split* species, i.e., *small parts* the activities and effects of which he was able to observe.

Thus the female spirit and the male spirit are also nothing but a *split* species each, which in accordance with the Laws of Creation strive towards each other seeking a union, i.e., they are only small parts which by their union in turn furnish but a part to the real *spiritual species!*

What is here stated, however, concerns only the *fundamental feature* between the female and the spiritual; whereas the soul-cloaks and finally the gross material cloaks are much smaller parts of consequent splittings from other species which, according to their particular basic species, produce a desire for union and therein show definite results.

The human being himself, for example, is no definite species, but only a splitting which carries within itself the desire for union.

But his evil thoughts or evil deeds are a definite species which attracts the homogeneous species and is attracted by it! From this you see that from a split species there can issue not only split parts but a complete species.

Let me give another hint here: There lies a very definite and

immutable limitation in the attraction of homogeneous species. This also holds a greater power which is anchored in the basic law. The desire for union on the part of the split species, however, contains a greater freedom of movement granted through weakened power. For this reason *split* species can unite in *various* ways, and thus result in changing effects and forms.

Today I can only give a brief illustration of this because all these points vary a thousand fold and we should find no end. Unless *I* open up for you a *very definite* path in this, which is adapted to your human capacity, you would never be able to receive a really well-rounded picture of the happenings in Creation!

Therefore you must also follow me slowly. You must not try to go one step further before you have inwardly absorbed everything I explained to you correctly and ineffaceably; for otherwise you could and would become helpless on your way despite my guidance. You will derive no benefit from an *unconscious* following.

Reflect that you are following me along a path on which I do not return with you! We climb up a ladder together on which there must be no single rung missing, and thus we go up rung by rung.

If you do not experience each rung in the right way so that they become really familiar to you, it may easily happen that you suddenly lose your support on your way and must fall. If the rungs have not become familiar to you, have not become your own, then someday perhaps you may already stand at a considerable height, but confused; you can no longer continue upwards because you lack the secure support for this beneath your feet. But neither can you go back any more, because the rungs have not become sufficiently familiar for you to do so, and thus you must crash headlong down in a sudden fall.

Do not take such a warning and admonition too lightly, for your entire existence is at stake in these final earthly hours of a Cosmic epoch.

## Man's spirit guide.

**A**fter having considered the nearest surroundings of man upon earth, the basis is now provided also to cast a glance at the guidance standing by his side and helping him.

It is indeed necessary that something should be mentioned about it, for much nonsense is spoken just in and about this matter by those who on the whole believe in a guidance or know something of it, so that sometimes one would like to smile if it were not so sad.

It is sad because through his odd efforts to regard himself at any cost as extremely valuable, the condition of the human spirit is once again clearly demonstrated. I do not think it is still necessary to quote examples in this matter, for each of my listeners has probably at one time or another become acquainted with such persons who talk about their "high" guidance or about the guide himself, whom they declare they clearly perceive and... still they do not act according to his gentle urging.

They do not add the latter, it is true; but just those who talk so much about their guidance, who imagine they are on intimate and companionable terms with it, seldom or only in part act as their guidance would like them to. Mostly they do not act like it at all. This can be rather safely assumed with such people. It is merely a pleasant entertainment for them and nothing else. To some extent they behave like rather spoiled children, giving themselves airs about it, and mainly and above all wanting to indicate how much effort is expended upon them "from above".

Naturally their guide is always a "very high one", wherever they do not prefer to divine in him a beloved and affectionate relative who is very concerned about them. In more than a

thousand cases, however, it is supposed to be Jesus Himself Who comes from the Light in order to warn them or to strengthen them with praise and, what is more, Who if asked about people well known to them sometimes commends such persons or criticises them adversely.

They love to speak of this with respectful awe, but one can easily recognize that this veneration is not meant for the Son of God but for the fact that they are personally deemed worthy of such solicitude. In plain words: It is veneration for themselves!

Anybody who is taken into the confidence of such persons, and they are eager to tell as many people as possible about it, can quickly experience the truth of what I have stated in this matter by meeting such information with doubt! Then such communicative ones show a displeasure which can only issue from an injured vanity!

They are finished with you or "through" with you, as the popular saying so aptly describes the frame of mind of those who have been hurt thereby. They look down upon you only with contempt.

It is also certain that they will then consult their guidance about you as soon as an opportunity arises, and receive the answer, which already they did not expect to be otherwise, with great content; for this guide is at the same time their friend, and if in their opinion he is not the Son of God Himself they look upon him more like an obliging valet in whom they confide everything, because anyway he knows it already, and only awaits opportunities to confirm what they say or give necessary advice.

Go out and investigate, and observe in the right way. Very soon you will find all this confirmed ad nauseam! If just once you are so bold as to call much of it stupid, then you must promptly seek shelter for yourselves unless you want to be stoned. Even if this cannot happen today in the physical sense yet it is certain to be done morally, you can be sure of that.

In a hypocritical pitying manner it then passes from mouth to mouth and from one letter to another, in complete

confidence and with deep earnestness. In an underhand way a grave is dug for you, but with great zeal and such assurance as indicates practice, in order to put a well-deserved end to your depravity and also to your dangerousness.

These people smell the danger in the wind which threatens their credibility. Above all, however, they do not wish to be deprived of opportunities so well adapted to enhance the value of their personality in such a wonderful way. Their "high" guidance proves it, even if their poor fellow-men cannot yet perceive anything of it. And *therefore* they fight for it.

Such, and not otherwise, is the conceit of these people, which becomes clearly evident in the nature of the gossip about their guidance. They want to be *esteemed* for this and not perchance to help their fellow-men in all kindness. They love to be envied and admired.

I would like to lead you to the recognition of the laws *governing* the guidances so that you may also now become knowing in this matter; for the guidances are also not subject to arbitrariness, but are interwoven with you into the threads of your fate!

Everything is subject to reciprocal activity in Creation, and this Law of Reciprocal Action also lies behind the secret of the appointment of your guidances. You find no gap, nowhere a loophole in which it would be possible to insert something that does not unconditionally belong there according to the Law.

After the last lectures you will readily be able to conceive how many threads are coursing around you, which are interwoven with you and you with them. But this is only a small part of it. And there is no gap in the great weaving which envelops you! Nothing can be slipped in or inserted arbitrarily, there is no squeezing in between, neither is it possible to cast anything off or to become free unless it has been worn off, lived to its dead end by you according to the Law.

Nor is it otherwise therefore with your guidance! The guidance you have is firmly linked with you in some way or other, in many cases through the attraction of homogeneous species!

Many a guide can and must through the act of guiding redeem happenings *for himself*, happenings which bind him to the World of heavy Gross Matter. This is new to you, but easy to understand. In as much as a guiding one seeks by his guidance to prevent some earthman from making the same mistakes on earth as he himself committed, although the dweller on earth may be predisposed to do so, the guide *therewith* also redeems his guilt in the World of heavy Matter without having to be specially incarnated on that account. For the effect of his guidance becomes manifest *on earth*, where at one time he had failed, through the protégé he is allowed to guide. In this way the cycle of many a happening also closes for those in the beyond precisely where it must close, without the one in the beyond attached to the threads having to be incarnated on earth once more for this purpose.

It is a simple happening corresponding to the Law, and yet it offers relief to him who guides a man on earth, and benefits are at the same time given to the earthmen.

It is just the Law of Attraction of Homogeneous Species which easily brings very many of those who want to guide into the proximity of *such* earthmen as carry within themselves some similar quality, and who threaten to fall into the same mistakes as the one desirous of guiding them committed himself at one time. And the Law then creates the threads which connect the guide with his protégé.

Consider in all strictness the blessing which lies retroactively in this process for *both* parties, for the guide and for the one he is automatically compelled, or, let us say, mercifully granted to guide through the reciprocal action in the Law of the Attraction of Homogeneous Species!

And there are in addition many other mercies which arise from this *one* process alone, for thereby new threads go out in all directions, which again carry within themselves reciprocal action, and which in some places connected with these two main parties strengthen, uplift, further and redeem. For mercy and love alone are contained in the final effects of *all* the laws

in Creation, which in the end rise upwards and meet in the one great basic Law: The Law of Love!

Indeed love is *everything*! Love is justice and likewise purity! There is no separation between these three. These three are one, and therein again perfection rests. Heed these my words, take them as a key for all happenings in Creation!

It will be absolutely natural for you who know my Message that only that can always find connection with you which lies closest to you, because very definite requirements which permit of no gap must be fulfilled for this purpose.

Thus it is contained in the Law of Creation that a guide wishing to be connected with you can only be so connected *when* he himself is still enveloped by a cloak, i.e., by a body which in its species comes nearest to your own, so that the thread which is to connect you with him can adhere.

From this you must conclude that he can by no means be a "specially high spirit" who guides you; for only he who is still sufficiently close to this earth can guide an earthman, otherwise he would already be too much of a stranger to everything; neither would there be any sense in it nor could it bring you great benefit if there was a gap in this. Both would then fail to understand each other; the guide his protégé, and the latter his guide.

A *single* gap would be bound to render successful guidance impossible. However, there is no gap in the lawfulness of the happenings in Creation! Thus not in this either; for a single gap would cause the great work of Creation itself to collapse completely.

Thus between the guide and the one guided there exists a close reciprocal activity which is conditioned by the Law of Attraction of Homogeneous Species.

If you now wish to ask how it can become possible that at times something comes to the guided one on earth from a higher spiritual place, then these exceptions do not overthrow the Law. You need only remember that the same Law providing you with your direct guide also gives *the latter* a

guide, and provides the latter with one again, and so on. There is only *one* Law forming an *entire chain* which must swing in this Law!

Thus it may happen that a guide from a higher place mediates something to you through this chain, or better, through the threads of this chain. This, however, happens only when very special matters are in question. But the development always takes place within the immovable laws because there are no other ways for it whatever.

It is a ladder which must be taken rung by rung, both upwards and downwards, and there is no other possibility at all. I shall give special explanations about the happenings in connection with mediumistic abilities, but these do not belong here.

For a person on earth the blessing of the Law lies in the fact that he always has a guide, who is precisely acquainted with the faults from which the guided one suffers, because these faults were also the guide's, who has already lived through all the *consequences* thereof.

Therefore the guide is able to advise and help in all cases from his own experience. In this way he can also protect the one he guides from many things, provided that the latter pays close attention to his hidden urging or admonition; for he must not coerce him. He may likewise only help *where* the guided person carries within himself the desire, the yearning or the demand for it, and not otherwise. He must leave the decision of the free will to the earthman, this again being according to the Law, to which the guide himself remains bound; bound by a reciprocal action which can generally let him intuitively perceive something *only when through your volition you urge him to it*.

The threads connecting you with your guidance become taut through the radiation of this your volition. Only through these threads does your guide then intuitively perceive *with* you, and only in *this way* can he also support you. He cannot perhaps turn you, but merely strengthen and support you! It is also a

condition thereby that you must *first* and *seriously* occupy yourselves with it. Do not think it is so easy!

Apart from this great mercy through the possibility of redemption, such processes sometimes hold a punishment as well for the guide, when in such wise *he is also bound to perceive* that in spite of his warning you act differently, just as he himself acted at one time. He thereby experiences within you a repetition which causes him to become sad, but which also strengthens and matures him in his intention never to fail again in such a manner!

However, all the greater is also his joy when he perceives the *success* of his guidance with you. Therewith he is also redeemed from his guilt.

After such a redemption a change takes place in your guidance; for many in the beyond are waiting to be allowed to guide an earthman in order thereby to redeem their own guilt through giving such help. Yet the desire for redemption must naturally *not* be *the motive* for the longing to guide! If it is to redeem him from a guilt then it is necessary that he actually wishes to do it *out of love for his fellow-men* in order to save them from the consequences of erroneous ways on earth! Only when one in the beyond has reached *this point* is he allowed to guide earthmen, and the redemption comes to him as a mercy for his good volition! And this compulsion as well as the later granting of redemption are contained in the final effects of his threads of fate, which adjust themselves to the nature of his radiating volition in the most perfect justice.

You must not forget that beyond the ponderousness of the earth everything is always *experiencing!* The pseudo-cleverness of the intellectual thinking has ceased there. Thus everything is genuine. It does not happen that a human spirit wants to act *in a scheming manner* there, nor can he do so, but he really lives himself to the end in everything! *Without forethought*, exactly as the human spirit is in his particular condition.

The afore-mentioned circumstances pertain to *one* kind of guide. Then there are other kinds which are connected with

you especially strongly, and whom you have perhaps already known on earth. Relationship does not count in this matter. But the earthly *conception* about physical kinship ties many firm threads which then keep you connected for a time.

It is only the *conception* which you yourselves created that links you up and not the relationship, as you have imagined in the past. Your conception of it creates the threads or your love, your hate, and thus it is that departed relatives can also still guide you.

However, they must be capable of guiding; they must be able to have something to *give* you through their own experiencing, for otherwise they cannot guide you. It is not sufficient just to cling to you.

But here again there is much that has a say in it. Thus it is possible that someone on earth has somehow or other brought you up in a wrong way. He thereby remains connected with you. If after his departure he has by some means come to a personal recognition of his faults in this matter then these threads draw him to you. Let us call them threads of *repentance* in this case! Only when he has succeeded in changing you will he too be freed from this, not before.

If, however, you do not lay aside the wrong you learned from him, but transfer it again to your children, then he is thereby bound with you also to these children, and so on, until he at last succeeds in making good his error with one child.

Thus there are many kinds which provide you with guides, all of whom can only serve you for the best as soon as you pay attention to their quiet influence. However, they can *never force* you, but in their activity they mould the "*conscience*" which admonishes and warns you!

Pay heed to this! The activity of the guides forms a part of your conscience, the origin and nature of which you were never able to unravel properly. Now I give you a clue to this today.

As everywhere in this Creation it is always the *specific condition* of the guided human spirit *himself* which alone is decisive for the nature of the guide. The more the spirit of

earthman matures inwardly the higher he himself can rise, even if he is *unconscious* of this on earth, as is nearly always the case.

The plane of the particular guide, who changes with the maturing of the guided human spirit, is at the *limit* of the latter's personal and safe ascent. Through his own experiences the guide will always stand half a step higher than the one whom he is allowed or also compelled to guide. Yet all these cases are so different in nature that it would be wrong for me to name and explain very definite ones. You might become confused through this, because with very definite pictures you only bind yourselves to *fixed* ideas.

For this reason I only make known to you the final effects without describing special species thereof. In this way you remain absolutely free and unbound in your knowledge about it, for later all this will become manifest in so many forms through your own experiences. —

For those who are called into service to the Grail some of the processes are different, but the operative laws can never be circumvented. However, *Divine Providence* intervenes supportively and with greatly increased power. Yet, as stated, not a single law can be circumvented herein. It is only that everything is *accelerated* to such a degree that for many this may border on the miraculous.

In the case of callings, a new strong leader from the Grail steps forth immediately who, in his pure power, affects *invigoratingly all the leaders* connected to the called one; always into that direction which the called one has to take in order to reach the goal of fulfilling his service.

In the maturing upward of a called one, his guides and other escorts who had until now been connected with him, will also be released during his apparent waiting period, so that through this they too may rejoice, and enjoy particularly rich benefits.

Therefore, a long period of preparation is often required for called ones, for in this period of apparent waiting, there occurs

the release from everything that could hinder or prevent a called one from reaching his goal of starting the fulfillment, i.e. his actual service, at the right time.

Unaware of this great and often arduous work by the leaders from the Grail the called ones go through their preparatory period, very often impatiently awaiting the time when the beginning of the actual service is demanded. Indeed they do not even perceive that in this necessary time alone, they must be washed clean of much which would otherwise have taken hundreds of earth years for them to accomplish.

Neither do they perceive that their *souls actually experience* all this and that each release, often manifesting symbolically on earth in the gross-materiality as obstacles, seems to them an unnecessary annoyance; while in fact they should give jubilant thanks because of the easy manner in which earthly struggles or worries remove from them threads of karma which otherwise would have had to strike much harder!

They did not see the unspeakable Love and great help! Instead they complain, often even feeling offended at still having to encounter such things! This is because they do not know of the connections and had expected instead to be instantly laid on a bed of roses, immune to all hardships on earth!

Yet the path to salvation is paved for them by this and they themselves are strengthened. Through impatience in this they only add new stones to the path, which they will have to remove again before they can continue upon the necessary path of their redemption.

I have told you often that in the case of a calling a Light-wall is lowered between you and the threads you have woven until now. The Light-wall protects you from the worst effects of all of the evil kinds of your karmic threads which must be released on an accelerated basis during the time of the preparations. In this necessary acceleration they would come upon you devastatingly if it were not for the shield of the Light-wall.

If you proceed with confidence on the path you have been assigned, in joyful desire for the service which awaits you, then nothing serious will happen to you through the redemptions. If, however, you become weary in your impatience, or if you fail during the time when it seems that you must wait, which in reality is not waiting at all but is on the contrary feverish activity, then the wall of Light again retracts and exposes you to the onslaught of the threads which are urging towards a *quick* resolution, for the acceleration will not be revoked again.

They rush forward in rapid succession and in full force; they strike you hard in their thus accelerated effects which cannot be pressed back onto slower pathways once they were thus prompted by Light. And in this it can crush you depending on the kind of fate that awaited you.

All of this happening is simply the result of the lawful effects which make it appear to be a quick punishment for those who fail, while in fact it is but the accelerated releases of the actual karma, appearing this way only to the uninformed. The person concerned, however, would have been spared the force of that release by the power of the Light if he were striving toward it.

The digression in my explanation concerning the spiritual guidance of the *called ones*, however, has nothing to do with the description of a *normal* process in the course of the laws of this Creation; for the called ones are *exceptions* for whom every step is accelerated through the Divine Power.

Initially we still stay with *general* types of guidance. The respective guide will always be someone who stands *in the very next place* above you on the stepladder, and who is at the same time still connected to you in some way, be it only through a kind of homogeneity.

As soon as a guide can be detached from you a new one immediately approaches you. In many cases they are guides who have suffered from another of your faults, different to that which the previous guide was able to redeem for himself. Thus when one guide is relieved it does not necessarily follow that his successor must be standing on a higher plane.

A higher guide can only approach you when in the meantime *you too* have attained a higher step spiritually; for the guide can never stand below you but often *by your side*. It is only that through his personal experiences he has *come to know more* than *you* have, but by no means is he always an entire step higher. For he must still be able to *understand* you, he must be able intuitively to perceive with you or, better still, be able to *enter* into your intuitive perception. This stipulates that he cannot be far away from you!

And any person possessing a little knowledge about the unswerving lawfulness in Creation will scarcely imagine that he is directly connected with the Son of God Jesus, which is *utterly impossible* for a human spirit!

But just numerous minor mediums lay claim to this privilege without realising that they could not even bear the power of an *approach*! And thousands of self-complacent people allow themselves to be duped and enticed through these errors, because they are agreeable to them and they like to indulge in such self-delusions; for they are flattered by them.

My explanations have nothing to do with the numerous confused gabblings of the minor mediumistic persons. I speak of serious guidances only and not of prattlers, who are also to be found among *those* departed ones *strongly* populating the *nearer surroundings* of this gross material earth. That is another chapter which we shall deal with more closely when the opportunity presents itself.

I am only giving you all that which can be really beneficial and which consequently leads you upwards. The sections which you do not need to become acquainted with more closely we only touch in passing. For the present they do not merit any attention at all.

That men love to busy themselves with just this in particular, and to hear about this most of all, is but a sad sign of the present low spiritual state. Let such enthusiasts go their own way; they only want to entertain themselves or wrap themselves in self-complacent comfort, which can never hold

ascent nor the possibility of it. Prattlers from the beyond merely keep you from serious activity and earnest thinking; for it is their peculiarity, since they also dawdle and fritter away their time instead of, filled with gratitude, using it.

It will be a great horror for them when they must suddenly recognize this and slide downwards as useless for the new time.

To sum it up let me tell you once more:

First of all there are only *helpers*, who through the same kind of *faults* as *yours* were able to become connected with you. Only later, when you no longer have faults to carry about with you, and when you only bear within yourselves the longing for the Luminous Heights, are real *guides* then taken into consideration for you, who are connected to you through the same kind of *qualities* and *virtues* as *yours*.

*These* in truth only lead you upwards by strengthening your virtues, and by affecting you through their great strength like a powerful magnet.

Only *these* are the *guides* whom you can really call guides! It is true that even now they already hold you firmly in a mysterious way, quite unknown to you, because their power penetrates the Universe. But naturally they hold only those who still have *virtues* active within them, virtues which are not buried too deeply.

But you cannot yet speak of these guides here on earth because first of all the *helpers* must develop their activity for you in order to support you, so that you can purify your garments from all the dirt you have drawn upon yourselves. But all the helpers still have to atone *themselves*, which they achieve by helping you.

The true guides, however, are already standing above all these, waiting for you and meanwhile holding you, so that you do not fall and perish during your great purification.

Here, too, everything takes effect through the Law of Attraction of Homogeneous Species! They are the *Primordial Beings*, who work powerfully in this way.

*That* Primordial Being, for instance, who embodies heroism correspondingly affects *all* those subsequently created ones who carry heroism as a virtue within themselves, and so also the other Primordial Beings, each according to his distinctive kind.

The Primordial Being in the Primordial Spiritual Realm always manifests by himself alone for each kind. Through his radiation he then influences *groups* of the same nature which are still in the Primordial Spiritual Sphere but further below. And *groups* of each kind exist even further downwards in Paradise, among the perfected ones of the subsequently created, developed human spirits; and from there the radiations extend ever further downwards into the entire Subsequent Creation, to those with whom they can still find connection.

Thus at the highest place of the Primordial Spiritual Sphere there is for each of the virtues *only one* embodiment who is the *guide* therein for *all* the human spirits of the same nature! And only these few are the *actual* guides, but solely in the most pure and comprehensive objectivity through their radiation, *never personally*.

All this is already clearly stated in the Message.

Man is consequently not even able to designate a Primordial Being as his *personal* guide. It would be wrong. And how much less Jesus, the Son of God.

Become familiar with the fact, you men, that only the really awakened ones can notice something of this great fundamental guidance through their true knowledge, which brings *conviction*. And not everybody who boasts of it is really awakened in his spirit, and thus newly born!

It is much better if you first speak about *helpers*, for they are much closer to you than the guides and bring you great benefit through the immense trouble they take on your behalf! Give them your hand in joy and gratitude and listen to their admonishing, which is part of your conscience!

## Threads of light above you.

You should now put together the lectures I gave during the past weeks about Substantiality and the closest surroundings of earthman, in which I spoke of the undulating and weaving constantly going on around you, and try to regard them as being assembled into *one* picture.

It is really not so difficult. You will be able to recognize their connection with each other and also with yourselves very quickly and easily. In your imagination set everything in motion just as you do with a jigsaw puzzle, first of all as regards the individual effects working in the various directions, *taking them one after another*, and finally in *their combined effects upon each other as a whole*. You will see how clearly in the course of time the picture unfolds and comes alive before you.

In doing so try to see how each evil thought or volition runs through the weaving like a shadow, more or less dimming what is clear and destroying the beauty here and there, whereas clear, good thinking or volition penetrates the threads luminously, spreading beauty and lustre on the paths it follows.

The mechanism will soon become so familiar to you that it will form a support for you which will only permit you to think or desire, and also finally to carry out, that which is good.

Spare no pains in this matter, for you will obtain such rich reward as nobody can reduce. And when you then have the activated picture before you absorb something else in addition, which will give a termination and a frame worthy of the picture.

Instead of a ceiling imagine many luminous, delicate threads hanging above the “weaving around you” like the thinnest and

daintiest of gossamer veils, which sends forth a delightful fragrance that can animate and strengthen in a singular way as soon as one is able to become aware and take notice of it.

Innumerable are these threads, possessing manifold possibilities of application, and ready at any time to lower themselves to *those* places where a longing for them is revealed.

If somewhere in the depths of the mechanism a small spark glows from which a longing, a prayer or a strong desire arises, then the threads of the same species immediately reach out towards this little spark, connect themselves with it magnetically and strengthen it, so that it can become brighter and more luminous and thus quickly push aside all that is more dark and gloomy around it. And when it blazes up brightly it scorches all the spots which still connect *that* strand with darkness or evil on which this spark sought to develop itself. Thus this strand is very quickly freed from all that is holding it down.

But only light, pure wishes or prayers can achieve the connections with the luminous threads continually hanging above the mechanism which always surrounds a human soul or an earthman. Dark wishes never find any support therefrom because they are unable to bring about a connection.

For every earthman the connection with these threads coming from Substantiality takes place through the cloak or body of medium gross matter, which is usually called the astral body. The soul radiates through the astral body according to the nature of each of its emotions. If the emotions of the soul are of a dark nature then the luminous threads hanging in readiness do not find a channel for the help. Only when the emotions are luminous can the astral body radiate *in such a way* that it quite automatically opens itself for *those* threads coming from on high which are of the same nature as the particular emotions of the soul.

Therefore this astral body of medium gross matter is the true entrance and exit gate of the soul. In reality the threads

mentioned are consequently active on the plane of medium gross matter, which is called the astral plane, and work through the latter's mediation according to the nature of its glowing.

Picture all this to yourselves. It is so simple, and yet so dependable and just, that it is never possible for any thought or volition towards what is good to remain without help. It is always made so easy for the human spirit. *Too easy* that with his strange ways he would still respect it according to the value belonging to and inherent in these processes.

In order to avoid a gap in your ability to depict it I will also show you the origin of these threads, otherwise they will remain hanging in the air for you, which is really impossible because everything has, indeed *must* have, a very definite starting point in this Creation, nor could it exist without such.

The threads are the radiations of many substantiate mediators, the activities of which have not yet become very familiar to you, but which mediators were already well known to the ancient peoples.

In the same way as you human spirits on earth should have become the collectors and then the mediators for passing on all the radiations of such human spirits as are more matured than you are and who stand on higher planes in Creation; and just as these in turn carry this out in regard to even higher and more luminous matured human spirits, until ultimately this results in the connection with Paradise, where the completed and perfected ones of the human spirits of this Subsequent Creation dwell in joyous activity, who are likewise in touch through a chain of mediators reaching up to the most perfect ones of the Pure spiritual Beings in the Primordial Spiritual; so is it also in like manner and like sequence with all the substantiate beings helping and working with you in the entire Creation, but in each case they are always half a step higher than you are.

Whatever of this unfolds its activity beside you and below you is also partly connected with you, but not in this manner. Let us first keep to *those* threads which I have mentioned.

The threads are so many-sided that there is nothing in which the earthman, and also the soul already distant from the earth, could not find and receive help, invigoration, comfort and support at the actual moment when his longing or prayer for it has a very definite intensity of genuine volition. Not before, because formed words alone never suffice to bring about the connection, neither does a casual thought.

It must be ardent, genuine and true yearning or desiring without any intellectual scheming, without expecting a reward, without something memorised, which can never really come from the heart or the soul. For the formed *earthly word* binds too strongly for that. The earthly word can only give the direction for the volition of a soul, it can construct a street for the way which the intuitive perception wants to take, yet it must never be meant to represent *everything*.

If man cannot combine both, i.e., the word and his volition, if he must *think* too much about the right forming of his words, then it is better only to pray and to thank, or to petition intuitively *without* words! Then it will surely be undimmed! The firmly formed word blurs much too easily and cramps every intuitive perception.

Much more beautiful is it, and also stronger, if you can drop your words and replace them with *only a picture* arising spiritually before you, into which you can pour intuitive sensing, great and pure! You must try which is easier for you and which does not restrict you.

As soon as you can dispense with earthly words then it is your *soul* which speaks. The soul as it will speak when it has departed from this earth and also from all the planes of gross matter, for then the formed word remains *behind*.

Probably you will again already question within yourselves how it is that souls from the Ethereal World are still able to speak through people with mediumistic abilities, or that mediums *hear* such souls speak, taking this in and passing it on in writing or verbally. I know that many such questions immediately arise within you.

If, however, you search thoroughly in my Message you will already find the answer to all such questions, which are nothing but intellectual doubts. Just absorb *aright* what I tell you, and then you will be able to build up everything for yourselves in *such* a logical way that doubts will no longer arise.

Already long ago I explained to you the activity of the earthly brain, which we divided into the back brain and the frontal brain. The back brain is *impressed by intuitive perceptions*. It only absorbs pictures of the volition of the intuitive perception, and after preparing them accordingly it passes them on to the frontal brain. The frontal brain then takes this up and makes it *more earthly* by remodelling everything again, condensing it according to the frontal brain's respective radiating capacity and transforming it into coarser earthly substance. In this way it is compressed into a still narrower form, more firmly put together, and coined anew for the expression of the earthly word.

Such is the activity of the brains of this earthly cloak of every earthman. The brains form a widely ramified workshop, and are a marvellous mechanism full of the most stirring activity. And since the frontal brain performs the so-called hard labour, i.e., it transforms all the impressions conveyed to it by the back brain into heavier, denser forms, which due to their increased density have much narrower limits in order to become intelligible to earthly understanding; therefore the frontal brain grows weary and needs sleep, whereas the back brain does not need to share this sleep and continues to work on calmly. Even the body itself would not require this sleep, but merely *rest*, repose.

Sleep is solely a necessity of the frontal brain!

However, this too you can easily grasp and understand.

You need only reflect calmly and logically upon everything. Therefore think of it like this: while the body rests you can be awake and do not need to sleep. You have frequently experienced this with yourselves already. But when a rest is

taken by the frontal brain which provides you with the *thinking*, i.e., which brings about the remodelling of the impressions of the intuitive perception into coarser and narrower forms and heavier density; once this brain must rest then of course the thinking also ceases. Naturally you are unable to think anything while the frontal brain is resting.

And here on earth you only designate the ability to think as being awake, and the inability to think as sleep or unconsciousness. Here it is a matter only of the so-called *day-consciousness*, which is exclusively the activity of the frontal brain. The back brain is always awake. —

After this digression let us return again to the language of the souls; with the latter the limited word-forms fall away and only pictures exist which have to form the conception. When the departed souls communicate something to an earthman these pictures of their volition or experiences are impressed upon his back brain, in the same way as his own volition; and according to its nature the back brain absorbs these pictures, properly prepares them and immediately transmits them to the frontal brain which in turn, following its own nature, condenses the pictures received and expresses them in thoughts, words or writing.

For many a mediumistic person this is, of course, as if he actually *heard* these words, this again being due to the activity of the frontal brain, which is also connected with the *hearing* and takes up *its* impressions in order to work them over accordingly.

In *these* cases mentioned here, however, if it concerns the so-called “clairaudience” from the Ethereal World, the frontal brain, during the transformation into greater density, radiates the pictures of the intuitive perception which it received from the back brain also to the hearing in the *reverse* way. The hearing is then induced to vibrate in the word forms while they are being fashioned, because the connection is provided and is likewise always ready to receive.

Due to this *reversed* order of transmission to the gross material ear, it then naturally sounds somewhat different to the mediumistic person, because the nature of the vibrations is different from those producing the gross material sound-waves and striking the ear of the heavy physical body which passes them on to the frontal brain.

For this process of clairaudience, however, the heaviest outer gross material substance of the ear is not taken into consideration, but the finer gross material substance. This you can imagine, because the outer and heaviest material substance is much too coarse and rigid to respond to the more delicate vibrations coming from the brain. Only the finer gross material substance vibrates with it, being of the same nature as the vibrations of the frontal brain.

The admission or reception points of the *outer* ear are effectively hit and moved only by the coarser sound-waves *coming from outside*.

As I think you could easily follow me in these observations I have gone into greater detail in order to make everything fully understandable to you. Such is therefore the process of the mediations through pictures rather than through words as used by the souls in the Ethereal World, in order to form the conception of their volition within earthmen.

Likewise the "hearing" of the souls which have become more luminous and lighter takes place there *from within outwards!* The process is in the *reverse* order to that in the World of Gross Matter, where owing to its density the cloak has a protecting but also hindering effect, which protection is no longer necessary in the Ethereal World.

Thus you can more easily account for the circumstance that souls which do not open themselves *inwardly* are *deaf* there as well as *blind*, for I have already explained in an earlier lecture that the actual seeing is a seeing *of the spirit*.

Many a subtle, especially clever intellectualist, who however may better be described as being bound only to his earthly brain, will perhaps come across *the fact* that the manner of

expression of various departed souls through one and the same medium is *also* very often entirely different, although the same brain is being used as the tool.

This circumstance should really point more *to the fact* that they are still *nevertheless* using a language with word expression in order to make themselves understood, especially since such manifestations also sometimes come in languages of which the medium is totally ignorant, like English or French, Latin, as well as Japanese, Turkish, and many another.

However, this does not stand the test because such manifestations come only from planes that *still belong to the World of Gross Matter*, which indeed comprises many planes. There the process is still similar to that of heavy gross matter on earth.

Only in the *World of Ethereal Matter*, which is of an entirely different nature from that of gross material substance, does the form of expression of the same Laws of Creation change with this species, as I have already pointed out in the Message several times.

You must not make the mistake of wanting to press my Message, which comprises the entire Work of Creation and even goes far beyond this, just as it *is* into your small world of thoughts! You would not get far with it; for I have often crowded immense spaces into one single small sentence in order to make at least a well-rounded basic picture available to your comprehension, a picture which you can use as a support so that you no longer need go astray in aimless confusion in a field which does not even form the smallest part of your closer surroundings. To understand my Message aright you must *assimilate it!*

First of all I want to give you the *connections* only, and not the details! Not until you have firmly grasped the great connection can you also deliberately go into the details without needing to lose the connection.

The higher you come the less it can be framed in words. Finally everything is solely *radiation* for you, and all else ceases.

I especially emphasise *for you*, i.e., for the spirit of earthman, the spirit of Subsequent Creation which has become form! All else, that which is not beneath or beside you, you can never grasp anyway.

That which becomes radiation for you is still visible, tangible and formed to that which is higher than you are. Thus it goes on ever higher, until ultimately only the Divine in the Divine Realm can recognize everything as having form, with the exception of God Himself, Who in His Unsubstantiality cannot be recognized by the Divine Ones either, except by His Sons who are of Himself and not only of His Radiation.

Make this ever again clear to yourselves, and use what I give you *by always assimilating it yourselves, having regard to the present time and to your immediate surroundings!* With your desire for knowledge do not in fantasy climb to *those* heights where after all you could neither work nor recognize anything. However, it is necessary for you to know the *connections* therewith if you want to go *aright* wherever, according to the Law, you have to abide! And it is for this purpose that I want to mediate the *connections* to you!

But now let us return to our threads hanging above the weaving which is in perpetual movement around you. These are the radiations of the substantiate mediators which stand in the great chain coming down from above. Running down from *above*, that you must not forget, for otherwise you lose the connection. I only explained it previously by going upwards because I was then near the *ends* of the threads hanging down, and in order to complete the picture which we allowed to arise before us.

Thus there are different kinds of such threads. They originate in the radiation of the beings concerned, which have absorbed the power passed on by the particular mediator higher than themselves, and pass it on again, whereby a change takes place in this streaming through, and in this way the radiation is adjusted to *that* species which it then next contacts in its leading downwards.

From these threads earthmen can receive increased strength for *every* virtue and for every good volition! At any time; for these threads are *always* suspended above you, ready and waiting for you to express a desire for them.

Just for once I will tell you about *one* kind so that you know how these happenings take place in exact obedience to the Primordial Laws of Creation through the operation of the Laws themselves.

Elizabeth, the Primordial Queen of Womanhood, embraces in Her perfection *all* the virtues and all the qualities.

The radiations corresponding with Her nature proceed from Her further downwards within the Region of the Divine, and also emerge into the Pure spiritual Realm, where there are the many gradations of all the Primordial Beings.

At each stage downwards the radiations are split into various individual species, which are forthwith embodied in the substantiate as reproductions of their origin, i.e., as reproductions of Elizabeth, the point of origin of these radiations. This takes place in the Substantial *and* in the Spiritual, because *both* kinds of radiation emanate from the Primordial Queen and are united in her.

Their forms mould themselves exactly according to the very definite and individual kind of the radiations which they embody and *are* themselves. Therewith naturally various deviations occur in the appearance or in the manifestation of the reproductions, which always clearly and distinctly express *that* which the nature of the particular radiation contains and produces.

Thus finally ever more individual species come into existence, which are visibly personified. The older races called them goddesses and gods because at that time they could see no further, and already imagined the female mediators of these radiations to be the actual points of origin, consequently regarding them as the highest in existence.

Proceeding from the human spirits upwards, which is for once in the reverse direction, we therefore find many such

female intermediaries in the Realms of Substantiality, as well as male ones. Each earthman can receive *everything* through them if he only longs for something of it in purity. Chastity for instance, which is however entirely different from man's conception of it, loyalty, productivity, truthfulness, grace, modesty, diligence (swinging in the Law of Movement), and much else. A female mediator for all that is womanly embodies each single womanly virtue, in the same way as there are also mediators for all that is masculine, such as strength, courage, daring, adroitness, genuine and pure gentlemanliness, and all else which need not be mentioned here, since I merely want to develop a rough picture of it to enable you to understand better what I am giving you today.

From each of these mediators, which became necessary due to the splittings of the single parts, come these threads which I am describing to you. And in turn each of these mediators has very many helpers, which surround him and are active in the radiations. It is a happy surging which is contained in all this activity!

But if you look at the threads *today*, in the *present* time, then a picture of despair opens up before your eyes; for many of these threads, indeed the greater part of them, hang down without finding any connection with earthmen. They flutter about loose, entirely unused, not taken up by the places for which they were intended through the helping love.

Hanging in this way the threads point out *your guilt*, you earthmen, just as so much else already cries out your guilt into Creation and up to the Creator Who has hitherto so showered you with His Love, and Who made it so easy for you in His Holy Laws exactly to recognize the paths which you were meant to take!

How great must be your shame when recognition comes at last! You human beings are just those and the only ones who do not pass on what they receive in the right way, and who in this case also failed completely as mediators, because already for a long time you have been unable to receive as such.

There is not much more to be said about this. All the mediators which are in connection with you, you men, stand sadly in the Realms of Substantiality. Accusingly they hold up the threads which through being used by earthmen were also meant to bring them retroactive currents. These would animate the one-sidedness of the purely outgoing radiations, making them more brilliantly colourful, and thus inducing them to become even more powerful and strongly beneficial and to begin to glow. They are dried up at the ends and withered.

Only those mediators connected with the animals, plants and stones still stand firm and joyful; for their threads of radiation are taut through the alternating rotation of giving and taking, which must be part of this as well, in cheerful obedience to the Law of Creation, and in gratitude that the possibility was given for this through the Infinite Love of God manifesting in it.

Thus due to the wrong thinking you fostered you made a harmful, ugly-looking crack in the picture showing that part of the weaving in Creation which is very closely connected with you. Wherever you go and stand, you men, you spread around you that which is ugly. Wherever your thoughts could reach there you destroyed the harmony and thus the beauty, as well as the lawful possibility to mature. You have much to account for and also to redeem!

---

## Sounds of Christmas swing admonishingly through the universe.

This time, the Christmas bells ring in the beginning of the end of a world epoch! Mankind opens itself to these sounds, comforted in the thought that they are proclaiming the existence of their Savior, who had once come upon the earth and fought for it, and even suffered and died for it.

Men hear *consolation* in these sounds, an inner satisfaction to which they seek to abandon themselves, mistakenly imagining that this contains faith.

However, all of this is no more than a semi-conscious state of human spiritual indolence which will allow them to continue slumbering even into spiritual death, extinguishing them as useless from this Creation.

And many of the earthmen are dozing already! Others are haunted by despair. They are unable to derive joy from the sounds which put those that are materially saturated into a state of blissful satisfaction. For them, these sounds only mean new worries, new grief and new resentments against their fate, which seems to have unjustly neglected and tormented them. Thus resentment slowly rises against their fellowmen who, in their opinion, are better off than they are.

There are also many who, languishing in sickness, quarrel with the inevitability of the providence which robbed them in particular of any pure joy at the festival.

While others, buried in work, think of nothing at all; or at most they think of the profits they strive to receive from their work.

Not one amongst all the people hears in this ringing the

foreboding sound which elementals, trembling with fear, are trying to send out as a last warning before the ominous storm! They announce the abrupt end of a world epoch!

However, men hear none of this, for they are too concerned with themselves. They have no time for anything else, least of all for turning inward and for the self-recognition which is so urgently needed during these hours. Thus they remain closed off to the danger and pay no attention to the onrushing waves, the crushing force of which is already being intuitively sensed by the elementals.

Once the great woe races across the earth there will be no stopping and no going back. The end will have to be suffered to the finish, no matter how bitter its taste.

Listen carefully to the sound of the bells and understand what it is telling you *this time!* There is something in the sound which has never been there before. However, you no longer know how to hear what it tells you. For a long time already you have closed yourselves off from all of the weaving in Creation, and that is why you can no longer perceive any warnings; instead you stagger heedlessly along the deadly abyss where any unsteady step can bring your destruction.

You even keep your eyes shut tightly because you can no longer bear the Light as it blinds you, pains you, instead of refreshing and strengthening you.

You wretched ones, who can therefore no longer receive the Light and can only perceive the darkness as pleasant; go ahead, gather all your strength and listen *inside* you and *around* you, until you discover the threatening danger; otherwise it will burst upon you quite unexpectedly. However, you will need to make haste, for you have only little time left.

Nor will it be made easy for you any longer, for you did not wish to listen to God's warnings. Instead you have kept yourselves shut off from every exhortation from the Light, as soon as you were expected or required finally *to wake up* from your spiritually indolent existence in order to swing spiritually in the Law of Movement!

And this demand *always* comes from the Light, while any lure from the darkness remains aimed at spiritual ease. Discerning the difference in this is not so difficult for you as soon as you have the will for it. And this is exactly what you lack.

Ease is always *against* the Law of Creation, which bears the Will of God and *demand*s movement; because human spiritual ease turns into lethargy, which leads to the sleep of death and therewith to failure in Creation and to extinction. There is *not one* path that would be capable of evading these consequences. Shrewd business acumen is *not the same* as spiritual movement.

It *is* the intent of the darkness for you to be absolutely subjected to these most dire consequences. The call from the Light will *always* demand *liveliness*; for otherwise every human spirit in Creation will be like the swimmer in a stream. If he does not hold the place which he attained by moving constantly, the current will carry him away from it as soon as he tries to rest, and then he has to multiply his efforts just to eventually regain, exhausted, the very position which he could easily have maintained with minimal expenditure of effort. And by regaining the *old* position he has not even made any additional gains, in spite of the strong effort he made.

For once make yourselves spiritually *free* with one single motion! In recognition you will then find the great, unspeakable Love of God everywhere you look. It is lavished upon you, but you do not notice it; you are like spoiled children sitting sullenly at the richly set table, who no longer have a desire for the choice morsels which they can eat every day for as long as they want.

You too are seated at the bountiful table of this Creation and have become accustomed to always only *take* from it unscrupulously! However, there is a big difference between taking in a demanding way and being able to receive in pure volition.

You have had it much too good in Creation. Your freedom to

choose has made you earthmen arrogant. You have toyed with it wantonly and — now, in the end, you have *lost* this game! *Now* you will soon realize what value you held in your hands through the freedom to choose, to which you paid no attention; above all you did not think that something of such *value* also imposes *duties* which lie in the *recognition of the responsibility* for this great endowment.

You have dealt with the freedom to choose carelessly; therefore it must now be taken away from you until you can prove yourselves worthy of receiving it anew. Sadly, in his peculiar way, man can appreciate only *that* which he had to acquire *laboriously*, or only after things he had long been accustomed to are suddenly taken away from him. Only that which has been taken away awakens in him a sense of value!

All of this is embedded in the distortions of his character which gave rise to his arrogance and made him completely forget how to truly *receive*!

This ability to receive is of such inestimable greatness as you are not yet able to comprehend, otherwise you would not continually and disdainfully trample upon it with your feet or ignore it. *It is the essence of what it means to be human!* To *consciously* and truly *receive* the blessings of God, *that* is what makes man human!

But arrogance has to be completely eliminated from this; otherwise there can be no genuine receiving. With conceit in the background it will not be possible. And once someone has learned to truly receive he will also wish to give in the right manner. He therewith fulfills the prevailing basic law of pure love which, light and radiant, courses through Creation triumphantly: that only in giving can there be true receiving!

This process is solidly anchored in every spiritual happening, but its effect reaches down into gross-materiality. Behold the Christmas holiday!

How few are the people who know how to give in the *right manner*, or how to give at all! A sign of the pervasiveness of boundless superficiality; because thoughtless giving is done

superficially, which is but the consequence of the spiritual indolence which many people have acquired. Thus it comes as no surprise when this kind of giving often brings only little joy.

On the other hand, if you give *thoughtfully*, with profound understanding, then giving is mixed with genuine joy and with love, which in turn will richly reward the givers in their giving through the joy they thus awaken, be it only through a right word at the right time!

The one who gives in the right way, however, is *strict* in his choice. For example it would never occur to him to give money to a frivolous person, who would only use it according to his frivolous nature and to the detriment of himself and possibly others; even if it is detrimental only to the health of their physical bodies through smoking, drinking or giving in to other excesses. It would then be *you* who contributed to this through the wrongfully used gift.

It is unbelievable how much sin is often committed *through this* superficiality in giving which is completely lacking in love. It clearly shows that the giver's only concern is to dispose of an annoying custom through fulfillment.

Therefore, give everything you wish to give *thoughtfully* and with love; because this love lets you intuitively sense what is right.

People can recognize their own twisted state most easily *through* the recognition of *how* they stand in Creation. Only purest love for them flourishes from there, even if they consider only the earth itself. With the exception of that which issues from people.

People themselves, however, are no longer capable of *receiving*, but approach all gifts in overbearingly demanding ways with what they have made for themselves: *with money!*

They value it much more than all the things they can buy with it for their own pleasure and that of others. They torment themselves *for the sake of this money*, persecute each other, fight and cheat each other, slander, steal, rob and murder, not for the beauty and the gifts of this Creation, which are offered

them freely and easily; but only for the sake of the money, the possessions they can purchase with it, and also for the sake of the *pleasures* it can provide for them, pleasures which their intellect invented!

In all of this you will find no desire for a calmly- industrious earth life of a man, who in quiet gratitude to God still enjoys the beauty of this Creation! Such a man is sneeringly called an eccentric, someone who has no desire for "higher things". By these higher things, however, men mean everything base which consists of the senseless accumulation of earthly possessions, simply for the sake of possessing them, or in order to provide themselves and perhaps some people close to them with an even more opulent lifestyle. Such a lifestyle definitely brings great spiritual harm in many respects, for affluence *entails obligations*, not only towards earthmen, but also towards the Creator!

Many an earthman would better advance spiritually if he could *not* enjoy his earth life in comfort! As it is with everything, so shall it also be with wealth: in the future it will remain only with *him* who knows how to make use of it in a *God-willed* manner, a manner that will bring blessings. In such hands it will grow continually.

In the Final Judgment this idol will now bring perdition to earthmen, so that through experiencing they will recognize this insane chase for *what it is: unworthy* of humans who have obligations *towards their Creator!*

If two thousand years ago the Holy Word of the Son of God Jesus had been rightly accepted by mankind, everything would have to look different today from what, sadly, it is!

Then as now, humanity lacks in this, as in everything, the will for genuine receiving! It *is no longer able* to receive, because its arrogance has utterly poisoned the soil which is necessary for this. This is also the reason why man perceived the Word in a distorted manner from the very beginning. In the meantime none of this has been improved upon or made whole again; to the contrary, more was changed through man's

volition which knows of only *one* goal: to interpret everything for themselves *so* as to afford the highest benefit with the least effort, and, most of all, without any worry.

In this man does not consider that it was the *Word of God*, not a human word, and that therefore it may not be interpreted according to *man's ideas*. It came to the earth from above and did not originate from this earth.

It is difficult for me to say much about this because it is repulsive to shine light on the confining rigidity with which the great Words of Jesus continue to be taught and interpreted according to human wishes, while these Words are *all-encompassing*.

The people of the earth today, at their low level of true God-recognition, often surpass that which they themselves perceive with horror in the annals of humanity's past eras, much of which was similar, only in a different form. Out of the great meaning of Christ's Words they formed distorted pictures which exactly conform to their spiritual indolence and their addiction to earthly possessions and earthly influence, supporting and greatly facilitating their gratification. Much of the wonderful meaning of Christ's Words has been changed in *this* direction.

Soon, Divine Judgment will be speaking, it will be speaking better and more distinctly than earthly words could. And of everything in existence, only that which was and still is genuine will remain. —

Therefore, the great sacrifice of love which Jesus made when the Star of Bethlehem announced His earthly birth was totally in vain. Already at that time, men were no longer capable of receiving God's inconceivable gift of love truly and in pure humility; for they had already grown too arrogant!

People are spoiled, indeed! That is why they no longer recognize the great love of God in the overabundance of all the gifts of which they are permitted to partake; instead, in their conceit, they become either despotic or obstinate. In either case, they themselves spoil the joy they could have

received by poisoning within themselves any of the pure pleasure that can only result from the genuine ability to receive.

The consequence of this, in turn, is despondency as soon as they are no longer able to draw from abundance. They become anxious, because they do not possess *real* trust in God as is necessary for anyone who will face the storms courageously! No one is a full-fledged captain who has not been able to guide his ship through heavy storms.

If you consider it correctly, trust in God contains *obedience* to God! Obedience to God is something man has forgotten completely. He is *incapable* of it in his delusion of being ruler of this earth. He does not even realize that he has become but a very vile distortion of a true ruler, just as under pressure of his intellect he always created narrowly limited distortions in place of what he was meant to accomplish.

Thus he did not become a wise ruler in Creation, but an ignorant, self-willed despot; and everything that swings and has the volition to swing aright in God's Will, now rises in rebellion against him.

Despotic and obstinate! This characterizes people who rose above the spiritually sluggish masses trudging along. Of course, amongst these spiritually sluggish people there are also those who are intellectually very clever, since intellect and spirit are not to be seen as one and the same. There are very active, intellectually clever ones who *nonetheless* are in a spiritual slumber, or whose *spirit* is solidly *walled in*, constricted in the most severe manner.

On the other hand, there are spiritually strong people who are extremely valuable *for* and *in* Creation without their fellowmen taking gross-material notice. This is because people do not recognize all of the direct, rich fruits from such wonderful radiations as being the consequences of the spiritual nature of these people, whom they do not hold in especially high earthly regard because they have not distinguished themselves through intellectual activity.

Today men do not know how to appreciate what is really of a higher order, because they no longer know what it is. Yet, the spirit would get along very well indeed with the intellect; collaboration on earth *is meant* to be if man is to achieve gross-materially great things as the directly visible outcome. The spirit, however, has to stand *above* the intellect and lead it.

Then the quality of the spirit will give energy and warmth to all activities of the earthly intellect, whereby even the most severe forms of punishment will contain love. Love, which in every punishment sees solely *the path to help* as the only right way according to the all-wise laws of God! Punishment may not be seen only as like-for-like *retaliation* for any kind of guilt. You will find *nothing* in all of Creation of such one-sided design and intent except for the thoughts and actions which the human spirit has made for itself!

You will thus recognize immediately that you do *not* think and act according to *God's Will*, but that here too, you are forced to transform yourselves completely if a Kingdom of God on earth may even be spoken of at all!

There is much work ahead for you. First of all, however, is the great work on *yourselves*, before there can be any upbuilding according to the Will of God which contains within itself blessing and the strength for continued existence for which you are to provide the foundation as firm earthly support.

I know that you are ready to perform the utmost for this! You would labor joyfully day and night without tiring. You would gladly make any sacrifice you could with the eagerness of the really good people that you are. However, to work on yourselves, to work *in yourselves first* is extremely hard for you! It is hard for you because all of your thinking has never been attuned to this.

You are willing to do everything, and make the attempt. But again and again, you slide back into the old habits of human behavior which, coming over thousands of years, burden and inhibit you still today.

You, however, who have absorbed my Message, you stand directly before and already in the process of awakening, and all it takes is a little inner jolt to make yourselves *free* for the great transformation.

However, you are incapable of giving yourselves this decisive jolt which is so easy! In this you are like a very small child in front of a chalk line which it does not wish to cross because it thinks that it cannot do so! And the obstacle in front of you is nothing more than such a chalk line. A chalk line which only confuses you, but which could never constitute the slightest hindrance if it were not for this hesitation on your part, because you are too timid to take this necessary step.

However, you *must* make it happen, and you already have the strength for it within you! The *key* for this is solely the extraordinary and yet so simple mystery of the ability to truly receive, which blossoms only out of genuine humility.

You do not have to learn the least additional thing for this, but *only to remove* what is old and worn out and still clings to you, obstructing the path in front of you.

Become *new in yourselves*, you who want to follow me, then your environment will transform itself through the force emanating and radiating from you! Because only in this *state of being new* will you form a pure passage for the Divine energy which has suffused you for a long time already.

It is only a small, a very small step that you still have to take, but it is unavoidable and *so* important as to change your whole way of thinking and to strengthen it with the most wonderful results!

God awaits you! And He awaited you in Mercy, so that you did not have to collapse in the hour of your need!

This time, a solid and unshakable foundation must be prepared for a new era! A foundation that radiates in crystal clear purity over all of mankind. It must not be allowed to become shallow and distorted again, as happened when Jesus Christ came to the earth and His great sacrifice of Love did not find the soil in mankind capable of receiving

this gift from God in purity!

Use today's remembrance of the birth of the Son of God Jesus on earth as an occasion for taking this last necessary step, for which you already lifted your foot a long time ago. Give yourselves this jolt and step forward courageously. It is not hard to do and you will always remember it gratefully.

Pray to God that this festival may now become the day of *your* renewal for *your* great transformation!

---

## The Primordial Queen.

There has always been vibrating within men a knowledge about the Primordial Queen, Who is also called by some the Primordial Mother or the Queen of Heaven. There are still many other designations for this and, as always, through such a designation men envisage something very definite which approximately corresponds with the particular *designation*, and which in fact exists for the sole purpose of awakening a picture thereof in the spirit.

This picture then naturally always conforms with the particular kind of designation, and not least also strongly with the nature of the character and education of the person who, after hearing the designation, lets the picture arise within himself. However, each *different* designation will also always call forth a different picture. It cannot possibly be otherwise with the human spirit. Through the word of the designation a picture is created, and this picture then successively forms the *conception*. This sequence contains the circle of movement of earthman or, better said, of the human spirit incarnated on earth.

When he has departed from the earth the designation formed by the word, such as is conditional and customary during the stay on earth, also falls away for him, and only the picture remains with him which has then to form the conception.

Thus the earthly word and the picture arising in the spirit are the aids the human spirit uses to form the conception. In the end colour and tone also join these aids in order to complete the conception aright. The higher the human spirit rises in Creation the stronger colour and tone stand forth in their effects; in reality they are not two separate things but only *one*. They only *appear* to man as two, because in his earthly way he is unable to grasp the two of them as one. —

Here on earth in this World of Gross Matter we already find the co-operation of colour and tone in the forming of a conception, although it is only relatively faintly indicated; for often, when forming a conception of a person, the latter's selection of colours for his surroundings and his clothing plays a part which is not to be under-estimated, even if in most cases it is unconscious.

And in conversation the use of a change in tone really underlines something or other that is said; either intentionally or unintentionally it is stressed, and as one quite rightly says: It is "emphasised" in order to evoke a very *special* "impression" through what is spoken. This means nothing else than the intention to foster the right conception within the listener.

In most cases this is also attained, because it is in fact easier for the listener to get a more correct "idea" of what was said through the use of the particular intonation.

Naturally it is no different with the consequences of the various designations about the Primordial Queen. With the designation Primordial Queen an entirely different picture arises than with the designation Primordial Mother. Furthermore, Primordial Queen immediately implies a certain and justified distance, whereas Primordial Mother suggests a more intimate connection.

Moreover, everything about this in particular is always bound to remain only a *shadow-like* conception for man, because with every attempt to arrive at an understanding he can only bring about a tremendous limitation and belittlement of the reality; it does not give him *that* which it really *is*!

In spite of this I will say something about it because otherwise the unhealthy fantasy of men, stimulated and also directed along this course by their conceit, creates ideas of it which again as always seek to push conspicuously into the foreground some kind of importance and value for the spirit of earthman.

In order to render this impossible and to avoid misdirection I will speak about it for once, especially since the ideas already

existing about it also contain much that is wrong.

Too much of men's personal thinking and wishing interferes therewith. And this always produces confusion when it concerns matters which man is utterly unable to think out, but which he can simply receive as a gift from above, provided he has prepared the soil within himself for reception; part of this being *humbleness*, which man of the present day does not possess.

To add still more to the confusion many people also call *the earthly mother of Jesus* the Queen of Heaven, which with some understanding of the strict Primordial Laws of Creation could not have become possible at all, because a human spirit such as was Mary of Nazareth is never able to become the Queen of Heaven!

Nor was Mary of Nazareth ever meant with the inspirations and visions some artists and other men had of the Queen of Heaven with the Crown, if in this matter it really was a question of pictures given from above. In many cases they were but fanciful images of their own.

*Genuine* visions, however, always showed pictures of Elizabeth with the infant Parzival or also without the latter. These were only live pictures shown by guides, but never Elizabeth Herself, Who cannot be seen by men, unless they are especially enabled and gifted, which is not a simple matter.

But these pictures were never understood by men. It is true that they were right, it was the Queen of Heaven, for they mostly directed their longing and their prayers towards Her, but She was not identical with Mary of Nazareth. Here again men have devised something without finding the real and true connection. Unfortunately they always and only make it *as they* themselves think it is, and they imagine it must then also be correct, whereas they are not at all capable of thinking right into the Divine.

In this earthmen have also done much harm through their presumptuous pseudo-knowledge, thereby making the path of Mary of Nazareth unspeakably difficult. It was a torment for

her to be linked so forcibly by earthmen with these wrong paths they have taken.

Such errors again have their quite understandable origin in the greatest plague of the human spirits, in their *spiritual indolence* which is hostile to the Light, and which under the domination of the intellect either makes them conceited earthbound creatures or, if their volition turns to religion, allows them to go to the other extreme, adopting childish ideas which consider anything possible. I explicitly call it *childish* because it is not childlike; for that which is childlike manifests in much healthier forms, whereas that which is conceited and earthbound, as also the childish type of imagination, results only in unhealthy and disjointed piecework.

Therefore today I again call out: *Learn to receive*, men, for not until then can you become really great in this Creation!

*Everything* is contained in this if you want to become happy, knowing. But you *must* comply with it, otherwise you cannot receive anything. And therefore you have so far been denied the enjoyment of the real *treasures* of this Creation.

Today I can explain many things to you who wish to receive if you have absorbed the lecture about "Substantiality" aright, for this enables you to understand me. It had to precede the explanations which will now follow little by little.

I already spoke in the Message of the Primordial Queen of Womanhood, Who bears the name "Elizabeth". The designation Primordial Mother is also quite rightly applied to Her, but man must envisage the right thing if he wishes to come closer to truth in the conception.

The "envisaging" is the picture I spoke about which fashions the aid for forming the conception through the activity of the human spirit.

First of all let my lectures about Substantiality arise before you, in which I said that the feminine, thus also woman, always forms the transition, the bridge, from one step of Creation to the next, both downwards and upwards!

This is a law which begins to operate at *that* step where the ego-consciousness of the individual species of beings becomes capable of manifesting. And this step is *first of all in the Divine*, in the Divine Region!

As you already know, God alone is Unsubstantiate! And so with Him in the origin are His Sons, who although separated from Him, yet remain one with Him.

All else is substantiate. This includes in the first place the Archangels as the pillars of the Throne. These still swing completely and solely in the Will of God, without desiring anything else from within themselves. And as according to the Law of God there is nothing which would not automatically turn into a form in Creation, these angels, which do not activate a will from within themselves but which only swing in the Will of God, wear pinions, thus *wings!*

The wings are the expression of their nature, which has taken on form, and a proof that they swing purely in the Will of God and do not desire anything else. If they were to change in this, as once happened with Lucifer, their wings would automatically become stunted and paralysed and finally fall off altogether, as soon as a swinging in the Will of God no longer exists.

And the more purely they swing in the Will of God the more luminous and pure are also their wings!

Wherever ego-consciousness can arise these wings fall away. From the very outset they are not at all developed with the spirits, because the spiritual must develop *personal* volition and does not swing unconditionally in the Will of God.

Here you need only accustom yourselves to the thought that everything in Creation exists immediately in *actual fact*; and this is all the more pronounced in Substantiality, where personal volition is absolutely out of the question; instead everything therein submits unconditionally to the Will of God.

But a strength which you cannot at all realize lies just in *this* fact. In this giving up or devoting of oneself there is rooted the power to transform also that which you call Nature. In this

regard I will name just one thing for you; because it may be able to help you better understand the explanations by taking you into the animal kingdom here on earth. Even here in this gross- materiality animals have qualities which you cannot emulate and which stem only from the submission to, the yielding to the laws of Creation.

Look at the *camouflage coloring* of the animals that still live freely in nature and are therefore still more closely linked to it! Often you have to search for such animals carefully because they are so difficult to distinguish from the environment in which they live; they are so well adapted to their environment for protection against their enemies.

This came about only through the natural desire these animals bear within them not to be immediately noticed when in danger. This desire, this urge automatically formed the colors of their feathers, fur, or skin in such a way that they became completely adapted to their respective environments, and are therefore hard to distinguish from it. This happens only because the animals move in the law of Creation with ease, without putting up obstacles through wanting-to-know-better; in short, they are still able to *receive*, even if unconsciously, but at least still according to the laws.

Look at the lion, the tiger, or the leopard. Look at the weasel which even changes its color in winter for the snow. Look at certain butterflies, and you will find this conspicuous ability to adapt everywhere.

In the case of domesticated animals, however, everything has atrophied, because they feel secure and have become sluggish in these matters.

*Knowing* of this however, you can achieve much more in these matters, if ... you attune yourselves to the laws of God in this Creation! You would experience miracles upon miracles. But mind you, never according to *your* volition! For therein lies the limitation.

Some of you will say to yourselves, why don't *you* show us, you, who know everything and know the laws! Pave the way

for yourself on earth with this power which you must call your own. To follow you must be pure joy for everyone. Joy, happiness and peace, without hard struggles and worries.

I know that one or the other of you has such a fleeting thought, even if he will afterwards bite his tongue so as not to let the word slip out; he might then have to blame himself for no longer being worthy of receiving the Word of the Message from the Truth.

And he is right to chide himself for having such thoughts; for it would be a repetition of what those did who taunted Jesus on the cross, amongst whom there were some who were *yearning* for a *sign* of the Divine Power, so that they themselves might grow stronger thereby. Indeed there were some of good will amongst the ones calling out: "If you are the Son of God, then help yourself! Come down from the cross!"

It was not only mockery, but also some fearful desire being expressed here and there. And it was human.

It is therefore not surprising if some of my listeners still think in this way today. They forget, however that *I do stand in the Will of God*, and that I do not wish to live according to the will of man, but according to the Will of God alone, which is what I wish to fulfill and nothing else, just as Jesus did. *And this Will of God is conditioned in the Laws of this Creation*. It does not offer spectacles that are outside of these Laws.

I know what the Will of God is, and It will be fulfilled on humanity in *that* moment when the fulfillment is due. Not one second will be missed. Only all of the *paths to that point* are still flexible, i.e., many changes are possible on them. The set anchoring points however, are immovable; they may not be moved even by a hair's breadth.

It is in *this knowledge* that I persevere patiently and always seek to accept what the present brings to me; because afterwards it is always shown that it was necessary, *urgently* necessary, for this present to be experienced in order to achieve *that* clear degree of maturity and *that* degree of firmness of soul of the called ones which are *necessary* and

cannot be avoided. *This is why* it is sometimes still very necessary that they be forged vigorously, made red hot, pounded by worries and struggles, before they can pass the test and reach the goal which makes the required great work for the fulfillment of the task even possible! —

But I want to speak to you about the *Primordial Queen!* I digressed because of your thoughts and so that you can now follow me calmly.

A transformation embracing complete worlds is necessary in the Divine Realm *between* the Archangels and the Eternal Ones who have become conscious of themselves; these latter are called the Elders in the Divine Realm, and have their existence before the steps of the Throne of God, where the Grail Castle is to be found in the Divine Sphere.

You must not envisage this picture too narrowly. Distances of worlds lie between the Archangels and the starting-out point from the Divine Sphere, where the Grail Castle in the Divine is anchored from eternity, thus at the boundary of the *direct* effect of the Radiations of God.

This has nothing to do with the part of the Grail Castle which was revealed to you in pictures as being the highest *in Creation*. For this part known to you through the descriptions is only in the Pure-spiritual, beyond the direct Radiations of God.

The *steps* of the Throne of God *to that point* only, however, already comprise world distances, and in reality also comprise worlds.

With a little reflection you can already gather from the lecture “Woman and Man” that it is necessary that the womanly must definitely be present to act as a bridge at each transformation in Creation. Neither is this law circumvented in the Divine Sphere!

The eternal Elders in the Divine, who were able to become self-conscious at the boundary of the Divine Sphere because the great distance from the immediate proximity of God then permitted it, could not have come into existence, and just as

little could the Archangels have been formed, unless the Primordial Queen representing Primordial Womanhood had stood *in advance* of them as the mediator, as the necessary bridge for this change and forming.

Naturally this has nothing at all to do with the earthly gross material species and thinking. There is nothing personal whatever in it, but it contains much greater happenings than you will probably ever be able to imagine. You must try to follow in this matter as best you can.

Elizabeth is the very foremost *Divine-Substantiate* embodiment of radiation, the form of Pure Divine Love, which as the only one therein took on the most ideal womanly conformation. Thus She is the Primordial conformation of the *radiation* of the Love of God which, as the first, is embodied in Her!

Jesus is the conformation of the living Unsubstantiate Love of God Itself, being a Part out of God.

I only speak of these things in order to prevent any false picture from arising within you, and so that you can at least divine the further connection from that place where, as you go upwards in your comprehension, you must stay behind, if you take as a basis that also further above the laws remain *uniform*, because they do come from there. There they are even much more simplified, because only later on in descending must they also split owing to the many divisions, and therefore appear much more extensive than they really are.

When I say to you that every intuitive perception, every movement up there becomes an event which radiates its effect into all the worlds and sinks down upon milliards of smaller personalities, not to mention upon all that is objective, then the words I am able to give you about this are insufficient; they are only words of your own language, from which you must try to obtain a conception.

It is utterly impossible to express the real greatness of the matter itself in words; it is hardly possible to indicate it.

And *there* the Primordial Queen of womanhood has Her

being and has a throne in the Grail Castle of the Divine part! Only with the rise of Parzival, the part of Imanuel, did She temporarily reside, shrouded, in the highest gardens of the Pure-spiritual part of the castle, close to the border of the Divine.

She has Her origin in the Divine, possesses the great Divine-Substantiality of the Archangels, and in spite of this carries personal ego-consciousness within Herself in a transfigured way. Beside Her are the Archangels, and further downwards the eternal Elders who are called the Old Ones or Elders only because they are eternal, and have therefore always existed from eternity; in the same way as the Grail Castle in the Divine exists as an anchorage of the Radiation of God, which like Him was and is eternal, as also is Elizabeth, the Primordial Queen of Womanhood.

However, She is *virgin!* Although She is called *Primordial Mother* and Parzival calls Her Mother. A Divine Mystery which the human spirit will never understand, it is too far removed from them, and must always remain so. She is in the Divine the Primordial Prototype of all Womanhood, after which the womanhood of the Primordial Beings formed themselves into likenesses.

You who are able to see after your eyes have been opened through the discipleship which gave you a spark of Pure-spirit, are gifted to behold her at times. And now you will understand why you always see the face of Elizabeth shrouded by a more or less dense veil! The veil is *not* in front of the face of the Primordial Queen, but it is placed before *your* spiritual eye, which is not capable of beholding the Divine clearly, but only as if through a veil, at times when it is *meant* to see, and is specially gifted for this.

Only discipleship enables you to receive this gift in the first place, otherwise you would not have this ability at all; for to be a Disciple means to be the youngest in the *Pure-spiritual* kingdom! The youngest on the plane that lies *above* Paradise, standing at the outermost border and serving *as a bride*.

They serve as intermediaries between the Primordial beings and the Paradise of the Subsequently Created ones, where their most perfect ones are permitted to dwell. The Disciples are enabled for this through the Pure-Spiritual spark conferred upon them in their Discipleship. Thus, Disciples are human spirits of Subsequent Creation who are lifted into the Pure-spiritual plane.

There are only a few in relation to the great work that closely joins together all parts of Creation so that the radiations of the Light can flow more freely and much more easily in order now to provide all creatures with the strongest help for standing more firmly in the yearning for the Light and in Its eternal fundamental laws. The laws which underpin foster and maintain the whole structure of Creation, so that evil cannot rise again following the complete destruction of what has been.

A true *Kingdom of God*, which must be preceded by resurrection resulting from the destruction of all the old in accordance with the law!

Then however, all of you are to help in fulfilling the Will of God on earth and to live in accordance with It, as examples for all of mankind that will be permitted to survive the Judgment.

---

## The cycle of radiation.

There is much I have yet to explain about the greater and great substantiate beings, not to mention at present the small helpers of these great ones; for there are so many of the smaller and very small ones as you can hardly imagine.

I could often despair when trying to ponder *how* I shall still explain all this to you in the available words of the language without you thereby losing the comprehensive survey, and above all in such a manner that you nevertheless fully grasp the connections.

The difficulty arises just from the great simplicity which lies in what is to you a boundless diversity; it is difficult because earthman is only capable of clearly overlooking a very definite number of things, and consequently he can never come into a position simultaneously to grasp *everything* as *one whole*, from which simplicity alone results.

Each separation into different parts must render the necessary comprehensive view more difficult for you, since each part is again so great in itself and so closely connected with the others through reciprocal effects, that it is utterly impossible to give a really *self-contained* part, because in this Creation, which in itself is a whole, there is no self-contained part!

And man *cannot* overlook the whole. He will never be able to do so, because he lacks the ability, for he himself is only a part of Creation, and a very small one, who cannot go beyond his own boundaries and naturally not in his understanding either.

I am thus compelled to remain within your boundaries, and in addition I can only give you glimpses into or upon everything which will and must remain inaccessible to you. No amount of effort will be of use here.

However, when at last through the knowledge you resign yourselves to *the fact* that you are not capable of *everything* in Creation, then you will also call *humbleness* your own, and you will be happy about the enlargement to your existing knowledge given to you through my Message.

You will then occupy yourselves with the present and with your immediate surroundings much more thoroughly even than now, because you will learn to know and to use it all much more accurately through all the glimpses which I could give into what is inaccessible to you, but which permit you exactly to recognize the close link with yourselves and with everything existing around you.

And *that* is what you needed in order to understand and make beneficial use of the present, beneficial for your ascent!

These glimpses can bring you *upwards* to the highest border which you will ever be able to reach. It is just because I allow you to glimpse into what is inaccessible to you that you are able to make use of all *that* which is given to you *here*, much of which was still unknown to you.

*Valuable* is this knowledge concerning the *links* between your existence and everything still lying *beyond* that boundary which, owing to the origin of your spirit, will always remain strictly drawn in regard to your ability to understand.

*That* is also what I want to give you with the Message: The knowledge of the connections! The serious seeker and the person with a really honest volition will gain much thereby. You will yet learn to recognize the value of everything; for what men have so far called knowledge is hardly the hundredth part of what they really *could* know. It is true that the limit of the knowledge of mankind in relation to the entire Creation is small, yet in comparison to the existing knowledge it is of a greatness which you can hardly conceive and which verges on the wonderful.

And the glimpses alone into that which is always inaccessible to you will aid you in reaching these highest borders, when I

give you a description of your connections therewith, as well as of the connections of your surroundings. This knowledge will in time give you the possibility to know with *absolute accuracy* the laws within the part formed by your boundaries, which would remain impossible without the help given in describing the connections with what is inaccessible to you.

Try now to understand me in this, and recognize *what* I want to give you! Do not seek to reach beyond the reality in this; for I only want to give you *that* which can *further* and benefit *you within your boundaries*, nothing more. More would be of no avail to mankind!

Therefore do not torment yourselves *therewith*, wishing to make your *knowledge* all *that* which lies in what is inaccessible for you! You will never be able to do this, and I do not speak of it so that you should now turn your knowledge in that direction or worry yourselves with vain attempts really and fully to *grasp* everything! You cannot possibly do so, nor do I give it to you for that reason, but you receive it from me for *the very* purpose of becoming acquainted with all the *connections* leading to you therefrom.

If later on you will always unswervingly base your future investigations and your desires to find upon this knowledge of the connections as giving you the direction, you will rise higher in all your capacities and achieve results in *every* field which must put all that has been obtained so far into the shade.

Thus, men, your *masterpieces are yet to come*, the achievements which you can actually bring about within the boundaries which are set up firmly for you and which you can never cross! In reality, however, these boundaries are set so wide for you that you may rejoice about this, and should only thank God for all the grace He bestows upon you.

Thus you must remain on the basis and soil of all humanity in your thoughts and actions, and in all your duties towards your Creator. Nothing more is demanded of you; for therein lies the highest which you can offer to Him as gratitude, and everything *you* do in this way is also done in *His* honor!

Indeed, it is in the performance of the greatest achievements, of which you as men can and must become masters, that you offer and present your gratitude for the fact that the Creator has *granted you* to achieve such *great things* through His Will in Creation, which holds His Laws.

And with these splendid achievements *you* also simultaneously *honor Him* because the *greatness of your works* at the same time manifests the greatness of *His Grace!* The more you can achieve in Creation from out of Creation the more clearly do you prove how great are the Laws of God therein, and what wealth and blessing they hold for you.

You honor God in the *truest* and *purest* sense *when in joyful activity you make use of* everything Creation offers you; for this you can only do when you know and also understand its Laws and, above all, when you really *act* accordingly! Only *then* does this Creation offer you everything of beauty that it contains. Gladly does it give, and give to help you.

And when you act in this way according to the Laws in Creation you are already changed and entirely different from what you were before. You are then men who are pleasing to God, you are men as they always should have been, you are men according to the Will of God because you *live* His Laws!

No fault can then be found with you any longer. Wherever you maybe you stand in Creation radiatingly and jubilantly, everywhere, whether on earth or in some other plane, and you would no longer do anything other than praise God through the *deed*; for such works resemble a hymn of praise which is living and swings in all the Laws of this Creation.

This is a goal so beautiful, so glorious and yet so easily attainable for you that I exert myself *for that reason* to pave a way there for you through my Message.

You will be *human beings!* Creative human beings to whom everything in Creation flows because you swing with it in the joyfulness of the greatest happiness.

*That* then is human existence to the honor of God! To be happy in the *truest* sense is indeed the greatest thanks which

you can give to God. This, however, does not mean the sham happiness of the lazy ease which lies in slothful rest. That is an intoxicating drug for the spirit, much worse in its effect than opium for your body.

You will attain to this true happiness, however, if you carry the strong volition for it within yourselves! And you shall be the rock for all those who want to save themselves from the tidal wave of base passions and desires which now flow over mankind on earth as the fruit of their past wrong volition when, it is true, they very often had the name of God in their mouths, but they never seriously thought of obeying His Will unless at the same time it coincided with their own.

Try to absorb my volition aright in *that sense* in which I give it to you, and use it for yourselves accordingly; *then* you will have grasped the core which lies at the very root of the purpose of my Message. And only *then* can you derive true benefit from it.

Now let us try to go a step further in the knowledge of the weaving in Creation.

You are now perhaps faced with a new riddle; for it is unlikely that there is one among you who considers some error or contradiction possible in my explanations. Nevertheless you still consider many a thing as unsettled which you could not clearly arrange with a logical structure of thinking, which latter you need to be able to understand.

I spoke of the great Pure-Spiritual guides as embodying the virtues, but I also spoke of the many substantiate intermediaries embodying the same virtues. I characterised both species as having an effect upon men according to their particular types.

In this matter you still lack the right connection which can complete a clear picture for you, without disarranging what you have heard up till now.

Actually all this can be described in a few words, but it is better when I try to demonstrate it pictorially as it really is in its *forms*.

You know that radiations out of the Light divide and separate into very definite sub-species. On each further plane going downwards a new sub-species is ever again severed, i.e., detached in the cooling off. This sub-species could not sever itself under the still existing stronger pressure reaching to this particular boundary, and only through this further cooling off and subsequently reduced pressure or degree of heat was it able to loosen itself and make itself independent.

Every such severance or detachment simultaneously results in a new formation of the severed species into a corresponding substantiate form. This process takes place automatically according to the Law of Creation. Thus there arises a whole chain, with its various additional links of helping and building substantiate beings, of which I have already spoken to you.

And all of them are connected with each other so that one can say: they extend their hands to each other.

This whole chain of the *substantiate beings* stands solely in the Will of God. They are embodiments, transitory points of the radiations *themselves*, which pass on; in their very definite species they are always the *dispensers* in Creation, which by working in this way and *radiating downwards* penetrate the entire Creation.

Thus mark well that the substantiate beings are the *dispensers* of the radiating powers of the Divine Radiation, which in obeying the pressure or in standing *from above downwards* in the pressure *always radiate downwards!*

The counter-current is provided by the embodied spiritual ones, who receive of these radiations and who, in *making use* of them, *radiate* them *upwards!*

*Therein lies the cycle of the radiations throughout Creation!* At first you are somewhat confused and imagine this contains a contradiction, because we also talked about the fact that the Primordial Beings in the Pure-Spiritual Sphere radiate downwards onto all the human spirits, and now you think that two kinds of radiations flow downwards side by side in Creation, the substantiate one and the spiritual one.

This is not in itself wrong, for these two kinds of radiations do stand next to each other, but there is a difference in their activity which brings about the cycle.

You know I spoke about the radiations of the primordially created Pure-Spiritual Beings. However, the effect of *these* radiations is different from those of the primordially created substantiate beings. The radiation of the substantiate beings is *dispensing, passing on, mediating*, as I have emphasised. However, already from the very beginning in my Message I have pointed to the fact that the Primordial Beings in the Pure-Spiritual Sphere, i.e., the Pure-Spiritual Beings in their various kinds, affect mankind *like gigantic magnets*, thus *attracting or sucking*.

Only today can I supplement the picture for you because the other lectures had to precede and prepare the soil for this by way of explanation. In reality we are today merely extending what has been said up till now, of which you probably did not have an absolutely clear idea when the radiations were discussed, in that you imagined them as *always working only in a downwards direction*.

However, of these there are two kinds differing in their effects. It is true that the radiations quite naturally also go downwards with the primordially created Pure-Spiritual Beings, but their *effect is of an upward striving* nature through the power of attraction, which the substantiate beings do not possess; the latter are always and only *dispensing*, i.e., *giving out!*

The spiritual is *demanding* through the capacity of *attracting*. And the so-called free will to decide actually lies anchored solely in this activity of attracting, if you think it over properly for once. What is even more, it also contains the absolutely just distribution of reward or punishment for the one concerned consequent upon his decision!

Think about this quietly for once and picture these happenings to yourselves in all the details. You will suddenly see before you the astounding *simplicity* of the lawfulness in

Creation, the absolute clearness in it, and although the volition of free decision is granted to the spiritual, you also see the latter's subjection to the consequences, which is linked up with it and takes effect in *the same* law.

One *single* ability of the spiritual thus produces something many-sided, in *so* just and *so* logical a way that you must stand amazed before it as soon as you recognize it aright.

It is indeed quite comprehensible that this magnetic ability of the spiritual to attract through the Law of Attraction of Homogeneous Species always attracts only *that* which is *willed* through the ability to decide, and nothing else. And this is done with absolute accuracy, with all the finest shades and tones of good as well as of evil! Just go deeply into this. It is not difficult. *Every* person must be able to develop that-much imaginative power.

In order to counterbalance this ability to attract, the ability to decide is given to the spiritual, but the substantiate does not need this because it always and only dispenses according to its particular inherent species! Naturally the spiritual always attracts only that which corresponds with its particular volition, because each volition immediately seizes the entire spirit, illuminates it or glows through it, only thereby releasing the ability to attract, which develops accordingly.

The spirit is unable to shake off the ability to attract because it possesses this ability or, to express it more clearly, this ability is the property or a part of the spirit's nature. The spirit cannot free itself from this. And as another part belonging to the spiritual nature, the ability to decide is also bestowed upon it as a defining factor, comprising desire or volition, which cannot be shaken off either, because it is meant to have a *helping* effect; for otherwise the spiritual would simply attract *everything* that exists in a wild confusion and could thus become heavily burdened.

However, such mistakes are impossible in Creation through the just Law of the Attraction of Homogeneous Species, which in its effect is like a great incorruptible guardian of order. Now

combine all this, let it come to life in pictures before your eyes, and you will thereby have gained much in your knowledge. You must take pains, however, and if necessary go deeply into it for hours and days, for such a length of time as enables you to grasp it aright. Therewith you are again handed a key which will open many, almost all, gates in Creation for your understanding!

Therefore do not neglect to do so! It is important to do it, for *your* inmost core and *your* real being, as well as your *origin*, are also *spiritual*, and you are thus subject to these abilities of your spirit. Until now we have characterised this process as a law.

In reality, however, this is a simple ability, a component part of the spirit, which works automatically and therefore appears to be a law!

On the whole and strictly speaking there are no real laws in Creation but solely abilities which, corresponding to each particular species, operate automatically and thereby, but only thereby, appear to be immutable laws!

Therefore learn to know your *own* abilities, as well as those of the other parts of Creation, and thus you will know the laws which in reality unite in one *single* law that is many-sided only in its effects. As soon as you have advanced deeply enough with your recognitions it will suddenly fall from your eyes like scales and you will stand shaken before the simplicity of it all!

Through this, as soon as the true knowledge has set in, there finally no longer remain any laws for you at all, for with this knowledge everything becomes only *a wise use of all the abilities*, and therewith you become free; for it is just as though all the laws are fulfilled.

Thus you should now think deeply about it once more and seek to grasp the great pulsating in Creation. Therefore I will repeat:

The substantiate radiates and *gives* in a downwards direction; the Pure-Spiritual also radiates downwards, but instead of giving it has the effect of magnetic attraction!

And since according to their nature the primordially created Pure-Spiritual Beings are to be found at the uppermost border of Creation, and since they also possess the strongest power of attraction in the Spiritual, they operate like enormous magnets upon everything of a spiritual nature, they *hold* it, and allow to stream *upwards* that which corresponds with their nature, i.e., in this and in all cases *always and only the good* fashioned from all the planes; while everything which in turn is fashioned by them is absorbed or drawn off by the Divine, the power of attraction of which is naturally even stronger.

And mark well, always and only the good which is *fashioned* is attracted upwards, i.e., only the *radiations* themselves, which may also be called the result of spiritual activity.

Now you lack the conception of the necessary *fashioning*. This takes place *solely in the volition* of the spiritual, which is inherent in it, and which therefore cannot help always and absolutely willing something, even if it is only through some inner urge.

And in becoming aglow this process or activity, which we can also call *movement* of the volition, attracts from the radiations dispensed by the substantiate that which is homogeneous to the particular kind of volition.

Through the *union* of the radiation of the spiritual volition with the dispensing homogeneous to this volition from the substantiate, each in turn becomes more intensely aglow, and the still closer connection formed through this glowing results in a new radiation of a different and also stronger content.

Therein lies the so-called *fashioning*. And the *radiations thus transformed through the new connection* are attracted from the next *higher* plane and thus uplifted, thereby ascending.

This process is continually repeated from one plane to the next going upwards, unless... the upward striving is held back and cut off through evil volition or spiritual lukewarmness, because only the good volition leads upward.

Lukewarmness is a hindrance because it does not sustain the necessary movement. Stagnation will then occur throughout the entire Creation. And it is in *this* that mankind on earth have so badly sinned, sinned against the entire Creation, and therewith against the Will of God, against the Holy Ghost!

It caused a standstill in the cycle, which only now is again being brought into the correct and even more intensified movement, thus tearing down everything which has opposed and hampered it in the past. —

You must first try to become clear in your minds that it is not the radiations of the spiritual alone which lead upwards of their own accord. These simple personal radiations are already *adapted* to the particular plane in which the spiritual in its human embodiments is to be found in each case; and they are therefore also cooled off correspondingly, and would have to remain constantly on the same plane were it not that the urging volition of the spiritual attracts the dispensing or radiations of the substantiate and then simultaneously transforms them.

This likewise all takes place automatically. A corresponding union of the radiations sets in, which through the spiritual movement of the volition receives a greater degree of heat, thereby offering the possibility to link up with the attraction from the higher plane, which takes effect immediately.

You can imagine the rotary movement of the radiations as somewhat *like* the blood circulation in the human body, which does give an approximate copy of the process in Creation.

The movement of the radiations in Creation is therefore quite simple and yet strictly conditioned: That which is substantiate radiates downwards only and is always and only *dispensing*, giving out. That which is spiritual also radiates downwards of its own accord, but nevertheless has an upward striving effect according to the description which I just gave you.

Of course this again concerns only the *radiations* themselves and not perhaps the spirits which have become *personal*, the human spirits. These find their way upwards or downwards

through or in the Law of Gravitation, which in reality is closely linked with the Law of Attraction of Homogeneous Species; these two laws having the same effect as if they were one.

If the striving, thus the volition and desiring of a human spirit, goes upwards then the radiations fashioned by him, which are always attracted from above, form *the way*, the road upward for him personally, on which he strides upward in an absolutely lawful manner. He thereby also attracts the radiations from the substantiate, situated higher and ever higher, which help him to ascend like ropes or threads; for in fashioning these his spiritual form itself receives ever more heat which permits him to ascend, to become constantly lighter and more luminous, more glowed through.

Despite the close connection of all these processes there are always numerous special secondary happenings in addition which, however, remain conditioned by and interwoven with each other, in that one results from the other.

If I do not want to make it more difficult for you to comprehend this, however, I must not touch upon the secondary happenings yet. But what I have said today is already sufficient to offer you a firm support to advance further and for later personal investigation.

That which is substantiate stands always and only in the Will of God *dispensing*, whereas everything that is spiritual, by its ability to attract through the volition, always remained actually demanding and taking only.

As I have already said, being spiritual man always and only takes as a guest what has already been laid upon the table of this Creation by the substantiate beings. Unfortunately he takes it in a wilful and demanding manner, instead of showing joyful gratitude and looking reverently up to Him Who proffers all this. And *in this* he must now change, otherwise he will be dismissed from the Table of the Lord, which indeed constitutes Creation, by someone stronger who has now positioned himself at this Table, i.e., the Will of God Itself whom all substantiate beings serve jubilantly.

Here I want to touch upon one more point from the lecture "Woman and Man", which could probably bring thoughts to many among you which are not correct. In the stories of Creation in various nations mention is frequently made that man and woman came into existence *at the same time*; in some, however, that man came into existence *first*.

The representations of this, given in simple pictures, cannot at all be taken into consideration here, because they were given according to the stages of development of the various nations and of the times, whereas we *here* are dealing with the *strictly lawful and real knowledge of Creation*; yet despite this you do not find any contradiction therein because through the lawful happenings described to you so far you know that naturally the coarser, purely masculine, the positive part, had to be ejected or had to sever itself first from that which is substantiate before the purely feminine part was able to remain!

From this it would be possible to describe man as having come into existence first, while it can be stated with equal justification that both came into existence *at the same time*. *Both* of these former pictorial descriptions may be considered as correctly described in the actual, great and *objective* happening; for the finer spiritual-feminine or the spiritual woman can in turn come into existence only when the coarse spiritual-masculine has severed itself from that which is substantiate, not otherwise.

Therefore considered from *all* sides it is *correctly* expressed in the representations of those times, despite the various ways of illustrating it; for the descriptions about Creation are not concerned with the development in coarsest matter, *but with the beginning of Creation in general*. This started in the Realm of the Pure-Spiritual, at the uppermost point of Creation, from which in sinking downwards it continually developed further.

It is the same with these descriptions as with everything earthmen do, nor was it any different with the description of the happening about Parzival and the Grail Castle: People who

become deeply absorbed spiritually are presented with inspirations which they are unable to recognize clearly. In view of this the transmission is already distorted, and they then simply force these inspirations into their particular surroundings, as well as into the happenings, habits and customs known to them on earth. In this process the intellect in particular does not neglect to contribute its part, which is not so small either. I probably do not need especially to emphasise the fact that this is not particularly helpful, nor can it have an enlightening effect, but is bound to cause distortion in matters which the earthly intellect is absolutely unable to grasp.

And thus all such descriptions always and only came into existence in slightly or seriously distorted renderings, to which you as now-knowing ones must never cling too firmly, however. Otherwise you will soon be left with what is distorted and finally must perish together with it, because for the Millennium everything must be made straight if it is to endure.

Nor do the ancient descriptions, which are now already in great need of a more exact delineation for the new time, offer any contradiction to the fact that the womanly always forms and remains the bridge to the next higher step in Creation, and being the passive part is the dispensing and stronger one; this is conditioned and brought about through its special nature, which still retains and carries within itself part of the next higher step of substantiality.

But since that which is substantiate is always and only dispensing and not attracting, it could not prevent the downfall of the earthly woman's will in spite of its higher nature. Indeed it is only prepared to give where the demand for it arises.

Now strive to grasp my Message aright and to act accordingly.

I do not intend to place everything before you in a comfortable way after I have severed it into tiny pieces; for you, too, must bestir yourselves and add *whatever* lies in your strength.

---

I know precisely the limits of everything which the human spirits on earth are able to think, to perceive intuitively and to do, better even than you yourselves, and from the readers and listeners of my Message and of my explanations I expect *the highest* which the man of Subsequent Creation is able to achieve if they really want to follow me; for this is the right way which will benefit you according to the Will of God, Who demands movement and swinging along in the cycle of all the radiations penetrating Creation.

Therefore swing yourselves upward for this! What is possible to receive within the limits of *your* understanding that *you* must do. I leave it entirely to you and only give you the direction for it, laying foundations upon which you can and must now continue to build.

If you indolently want to refrain from *personal* work in these matters, and if you are only satisfied with absorbing within yourselves the sense of the Message without also *applying* it aright for further building, then you will derive no benefit from the Word; for its *real* value must thereby remain closed to you like a book with seven seals.

Only through your *own* movement will the Message open itself up for you, and pour rich blessings upon you. Therefore become *active* in spirit! With my Word I give you the *impulse* to do so!

I do not stand amongst you, men, as a servant, wishing to do *your* work for you so that you can rest, but I show you the path that *you have to walk*, if you want to be happy and I *lead* you!

---

## Shun the Pharisees!

**B**earers of the Grail-Cross, shun the Pharisees who will now wish to approach you; for they shall have no help in the Word!

The designation Pharisee has become a conception containing nothing good, but signifying a combination of spiritual arrogance, hypocrisy, cunning and occasionally also malice.

Persons deserving this designation can be found everywhere today, in all countries and in every walk of life. This has nothing whatever to do with race or nation, and there are many more of them now than there ever were before. Every profession has its Pharisees, but they can still mostly be found where they could formerly be encountered at any time in great numbers: among the servants and representatives of the temples and churches.

And, strangely enough: wherever some messenger of the Light had to proclaim the Truth according to the Will of God, he was attacked, defiled, slandered and persecuted. This was done first and foremost by the representatives and servants of the prevailing religious dogmas who pretended to serve God, and by those who even had the effrontery to profess themselves as representatives of the Divine Will.

This has always been the case from the most primitive medicine man and sorcerer up to the highest priests. Without exception they always felt themselves menaced by the Truth, and thus either carried on a veiled agitation or quite openly made mischief against every person who was ordained, mercifully granted or sent by God to bring Light to these earthmen.

No denial of this irrefutable fact is of any avail, nor any perversion or glossing over, for *world history gives proof of it!*

Clearly and distinctly it testifies to the ineffaceable fact that it has never been otherwise; among the many instances that have occurred there has not been a single exception. Always and ever again it was just the priests who were the most definite adversaries of the Light and thus enemies of God, Whose Will they did not want to observe. Instead they fought against the Will of God, and opposed it with their own volition.

Of what use was it when recognition sometimes came *afterwards*, but often not until it had become too late for many things.

On the contrary, this only proves that it was just the priests who were never in the position to recognize the Truth and the Light in time.

Recognition lay always and only with a few among the people, but not with the priests or those who made a pretence of recognising God purely on account of their profession.

And these few among the people clung to it firmly until later on the priests also considered it wiser to go along in *their* way so as not to lose the upper hand. The servants and representatives of a religion have never voluntarily and joyfully harboured a messenger from God. It is characteristic that neither such messengers nor the Son of God could issue from their ranks! And, strange to say, no person thinks about the fact that God Himself always declared His *Judgment* in these matters and therewith *clearly* manifested His Will.

Experiences over many thousands of years confirm ever and always again that the priests were never capable of recognising Divine Truth, but in their conceit they always closed themselves to It, sometimes also because of fear or lazy comfort. This they also proved ever anew, because they *constantly* fought against *every* messenger from God with the vilest methods a man can use. There can be no dispute about it whatever; for past times themselves offer the most irrefutable evidence!

In every way, even with the Son of God. Nor was it love of humanity which drove the priests to this, but professional envy

and nothing else! It was the Truth which *disturbed* them, because they have never yet faithfully taught the Truth which they themselves did not know It.

And, humanlike, they were much too weak to admit that there were many things they did not yet know, and that therefore they spread wrong opinions in some matters; nor were they capable of admitting this, for fear their authority might begin to wane.

Just delve into the history of the world and investigate it seriously, and you will find that it was never otherwise. But nobody has so far wanted to learn a lesson from it. Nobody takes it as a warning, because although it always remains basically the same this is continually appearing in a new form. Therefore, due once more to indolence, man imagines that just in *his* time it is different after all. But it is still the same today as it used to be. There is *no difference* now to what it was in the past. Nothing has changed therein, but if anything it has become worse!

Go and ask earnest people who serve the church, but who are nevertheless still courageous enough openly to confess their inner stirrings, people who do not shrink from being honest with themselves... they will all have to admit to you that even today the church would still want to mark every person as outrageous, and carry on an agitation against him, if he is able to endanger the rigid dogmas supporting the churches! Even if Christ Jesus would now suddenly walk among them as a human being in the same way as before! If He did not agree that their conceptions were the only right way they would immediately treat Him *as an enemy*, and without any hesitation would again accuse Him of blasphemy! They would pelt Him with dirt, and be unsparing with their ugly slanders in the process.

That is how it is, and not otherwise! The reason for all this wrong-doing, however, is not the urge to honor Almighty God, but the struggle to influence men and acquire earthly power and wealth! —

But you men draw no beneficial consequences whatever for yourselves and for your seeking from these many facts, which are indeed so easily discernible in the disputes among all the churches. You thoughtlessly overlook it.

But do not imagine that God in His Holy Laws will thereby leave it at that for you! You will be roused suddenly and severely from this irresponsible indolence. —

The second group of persons hostile to the Truth are the spiritually arrogant among those who do not belong to the clergy.

For one reason or another they are self-complacent. Perhaps one such person has gone through an inner experience in accordance with his nature, no matter what caused it. It need not always have been suffering. Sometimes it is also joy, some vision, or a celebration; in brief there are many incitements for it.

He then clings to this one-time experience which proved capable of moving him so much, not thinking that it very likely arose out of himself, and that it was therefore not a real experience at all. However, he quickly seeks to raise himself above his fellow-men with the self-comforting assertion: "I had my experience and so I know I am standing in the true recognition of God!"

The wretched man. A human spirit must have a thousand fold experiences if he really wishes to mature to a higher recognition! And such a spiritually indolent human spirit on earth, who holds himself in high esteem, clings fast as if in a shrine to one *single* experience within himself and does not strive to proceed further, because he believes that with this *everything* has already happened and that he has achieved enough for his life. The fools who act in such a manner will now come to the awakening; for they must realize that they were asleep.

It is all right when a person has once had an inner experience, but not enough is achieved with that alone. He must not stagnate there but unswervingly stride onwards, he

must keep alert in spirit. On this path he would very soon realize that his experience was only a transition serving to awaken him to real recognition.

However, his spiritual arrogance only comes more than ever to the fore, and he fancies he is of greater worth than those who go another way and follow a different creed. *This* conceit knocks him down and does not let him pass the Judgment.

Onward, ever *onward*, must man proceed on his way through Creation, ever onward also in the recognition of everything he finds in Creation. He must never feel safe and bask in a *single* experience which came to him once. Onward, only onward, proceeding with all his strength. To remain stationary means to stay behind. And danger threatens those who stay behind. With ascent, however, the dangers always lie *behind* every human spirit, never *in front of* him, this he should be aware of.

Therefore calmly leave *those* people alone who seek so proudly to *talk* about themselves. They are unworthy of the Holy Word! Look at their *actions*, their manner, and you will quickly recognize what they are worth. There are very many who belong to this group. They are hollow fruit which have to be cast out; they no longer absorb anything, for in their conceit they imagine they already have everything. —

The third big group of useless ones comprises the visionaries and enthusiasts who, easily stirred over anything that is new, harm everything which is really good. They always want to conquer the world immediately, but quickly collapse inwardly when it comes to proving their strength through *perseverance*, in working *upon themselves* unceasingly.

They would sometimes be useful as stormers, provided the resistance does not last long, and when it is a question of assailing their fellow-men, wishing to teach them without already possessing a firm basis for themselves. Fireworks which quickly begin to glow and soon fade away. They belong to the superficial ones who have no great value.

Next to this group comes still another comprising *those* persons who cannot abstain from adding their own thoughts to

something they are given, so that through the opportunity to absorb one particle of truth they *themselves* can also achieve some distinction or other by spreading it! They cannot refrain from weaving their own opinions into what they have read or heard, and continuing to elaborate further upon everything just as it arises in their imagination.

Fortunately they are not very numerous, but they are all the more dangerous because they create and spread false doctrines out of one little grain of truth. Thus they are not only very harmful to themselves, but also to many of their fellow-men by the ever-changing form of their activities. Let us take a minor example which everybody knows about, fantasy novels and stories. What is so wantonly achieved therein on the basis of seemingly small grains of truth or, to express it better, what do some people burdened with fantasy achieve therewith!

It cannot always be assumed that the reason is that the writer merely wants to make money by stimulating the diseased fantasies of his fellow-men, and offering them the most incredible stories in which they can revel with a shudder. In most cases the reason lies deeper. Such people principally wish to shine with their work and revelations. They wish to let their spirit flare up before others, thinking to provide further realms for investigation and to incite others to important work in this connection.

But what nonsense is often brought forth by this! Let us only consider a few of the fantastic accounts written and printed about the inhabitants of Mars! Every line shows the lack of comprehension regarding the Divine Laws in Creation. And in the end we are bound to include Mars in *Creation* as well as everything else.

Creatures are described which really spring forth from a *diseased* imagination, based on the belief that men there must be of quite a different shape to those here on earth because Mars is a *different* planet.

Enlightenment on such matters will come during the time of the Kingdom of the Millennium through learning to know the

Laws of Creation. A knowledge of the Laws then opens up entirely different prospects, with exact foundations, to the scholars and technicians, and thus also brings about an entirely different kind of progress and success in every realm. All of this is reserved to the Kingdom of the Millennium!

I have already said quite often that there is no reason whatever to think that something is different in Creation because it happens to be further from the earth or because it cannot be seen with the physical eyes. Creation has come into existence through *uniform* laws; it is equally uniform in its development, and is also maintained with the same uniformity. It is wrong to let a sickly imagination have a free run in these matters or even to heed it.

Every *man* of Subsequent Creation is in the likeness of the primordial images of God. Therefore throughout the entire Creation men bear only the one form, more or less ennobled and ordained for them as human beings. The form itself, however, can always be recognized, and cannot, for instance, have three legs or in general only one eye in the middle of the head, unless there is an occasional deformity, which only occurs in isolated cases. However, this does not contain anything fundamental.

That which does *not* bear the fundamental human form cannot be called human either. In its individual stages of development a spirit germ, for example, is not yet a human being, yet it would still not have such divergent forms as are described by the harmful fantasts.

In the realms of medium and fine gross matter of the darker and dark planes there can be found fantastic forms with human faces, forms which resemble animals and which always correspond with the manner in which a human spirit has thought and acted upon earth, but these forms are mostly produced only by the *thinking* of men. Periodically they bear the face of *that* person who produced them, because being the children of his thoughts they issue from him.

And when a person has become *such* that he continually

indulges in hatred, envy and other evil passions, then it happens that outside the materiality of the earth a body of this kind forms around his spirit. With this occurrence, however, he has lost every claim to be human, and consequently he is no longer permitted to, nor can he bear any resemblance to the form of the likenesses of the images of God. In reality he is then no longer a human being, but has sunk down to something as yet unknown to earthmen, and for which they therefore still have no name. —

However, soon the false chimeras of the fantasts will no longer be spread, because the time is drawing near when the knowledge of the Laws of God in Creation will have advanced so far that such untrue things will disappear of their own accord. Men will laugh when they look back at the present time, which gives plain evidence of their ignorance in so many ways. —

When these four aforementioned groups have been eliminated in the coming great sifting, which they *will be* for the most part, because such people cannot be helped, *then* the remaining ones will have a much easier time; because with such people many obstacles that are blurring and misleading will have fallen away. Only then will the earnest seekers be able to really breathe freely. —

You however, who know of the Truth, shun all those who are enemies of the Truth; because all who ever opposed Messengers of God, persecuted them and thereby showed themselves to be enemies of that which is sent by God, they are here on earth at this time for their great reckoning!

Most of them have not changed but are today the same as they once were. Turn away from them; because he who has not changed therein nor wishes to change shall not be helped, so that he may fully savor his wrong path, as a sinner, who acted in opposition to the Spirit in selfish or evil volition!

The Holy Word shall be kept away from him, so that he will not defile it again. Thereby the possibility of salvation shall also be kept away from him; he is not worthy of it and has forfeited it long ago.

Rebuff such men and no longer seek to teach them out of love or pity, so that you yourselves can become free! It is only a waste of time to concern yourselves with them, and you do not have one single hour left to waste.

---

## Possessed.

People are only too ready to express an opinion about things they do not understand. In itself this would not be so bad if such utterances were not spread abroad so often, and then suddenly stand as a firm judgment, which is accepted in many spiritually indolent circles as definite knowledge.

It then simply exists, maintaining itself with a remarkable tenacity, although nobody is able to state *how* this has come about.

And how often do these frivolous remarks cause great harm. But this does not worry men. They continue to prattle because they like it that way. They prattle unceasingly, either out of stubbornness, spitefulness, frivolity, thoughtlessness, as a pastime, not infrequently also from a craving to be heard, or with deliberately malicious intent. An evil motive can always be found for it. One meets only a few people who actually indulge in this devastating custom just for the pleasure of talking.

This talking epidemic has also only arisen as a consequence of the disintegrating rule of the intellect. Much talking, however, suppresses the purer capacity to perceive intuitively, which requires a greater *personal deepening!*

It is not without reason that a prattler, even when harmless, does not enjoy any confidence, but only he *who can be silent*. So much lies in the instinctive reserve towards prattlers that everybody should become aware of it, in order to learn lessons therefrom for his personal relations with his fellow-men.

However, in the truest sense prattlers are, above all, those persons who are so quick and ready with words where it concerns things which they do not understand.

In their superficiality they are destructive persons who cause a great deal of harm and untold suffering.

Let us just take one case. Newspapers very often report so-called ghostly apparitions, which suddenly appear in houses where nothing like it has occurred before. Objects are disarranged or lifted, pots are flung about and similar incidents.

This kind of news comes from various regions and countries. In every case the happening always takes place around some very definite person.

Wherever *this person* is these happenings take place.

Immediately the opinion is bandied about that such a person must be "*possessed*". No other possibility is even thought about, but thoughtlessly and unscrupulously they simply talk of being possessed.

Officials and churches in the various countries were often induced to take an interest in it, and if there was no evidence of fraud on anybody's part the church would occasionally attempt to exorcise the demons. Such efforts, however, are not of much use, because they are ignorant of the facts.

Formerly such a person, it mostly concerns children or young girls, would simply have been submitted to a regular witch's trial of a penal character, until the tormented person explained everything *in the way* the judges and servants of the churches wanted it. Then, as a final disgusting spectacle, came the death of the tortured one by fire in order to free devout humanity from such a person.

In reality, however, all this only happened in order to indulge the wanton craving for earthly power, and to obtain a strong influence over the people who were at that time such childish believers; an influence which thus became ever greater. The reason for this did not lie with the pure conviction to serve God thereby! This sacrilegious conduct aroused nothing but fear of men, suppressing all trust in God and giving full vent to the infamy of the basest slander.

In each case the sad end could always be reliably foreseen

already at the beginning, and all those so frivolously accused could just as well have been murdered immediately without further ceremony. In that case the guilt of the murderers would have been even less than the guilt of the then fiends who were attired as God's servants and in judges' robes.

I do not want to draw any comparisons between the olden times and the present, nor do I want to build bridges by giving special explanations, but through thoughtless talk the process is still exactly the same *spiritually!* In the *earthly gross material sense* it is now only modified through newer laws. Nevertheless ignorant mankind think wrongly as ever in this matter, and it would act accordingly if the laws did not prevent them from doing so.

Among low Negro tribes such persons are still persecuted out of superstition, killed or also... venerated. These two extremes in human behaviour have always been found very close to one another.

Among the low and ignorant tribes their sorcerers come in order to expel such evil spirits from the hut, by torturing the "possessed one" in their own special way.

Similar happenings can be found all over the world and among all peoples. I only quote these facts for a better understanding.

In all these cases, however, people who are considered as being "possessed" in this way are completely innocent! There is no trace of possession, even less of the demons which one seeks to exorcise. All this is but childish prattle and medieval superstition, a remnant from the time of the witches. In reality only those burden themselves with guilt who in their ignorance due to erroneous conceptions and superficial opinions want to help.

It is in *lunatic asylums* that the possessed can be found, and more than people imagine. And these *can* be cured! In the Millennium they will be cured.

Today, however, these pitiable persons are still simply regarded as insane, and no difference whatever is made

between the really sick and those who are possessed, because as yet nothing is understood about it.

The lack of understanding in these matters is due solely to the ignorance about Creation. What is lacking is the *knowledge of Creation*, which can provide the foundation for the recognition of *all* happenings and of the changes within and around man, i.e., the foundation which leads to true knowledge, to that future science which has no need to grope about with pitiful efforts in order *therewith* only to arrive at a *theory*, which in many cases and after decades proves ever again to be wrong.

Learn to know *Creation* and the Laws operating therein, you men, and you will no longer need to grope and to seek; for you will then possess everything you need in order to help yourselves in the events occurring during your earthly life, and also even far beyond this throughout your *entire existence!*

Then there will no longer be any pseudo-scientists, for they will have become *knowing ones*, who cannot be confronted with anything in the existence of men which holds something unknown to them.

A surprisingly great part of those today called incurably insane, who are forced to spend their lives confined in lunatic asylums, are not insane but possessed. It is the same here as with so many things: one does not *seek* for it therein, and consequently one cannot find anything either in the effect of Christ's Word, which clearly stipulates and undoubtedly demands: *Seek and ye shall find!*

This Word of Truth can be applied to *everything* in life! In any form! Therefore I, too, have already pointed out several times that only *that* person will find values in my Message who in all earnestness *seeks values therein.*

Nobody else; for the Living Word only gives when earnest seeking from within the soul touches it. Only then does it open up in rich abundance. —

Indeed today the word "possessed" is still heard and found always and only where there is no question of it!

And wherever it is appropriate nobody thinks of using it.

However, here also the expression coined in the human word has already *unintentionally* and at the *right* place hit upon the right thing; for you will find many in the lunatic asylums of whom it is said, with a shrug of the shoulders: "He is only possessed of a fixed idea, but otherwise seems normal!"

Here again men *unintentionally* hit upon what is right, but without themselves giving it any *further* thought.

However, not only this type should be called possessed, but also those who have a fixed idea and so-called lucid hours or moments, and who talk irrationally all the time may be possessed. In reality they are not always sick. —

As an example let us now consider one of the many cases where a young girl is regarded by her surroundings as possessed, or where at least she is suspected of it, because *in her presence* some such peculiar things suddenly occur, the origin of which is not known.

There are many different and possible explanations which correspond with reality, but not a single one is consistent with being possessed.

In the house concerned a *human spirit* may be *earthbound* through some cause or other; for *in all cases* it can only be a question of *human spirits* which have departed from the earth. Demons or the like are utterly out of the question in this matter.

Through some deed such a human spirit is perhaps bound to the house or only to the place, the spot. Thus it need not necessarily have done something during *the period* when the house existed, but it may have already been *before* then, at or near the spot where the house now stands.

Sometimes this spirit is tied to the place for decades or centuries, either through a murder or through some grave act of negligence, through harming some other person as well as through other happenings, many of which can bind a person.

Therefore it is not absolutely necessary for it to be connected with the people inhabiting the house *now*. Despite its

perpetual presence in the house it has at all events never before had an opportunity enabling it to manifest itself in the gross material on earth, which *now only* takes place through the girl on account of her special, *but also only present*, peculiarity.

This peculiarity of the girl is a matter all by itself, which merely gives the spirit the opportunity of expressing its volition in the gross material world in a certain way. It has otherwise nothing to do with the spirit.

The cause of the peculiarity lies in the radiation of her blood at that time, the instant it has *a very definite composition*. It is *from this* that the human spirit without a gross material earth cloak derives strength for carrying out its desires to make itself conspicuous, which often develop into irksome bad behaviour.

As I have once already pointed out every person has different blood radiations, and this blood composition is changed several times during life on earth, whereby the type of radiation of the blood also changes at the same time. Thus in most cases the singular effect some persons exercise in being able to set free the unusual happenings occurs over a very definite period only, i.e., *temporarily*. There is hardly a single case where it lasts during the whole earth life. Sometimes it continues only for weeks or months, but seldom for years.

Therefore when such a happening suddenly ceases this does not prove that the spirit concerned no longer exists or is released, but in most cases it has suddenly no further possibility of making itself conspicuous in such a crude way.

Consequently it is by no means "exorcised" nor has it vanished, just in the same way as it may have already been confined to the place for a long period without people ever noticing it. Moreover it remains just as imperceptible to people as their permanent spiritual environment. People are never alone in reality.

With this example I have given only *one* possibility for consideration, in which the spirit is bound to a *particular place*.

However, it can also be a human spirit chained to a *person* living in the house, chained through any of the happenings which have so often been mentioned in my Message. It need not involve the particular child which through its blood composition offers the temporary possibility for earthly visible activity. The real cause may also be the father, the mother, the brother, the sister, or some other person living in the same house or merely frequenting it.

And there is still another difference, for the guilt of this happening can lie either with the departed human spirit or with one of the occupants of the house, and may date from the present life on earth or from a previous one.

So many and varied are the possibilities that no definite outline whatever should be prescribed in this matter without running the risk of arousing and supporting wrong thinking in people, and an over-hasty, thoughtless judgment in individual cases.

I only mention all these possible causes in order to show the comprehensiveness of these matters, and thus warn people not to be so quick with some superficial expression; for a suspicion is often thereby voiced which is unjustified.

Therefore be careful with your conversation about things you do not understand! You bear the full responsibility for it, and you may also perhaps bind yourselves with as little as one word for years and decades! —

The spirit concerned in such a happening may have been evil and detained through some guilt. It does not change so easily in this, and it will, according to its nature, show its hatred towards people provided it receives the strength from somewhere to carry this into effect on the earthly gross material plane. Or the spirit itself was the one harmed and attaches itself spiritually to the person who at one time harmed it and who now lives in the house. However, in every case the spirit binds itself ever anew by such spiteful and disturbing activities and entangles itself still more, whereas with a *good* volition it could sever itself and would be able to

ascend. Such a blustering spirit always harms itself most of all by this.

But the person who through his blood radiation temporarily offers the opportunity for this manifestation need not be connected at all with such an affair. It is, of course, possible that he is linked with it through some former guilt or, alternatively, that the spirit is bound to him. All this is not excluded. But on no account is it a question of *being possessed*!

Were a person possessed by another spirit, i.e., should an alien spirit periodically or continually make use of a body not belonging to it for the purpose of manifesting on the earthly gross material plane, then the physical body concerned would *itself* have to carry out everything that happens, such as throwing, hitting, scratching, and destroying, or in whatever way it is expressed.

As soon as someone is possessed the alien spirit concerned will *always* work *directly through that* physical body with which it has been able to connect itself, of which it has partly taken possession and which it uses for its purposes. It was only through this that the expression "possessed" arose, because an alien spirit takes possession of an earthman's body, appropriating it in order to work with it in an earthly gross material way. The spirit also lays claim to the possession of the physical body alien to it. And this body is then "possessed" by the spirit, or we may also say it is "occupied". The spirit places itself within the physical body, possesses it or has periodically possessed it.

It is quite natural that the process of taking possession occurs first of all *in the brains*. Those earthmen to whom this happens are then described as being insane or not normal mentally, because there are often two different human spirits quarrelling and fighting to use the brains.

Thus thoughts and words and deeds are expressed which contradict each other, often in confused succession and in incomprehensible chaos, because two different spirits are trying to impress their volition, the rightful owner and the

intruder. Naturally this also causes an over-straining of the nerves of the brain, which are literally shaken up and thrown into confusion; and man, observing this from outside, can only conclude there is cerebral confusion, although the brain itself may be quite healthy otherwise. It is only the fight and conflict between the two different spirits which causes the confusion.

Occasionally it also happens that the alien human spirit which forcibly takes possession of a physical body not only makes complete use of the brain, but even carries the encroachment further by subjugating still other parts of the body for itself and its purposes, even pushing out the soul which is the rightful owner of the body, crowding it out with the exception of a small part which it cannot steal without endangering the life of this body itself.

In such serious cases there occurs the double life of a person, already often mentioned in reports which have caused learned scholars quite some brain-racking; a double life which could even drive those afflicted with it to commit suicide because they became desperate over the way they acted.

But these happenings can also be explained in accordance with the Laws of Creation. They are always strictly linked with very definite conditions which must first be fulfilled by *both* parties. Man is not just simply at the mercy of an alien spirit's desire to intrude upon him.

For instance, the *spirit* of such a person whose body offers the possibility for an alien spirit to take advantage of it in this way, and who also more or less surrenders his body to the spirit for this purpose, will always be lazy or weak; for otherwise his own natural defence should remain strong enough to prevent this happening.

Indolence or weakness of the spirit is always due to one's own guilt, though mankind is unable to recognize it. This condition is again a consequence of the domination of the intellect, which oppresses and confines the spirit, stifling it. Thus it is the result of the hereditary sin, which I accurately described in my Message together with all its evil outworkings, one of which is

also the possibility of becoming possessed.

A person with a weary spirit, however, may be exceptionally lively in his thinking, also in his learning, because spiritual indolence has nothing whatever to do with intellectual keenness, as readers of my Message know.

Indeed it is just the spirit of distinguished scholars which is often very strongly earthbound and confined. As a fitting expression for this one could use the term “a spirit with drooping wings”, because this gives the best conception. In reality the spirit of some great intellectual scholars is already slumbering towards spiritual death, although among men on earth the person concerned is particularly honored as a shining light.

Therefore a person so afflicted may be exceptionally fresh intellectually and clever, and yet have a weary spirit which allows his physical body to become in part the subject of dispute by another bodiless human spirit.

Therefore, you men, gain *greater knowledge* of God’s Primordial Laws of Creation, and you will be able to prevent much evil from assailing you! Tear yourselves away from your hollow knowledge-*conceit*, which brings forth only piecework, hardly of any use in the smallest need.

Science today lacks the *knowledge* which will enable it to recognize *these* things, for what science still teaches to date and what it pretends to know only proves clearly and distinctly that it really does not yet know anything about Creation at all. It lacks all the great connections and thus at the same time the actual picture of the real happening. It is only short-sighted and cramped, and has passed by all the great truths. However, this is the beginning of a new era, which will also in this matter let *everything arise anew!* —

Thus a child or a grown-up is not always to be suspected if he sets free such things as knocking or the throwing of physical objects. The basis for such causes is so manifold that a statement can only be made in each individual case and on the very spot by those who really know.

What has been said here does not nearly exhaust all the possibilities, but one thing is certain: *There is no question here of being possessed!*

People who through the temporary state of their blood radiation offer the possibility for such actions on the part of an alien and earthbound spirit, may during such happenings naturally be subject to bodily convulsions, fever symptoms, and also indeed to unconsciousness.

This all comes about, however, because the alien human spirit seizes the helping radiations concerned and literally draws them forcibly from the physical body, thus causing disturbances in the harmony of the normal bodily radiation, which naturally becomes immediately noticeable in the body itself.

All these are very simple happenings which through careful observation can easily and conclusively be substantiated as soon as the proper connections are known.

Useless prattling and suppositions about it serve no purpose; they can only harm other people who have absolutely nothing to do with the whole matter.

Therefore, guard your words, you men! For they, too, are bound to drag you down, because all that is *unnecessary* is disturbing in Creation, and all that is disturbing sinks downwards according to the Law of Gravity!

But if your speech is true and good you will have a furthering effect, and you yourselves will become lighter and be uplifted in the light of your words, because they also hold threads which run and knot in the same way as the threads of your thoughts and actions. And then, when you no longer wish to speak needlessly, you will become more silent and reserved, and in this way powers will be stored up within you which I already described as the power of silence!

As soon as you desire to say only what is *useful*, as man should always have done from the outset, it will become natural to you. Then man will hardly take up a third of *that* time with his talking which he still spends upon it today.

Unfortunately, however, he prefers superficial chatter to a noble silence, thus allowing himself to be drawn ever further downwards in accordance with the Law of Gravitation, which presses downwards all that is unnecessary in Creation, allowing it to sink away as being useless.

Therefore heed your words, you men, and do not regard the evil of thoughtless prattling too lightly! You will come to regret it bitterly some day.

---

## Ask, and it shall be given unto you!

**M**an is still in doubt about how to form his prayers. He desires to do what is right and not to omit anything. Although he gives the matter the most sincere and willing thought, he is still not really sure that he is not doing something wrong.

But such pondering is utterly useless; it only proves that man is ever again trying to approach God with his *intellect*, and this he will never achieve, for he *always* remains far away from the Almighty with such efforts.

Whoever has absorbed my Message *aright* is clear about the fact that words are much too limited in their nature to be able to ascend to the Luminous Heights. It is only the *intuitive perceptions* embraced by the words which, depending upon their strength and their purity, ascend above the boundaries of formed words.

Words are meant in part only as signposts to indicate the direction which the rays of the intuitive perception should take. In part they also release *the nature* of the rays within man himself, who uses the formed word as a support and as a cloak. The *word* which is thought during prayer reverberates within man, if he experiences it within himself or if he exerts himself to call it to life within himself.

With this explanation you already see two kinds of prayer arising before you. The one arises within you out of your intuitive perception, without reflection, through the experiencing itself, which is therefore the strong intuitive perception of some moment, and which while springing forth yet veils itself in words; and then the other kind, which in the process of reflection forms words *beforehand*, and in working backwards through the words it only seeks to set free the

corresponding intuitive perception, i.e., it wishes to fill the already formed words with intuitive perception.

There is no need to state which of these kinds of prayer counts as the more powerful one, for you yourselves know that that which is *more natural* is always *more correct*. Thus in these cases it is *that* prayer which arises through the bursting forth of a sudden intuitive perception, and which only afterwards seeks to compress itself into words.

Just assume that you are unexpectedly hit by a very heavy blow of fate, which shakes you to the depths. Fear for someone or something you love grips your heart. In your need a cry for help arises within you with a strength which shakes your body.

*It is in this* that you see the strength of the intuitive perception which is capable of ascending to Luminous Heights, if... this intuitive perception bears within itself *humble purity*; for without this every ascent is already halted on its way at a very definite point, no matter how strong and powerful the intuitive perception is. It is utterly impossible without humility; it could never advance to that purity which in an immense circle surrounds all that is Divine.

Such a strong intuitive perception will also bring in its train only a *stammering* of words because its strength does not permit it to be squeezed into narrow words. The power streams far beyond the confines of all words, foaming over and tearing down the boundaries which words want to erect through the narrow limits of the earthly brain's activity.

Every one of you will already have had such an experience in his life. Therefore you can grasp what I am trying to convey to you. *That* is the intuitive perception which you should have if you expect your prayer to be able to ascend to the Heights of Pure Light, from which all granting comes to you.

However, not only on account of fear shall you turn to the Heights, but also pure joy as well as happiness and gratitude can well up within you with the same strength! And this *joyful* kind swings upwards even faster, because it remains more

undimmed. Fear very easily dims your purity of intuitive perception and forms a wrong kind. Too often it is connected with a silent reproach or even grudge that whatever hit your soul so severely just had to happen *to you*, and naturally this is not right. It must then hold back your cries.

It is not necessary to form words in order to pray. The words are *for you*, in order to grant *you* the support of your intuitive perception, so that it remains more concentrated and does not become dissipated in many varieties.

You are not accustomed to think clearly without words and to become absorbed without losing the straight direction, because through too much talk you actually became far too superficial and distracted. *You* still *need* the words as signposts and also as cloaks to keep certain types of your intuitive perceptions together, and to envisage more clearly through words whatever you wish to express in prayer.

Such is the way to pray if the urge to do so arises from the intuitive perception, i.e., if it is a volition of your *spirit*! But this rarely happens with the mankind of today. Only when they are hit in some way or other by a very strong impulse, through suffering, joy or also through some physical pain. Nobody takes the trouble any more to think now and then about God the Dispenser of all mercies, voluntarily and without some impulse.

Now let us turn to the second kind of prayer. It comprises those which are intended to be said at very definite times and without the kind of cause we have just discussed. Man takes it upon himself to pray. It is a deliberate, especially *willed* prayer.

This brings about a change in the process. Man thinks or speaks certain words of the prayer, which he himself has composed or which he has learned. Usually these prayers have little of intuitive perception. Man thinks far too much *about* getting the words right, and *this alone* already diverts him from really perceiving intuitively that which he speaks or merely thinks.

Without any difficulty you will recognize that this explanation is right, if only you think back and examine yourselves carefully in this respect. It is not easy to fill such prayers with the capacity of pure intuitive perception. Even the slightest constraint weakens it, claiming part of the concentration for itself.

Here the formed words must first be called to life within yourselves, i.e., *the words* must arouse *that kind of intuitive perception* within you which in their form they express. The procedure does not then follow the course of bursting forth from within, and passing through the back brain into your frontal brain, which quickly forms words according to the impressions received; but the frontal brain begins by *first* forming words which only thereafter must be absorbed retroactively and assimilated by the back brain, in order to exercise from there a corresponding pressure on the nerve system of the solar plexus, which only after further proceedings can arouse an *intuitive perception* in accordance with the word.

It is true that everything in the sequence takes place at such an enormous speed that it appears to the observer as if it happens *simultaneously*, but nevertheless such forms are not so powerful or so original as those arising in the reverse manner. Therefore they cannot attain the effect, and in most cases remain devoid of intuitive perception. Even with a repetition of the *same* words *ever again* daily, they lose their power for you, they become habitual and thus meaningless.

Therefore become *natural* in your praying, men, become free and unaffected! What you have learned by heart so easily becomes a recitation. You only make it difficult for yourselves by this.

If you begin your day with truly heartfelt gratitude to God, and if you also finish it with equally heartfelt gratitude, be it only gratitude for the lesson you have learned on this day through experiencing, you live well! Through diligence and care let everything you *do* arise as a prayer of gratitude. Let each word you speak reflect the love which God grants you.

Then life on this earth will soon become a joy for everyone who is allowed to live upon it.

It is not nearly so difficult, nor does it take up any of your time. A short moment of honest heartfelt gratitude is much better than praying for hours what you have learned by heart, and which you could not in any case follow with your intuitive perception. Moreover, such outward praying only takes up the time you should use for genuine thanksgiving through joyous activity.

A child which really loves its parents will demonstrate this love by *its ways*, by its actions, and not with flattering words, which in many cases remain nothing but an expression of nestling self-complacency, unless it is even a selfish desire. The so-called wheedlers are seldom of any value and only think of themselves, and of satisfying their own wishes.

You stand no differently before your God! Prove through the deed what you wish to say to Him! —

You now know *how* you have to pray and already again you are anxiously facing the question as to *what* you shall pray.

If you wish to recognize the right way for this you must first *separate* your prayer from your petitions. Differentiate between prayer and petition! Do not always try to stamp your petitioning as prayer.

Prayer and petition must signify *two different things* to you; for prayer belongs to worship, whereas a petition cannot count as worship if you really want to adjust yourselves to the conception.

And it is necessary that henceforth you should adjust yourselves to it, and not intermingle everything.

When you pray *give* yourselves! This only I wish to call out to you, and in the word itself you have the explanation. *Give* yourselves to the Lord in your prayer, give yourselves entirely to Him and without reserve! Prayer must be the unfolding of your spirit at the feet of God in veneration, praise and gratitude for everything He grants you out of His great Love.

It is so inexhaustibly much. Up till now you just have not understood it; you have lost the way which would enable you to enjoy it in the full consciousness of all the capacities of your spirit!

Once you have found *this* way through recognising all the treasures of my Message *you will no longer have any petition left*. You will have nothing but praise and thanksgiving as soon as you turn your hands and eyes upward to the Highest, Who reveals Himself to you in His Love. Then you will stand in a *perpetual* state of prayer, such as the Lord cannot expect otherwise from you; for in Creation you may indeed take for yourselves whatever you need. The table is prepared therein at all times.

And you may choose from it through the abilities of your spirit. The table always offers you *everything* you need, and petitions are unnecessary if you only make the *right* kind of effort to move within the Laws of God!

All this has already been said in words well known to you: “Seek, and ye shall find! Ask, and it shall be given unto you! Knock, and it shall be opened unto you!”

These words teach you the *necessary* activity of the human spirit in Creation, and above all the *right* application of his abilities. They point out exactly the way *in which* he must comprehend Creation, and also the path which will help him *onwards*.

The words must not be regarded merely in a commonplace sense, for their meaning goes deeper, encompassing the existence of the human spirit in Creation in accordance with the Law of necessary Movement.

The words “Ask, and it shall be given unto you!” point very clearly to the ability of the spirit which I mentioned in the lecture: “The cycle of radiations”, causing it through a certain urge which cannot be shaken off always to will or to wish something; which through its radiation then immediately attracts the *homogeneous species*, as a result of which it is automatically *given* what it desired.

The urge impelling the desire, however, must always remain *a petition* and must not become a one-sided demand, as unfortunately every human being of the present time has accustomed himself to making. For if it remains a petition it also holds *humbleness*, and consequently it will always contain what is good and will also bring in its train what is good.

With His words Jesus clearly showed *how* man has to adjust himself in order to direct all the self-acting abilities of his spirit onto the *right* course!

It is the same with all His words. Unfortunately, however, they were pressed into the narrow mould of the human earthly intellect, and thus became badly distorted, with the result that they were never understood any more, nor interpreted in the right way.

For it will probably be easily understandable to everybody that this does not refer to the ordinary relations between men, because men's attitude was neither then, nor is it today, of *such* a nature that one could expect from *them* the fulfillment of such hints.

Go among men and ask, and you will be given *nothing*. Knock, and the door will *not* be opened unto you! Seek among men and their works, and you will *not* find what you are seeking! —

Nor did Jesus refer to the attitude of man towards God personally, omitting all the huge worlds lying in between, which cannot be pushed aside as if non-existent. Neither did He mean the Living Word alone therewith, but Jesus always spoke out of the primordial wisdom, and this He never compressed into small earthly thinking or conditions. When He spoke He depicted man *standing in Creation*, and He chose His words in an *all-embracing* manner!

All reproductions, translations and interpretations, however, suffer from the neglect to think *of this*. They were always intermingled with and carried out by earthly, petty human thinking and thus distorted and misrepresented. And where understanding was lacking their own ideas were added, which

could never answer the purpose, however good the intention.

That which is human always remained petty human; the Divine, however, is always all-embracing! In this way wine was badly mixed with water, and finally there emerged something different from the original. This you must never forget.

Similarly with "The Lord's Prayer", through the petitions stated therein Jesus merely sought to direct the human spirit's volition in the most simple form, towards *that* which would permit the human spirit to desire only what is useful for its ascent, so that it could receive such from Creation.

This does not hold a contradiction, but it was the best signpost, the infallible staff for every human spirit of *that* time.

The man of today, however, needs the entire stock of words he has meantime created for himself, and the application of every conception arising therefrom, if he is to find a path out of the confusion of his intellectual sham wisdom.

Therefore, men of the *present* time, I must now grant you more extensive explanations, which in reality convey exactly the same again, only in *your* way!

It is *now your* duty to learn this, for your knowledge of Creation has become greater! So long as with this knowledge you do not now fulfill the duties laid upon you by your spirit's abilities, which have to be developed, so long have you no right to ask either!

With the faithful fulfillment of your duty in Creation, however, you receive *everything* through the reciprocal effect, and there is no longer a reason for any petition; from within your soul there then streams forth only *gratitude* to Him Who in His Omniscience and Love ever again loads you with gifts every day!

You men, could you but *pray* aright at last! *Really pray!* How rich would your existence then be. For in prayer lies the greatest happiness you can receive. It uplifts you to immeasurable heights so that supreme happiness streams through you blissfully. Could you but *pray*, men! That shall now be my wish for you.

In your small thinking you will then no longer ask to *Whom* you shall and may pray. There is but *One* to Whom you are allowed to dedicate your prayers, only One: *GOD!*

Approach Him in solemn moments with a sacred intuitive perception, and pour out before Him what your spirit can bring up in the way of gratitude! Turn *only to Him* when you pray; for it is to Him alone that gratitude is due and to Him alone you yourself belong, Oh Man, because only through His great Love were you able to come into existence!

But if you have *petitions*, you can turn to His Sons, to Christ Jesus or to Imanuel. However, you should never raise a petition to the level of a prayer; for a prayer belongs to the Lord alone!

---

## Thanks.

“Thanks! A thousand thanks!” Everybody has probably heard these words quite often. They are uttered with such a variety of expression that they cannot so easily be classified into *one* single and definite kind, as is actually required by the *sense* of the words.

In fact the meaning of *the words* is here only of secondary or even third consideration. It is more the *inflection*, the *tone of voice* used, which gives value to the words or indicates their worthlessness.

In many cases, probably in the majority, it is merely a superficial habit expressing the customary form of social politeness. In such instances the words might just as well have never been uttered at all, for they remain a hollow phrase which is more of an insult than an acknowledgement to all those for whom it is intended. Only occasionally, indeed very seldom, can there be sensed a vibration indicating an intuitive stirring of the soul.

One's hearing does not need to be so keen in order to recognize just *what* the person uttering these words means. They do not always contain something good, for the vibrations of the souls vary greatly with the same words.

They may reflect discontent or disappointment, yes, even envy and hatred, deceit and many an evil volition. These beautiful words of genuine gratitude are often misused in all sorts of ways so as carefully to gloss over something else, unless they are completely empty and only spoken in order to conform to manner and custom, or to habit.

These words are generally expressed by those who are accustomed to receiving, who use them constantly and who always keep them ready for every occasion without giving any

thought to it. This is similar to the frequently encountered babbling of endless chains of all kinds of formulated prayers, but which through being rattled off without any inner intuitive response are nothing but an offence against the Holiness and Greatness of God!

But where the words are really used in accordance with *that* sense which they seek to express, i.e., where the soul vibrates in the wording, where the words formed remain indeed the expression of the pure vibrations of the soul, as it always should be when man forms words; then *such* cases shine forth brilliantly in Creation like beautiful blossoms springing forth from stony ground!

If you consider it aright, in fact, everything uttered without intuitive prompting is bound to remain nothing but empty prattle, wherewith man fritters away the time which he should value differently; or it can only contain a false volition, with the words representing something to his fellow-men not in accord with the speaker's intuition. Nothing healthy and constructive can ever come from it. The Laws of Creation prevent it.

Thus it is, and not otherwise, although it remains very sad, clearly showing all the mire men are piling up through their varied prattling in the field of fine gross matter, which has a retroactive effect upon life on earth, and through which every human soul must first journey before it can enter the lighter spheres.

Never forget that each of your words allows a form to arise which clearly shows the contradiction between your intuitive perception and the words, no matter whether you wish it or not. You cannot alter this fact. Consider this with everything you say. Although fortunately they are but lighter forms which quickly vanish again, yet there is always the danger for you that such products may suddenly obtain reinforcement from a completely strange source, strengthening and condensing them in the same species and thus permitting them to extend their activity, which is bound to become a curse to you.

For this reason try to reach the point where you only utter *that* in which your soul vibrates.

You imagine this would be quite impossible on earth, because otherwise, in comparison to your present custom, you could say so little to each other that life would thereby threaten to become monotonous and boring, especially at social gatherings. There must be many who think in this way and who are afraid of it.

However, if man only advances to this point in his thinking, he will also see how much of his time on earth so far was bound to remain utterly empty, without value and thus without a purpose. Then he will no longer be sorry at the loss of so many empty hours, but quite on the contrary he will be afraid *to indulge in them* in the future.

The person who must seek to fill his time with empty words, just for the purpose of keeping on social terms with his fellow-men, is empty himself, as are his surroundings. However, he will not admit this to himself. He will console himself by saying that he cannot always talk about serious matters, that he will become boring to the others, in short that it is only the fault of the *others* if he does not speak of that which perhaps still stirs him personally.

With this, however, he deludes himself. For if his fellow-men are really as he supposes them to be, then this proves that he himself has nothing else to offer either, because it is only through the attraction of homogeneous species that the surroundings with which he associates come into existence. Or his surroundings have attracted him because of the homogeneity. It is the same in both cases. The popular saying about this is quite right when it asserts: "You can judge a man by the company he keeps!"

Empty people who do not strive to fill their life with genuine contents will flee from such people bearing spiritual values within them.

Nobody can conceal spiritual values; for as soon as it is not buried within man but still really alive, the spirit has quite a

natural urge towards activity through Creation's Law of Movement. It irresistibly presses towards the outside, and such a person will again find men to whom he can give something as recompense through his spiritual activity, so that he in turn may receive from them, if only through new stimulation or through questions of serious purport.

It is absolutely impossible for boredom to find any room in such cases! On the contrary, the days are then far too short, time passes by ever faster, and there is not enough of it to hold everything a spirit can give when it is really astir!

Go among your fellow-men and listen to how much of the many things they talk about contains anything worth mentioning. Speedily and without any trouble you will recognize how spiritually dead humanity is at present, the humanity who should *work* spiritually, which means that every word they utter should be of great and upbuilding value, because they are of the spirit! You yourselves have deprived your words of all the high power which they should contain in the Law of Creation due to your wrong application of the ultimate expression of your thoughts. The language is intended to serve man with power and as a sword in order to promote and protect harmony, not to spread suffering and conflict.

He who speaks out of his spirit *cannot* make many words. But with him every word becomes a deed, because he swings in his word and this swinging brings fulfillment in the Law of Reciprocal Action, which itself is fulfilled in the Law of Attraction of Homogeneous Species.

For this reason man shall never utter words of *gratitude* in a superficial way; for they do not offer gratitude unless penetrated by the soul!

Does it not sound like a jubilant song as soon as human lips form these plain words with a blissful heartfelt emotion: Thanks! A thousand thanks!

And it is more, in reality much more, for such gratitude from a soul which is stirred is at the same time a prayer! Gratitude to God!

In all such cases the intuitive perceptions contained in the words rise unconditionally towards the heights, and the blessing descends reciprocally upon that person or those persons who called forth these intuitive perceptions, i.e., upon that place which the words of genuine thanks are meant for, the place to which they were directed.

Therein lies the just equilibrium which is fulfilled with the blessing, which also takes on form and is bound to become visible on earth.

But... the blessing cannot flourish visibly everywhere, for the process requires this one condition: No matter what has been done by the one for whom the words of such genuine gratitude are meant, *he must have done it with love* and with the intention of *giving joy to the other!* Whether it has been a gift or some action, or only some really well-meant and good word of advice.

If this requirement is not met by the giver, then the blessing sinking down in reciprocal action for the gratitude which ascended does not find the soil in which it could become anchored, and thus in all these cases the just blessing *must* nevertheless fail to materialise, because the one who should have received it is incapable of accepting or receiving it!

Therein lies a justice which man on earth does not know, and which is only contained in the Laws of Creation working so vitally and automatically, the Laws of Creation which can neither be distorted nor influenced in this matter.

For example, a person who does something in a calculating way, either to attain fame or some other pleasant reputation, will never be able to receive the true blessing arising out of his kind actions, because he does not carry within himself the soil which is *required* according to the Law to receive this blessing. At the most he can receive transitory, dead and thus nothing but temporary *earthly* advantage, but never a true reward of God, which can only be received by a person who himself stands and lives in the sense of the Divine Will in Creation.

Even if a person would give away millions for the poor or, as so often happens, sacrifices them for the sciences, if his impulse is not genuine love, if his urge to help does not come from his soul, then he will not get any reward of God either, because it *cannot possibly* come about, since such a person is incapable of absorbing, of receiving it!

As a consequence of many a genuine expression of thanks from those who received from him, the blessing in accordance with the Law already hovers above him, it has descended upon him, but such a person cannot partake of it due to his own fault, because he does not offer the soil within himself for its reception.

When genuine gratitude is uttered the reaction will come in any case. However, the extent of the effect depends in turn, and according to the Law, upon the attitude adopted by the soul of him for whom the blessing came through the reciprocal action.

The one who should receive is therefore himself at fault when such a blessing cannot take shape for him, because he does not possess the inner capacity to receive it in accordance with the requirements of the Primordial Law of Creation, since he lacks the right warmth of soul.

The misuse of beautiful words of thanks, however, is not only carried on by the one party, not only by the receiving ones, but also by the giving ones, who entirely displace and distort the conception of gratitude.

There are more than a few among mankind who to all appearances do a lot of good, and yet extend their help just to reap gratitude for themselves.

In their giving they are coldly calculating. Only the cleverness of their intellect is at work. Among these there are also a few whose momentary feeling prompts them to offer help, but who later on constantly try to throw this at the one-time recipient, expecting gratitude from him for the rest of their life!

Persons of this kind are even worse than the most evil

usurers. They do not shrink from expecting *life enslavement* from those who at one time or other received help from them.

With this they not only destroy their self-respect and the value they should receive for the help once given, but they fetter and burden themselves with tremendous guilt. They are despicable creatures, not worthy to breathe another hour in Creation or to enjoy its blessings, which the Creator grants them ever anew with each moment. They are the most unfaithful of servants who, due to themselves, must be cast out.

But just these insist upon morals on earth and are also supported by earthly moralists, who always seek with high-sounding words to further the same wrong opinions about obligatory thankfulness, thereby cultivating something which, according to the Primordial Laws of Creation, is akin to the grossest immorality and which in the future will have to be eliminated on earth as well.

Then true helpfulness will have entered into the souls for real needs of the soul as well as earthly needs. In the same way the words of gratitude will contain a true sense of gratefulness and thereby offer the balance in the God-willed harmony in Creation, where any one-sidedness must be excluded as disturbing, confusing and as harmful obstacles.

Many now praise gratefulness as a virtue, others as a duty of honor! Through one-sidedness and lack of understanding opinions are uttered and frivolously spread, which have already caused severe suffering to many a person.

Therefore man must now become clear as to *what* gratitude really is, what it calls forth and how it works.

Then much will become different, and all the chains binding slaves, which were forged through wrong opinions about gratitude, will fall away. Mankind will at last be freed from them. You have no idea what travail has spread over mankind on earth like a shroud draping all human dignity and the noble, joyful desire to help, due to this mutilation and the false conceptions of pure gratitude forced upon men! Countless families in particular are infected with this, and have been

producing accusing victims for thousands of years.

Away with this false delusion, which seeks with deliberate intent to drag every noble action which is natural to human dignity deep into the mud!

Gratitude is *not a virtue!* It must not, nor does it want to be counted among the virtues. For each virtue emanates from God and is therefore unlimited.

Nor may genuine gratitude be stamped as a duty! For then it would be unable inwardly to unfold *that* life and warmth which it needs in order to receive the blessing of God from Creation through the reciprocal action!

Gratitude is closely linked with joy! Gratitude itself is an expression of purest joy. Thus wherever there is no joy included, where no joyful elation is the cause for gratitude, there the expression gratitude is used *wrongly*, there it is misused!

In such cases it will never be able to set free *those* forces which are automatically released by true gratitude in accordance with the Laws of this Creation, according to the Will of God. The blessing is then lacking. Confusion must come in its place.

Such misuse, however, is found almost everywhere when men speak of gratitude, of thanks *today*.

The gratitude really felt intuitively is a *compensatory value* willed by God, which mediates the counter-value to whomsoever gratitude is due. This is contained in the Law of necessary Equilibrium in this Creation, which can only be upheld and furthered by harmony, which lies in the fulfillment of all the Primordial Laws of Creation.

You men, however, bring entanglement into all the running threads of the Laws through your false practices, your erroneous conceptions. Therefore you make it difficult for yourselves to attain to true happiness, to peace. In most cases you are hypocrites with your words. How then can you expect that truth and happiness can blossom forth for you? You must indeed always reap what you sow.

Thus you must also reap everything you sow with your words, and through the manner in which you utter your words! Your own attitude towards these words.

Nothing other can develop out of this for you, this you must always remember in regard to *everything* you say!

Just think over everything once again each evening, and seek to recognize the worth of the words you have exchanged with your fellow-men in the course of the day; you will be horrified at their emptiness! Even at the emptiness of many hours of but a single day! Attempt this without any extenuation of yourselves. With a shudder you will realize what must also arise out of this for you in the workshop of Creation, well known to you through my Message, in which everything automatically manifests which issues from you through your intuitive perception, your thinking, your speaking and your actions!

Examine yourselves seriously and with an honest confession. From that hour onwards you will change yourselves in many things.

You must not on that account become sparing with words in your life on earth in order to proceed on the right path. But in talking you must avoid superficiality as well as lack of sincerity, which lie behind the major part of all the speaking of these earthmen.

For you act with all your talking in the same way that you deal with expressions of gratitude, and yet inwardly you highly praise such moments as earnest, solemn and significant when with your words you simultaneously express your intuitive perception!

This happens only seldom, however, but it should *always* be thus! So many men consider themselves very clever and wise, even highly developed spiritually, when they know how to conceal their intuitive perceptions and their actual volition behind their words, never permitting their fellow-men to see their true face in spite of lively conversation.

This method is called diplomatic, as a soothing expression for

the strange mixture of crafty cheating, of hypocrisy and falsehood, and of the greed which is always lying in wait triumphantly to create advantages for oneself at the expense of weaknesses discovered in others.

In the Law of Creation, however, it makes no difference whatever whether all this is done by someone acting for himself personally or only for the benefit of a state. In this matter acting is acting, and is bound to release all the effects of these Laws.

He who knows the Laws and their effects need not first be a prophet in order to recognize quite clearly the end of all that is bound up in the fate of individual nations and of mankind on earth; for the whole of mankind is incapable of displacing or distorting anything in this matter!

Only through recognition and genuine observance of the Laws, and thus acting differently *in time*, could mankind have sought to diminish a great deal in order to ease many afflictions for themselves. However, it is now too late for this! For all the effects of their past actions are already rolling.

But all that is burdensome therein truly serves only as a blessing. It is a mercy! It brings about purification where there is something wrong which now causes the collapse as the final consequence, no matter whether in the state or in the family, in the people themselves, or in association with others generally. We stand in the great final reckoning, which rules over the force of the human means of power. Nothing can shut itself out or hide from this.

Only the Laws of God still speak, which with superhuman accuracy and in an unswerving manner take automatic effect in everything that has happened so far; for new energy has penetrated them from the Will of God, which energy now permits them to enclose men as with immovable walls, protecting them or also destroying them, depending upon the nature of men's attitude towards them.

For a long time in the future they will also remain like walls, surrounding everything with the same power, in order to

prevent such confusion as has occurred in the past from coming about once more. Soon men will be thereby compelled to move only in the forms willed by God, for their own salvation and for their deliverance, so far as this is still possible, until they themselves go consciously forward again on the right paths in accordance with the Will of God.

Therefore look around you, men, and learn to swing in your words, so that you will not neglect anything!

---

## Disappointments.

When will the earthman learn to look *within himself* for every fault, every reason for failure and non-fulfillment! He seems never to be able to do this. Too great is his consideration for himself; too small and limited, however, his stubborn, rigid thinking.

Judging from past experiences he will never learn, because he *does not wish to!* Even with the best and the greatest volition, deep within him there still remains a reservation. In the final analysis this reservation is always his beloved “ego”, together with some characteristic or other to which it still tries to cling with a tenacity that even surpasses the power of the best volition.

This “ego” keeps itself so deeply hidden that many think it no longer exists at all. However it is still there, sending out its threads harmfully from its hiding-place at those moments when man least expects it. It obtrudes itself into many things, and with special decisions that have to be made very rapidly, the beloved “ego” sometimes even sets itself quite openly before the duty of Sacred Fulfillment!

Although this is only possible temporarily, when the volition towards fulfillment is strong, yet it nevertheless weakens the effect of the will to fulfill, and retards many a victory, hindering it or making it quite impossible.

*Thus* was man found to be at the last examination. Man, with his peculiarities or desires, will never of his own free will completely surrender himself, not even under the influence of the greatest pain. The “ego” still has something to say in the matter and thrusts itself into the foreground, especially in the love that it cherishes for some fellow human being, and which it sets above all else, without man’s fully realizing this weakness.

Thus man must be inwardly broken, in order thereby to attain to the possibility of raising a new edifice to the honor of *God* within himself, which alone leads him to true happiness. The false gods of the past must likewise submit, or be exterminated through the thrust of the sword, which is forcibly brought about by men themselves.

Men, how easy everything could be for you, and how difficult you make it for yourselves!

Can you not just for *once* raise your thoughts at least a little above this rigid form which you have created for yourselves over thousands of years, and for whose development you have voluntarily sacrificed whole ages as though you had an abundance of them, while the Eternal Laws weaving in Creation cannot grant you a single minute to waste.

What do you imagine is going to happen now! Do you ever give it any thought without again putting yourselves carefully on one side, so that you may remain untouched by your searching glance, as you have always done hitherto because your habit did not allow you to act or to think otherwise.

*Move* with more spiritual vigor for once, and become free from all the rigid forms that hold you down and degrade you.

The cycle of your thinking lacks *life*! I will give you just one example of how you thereby force yourselves to harm yourselves and others and even to violate what you truly hold sacred, all the while believing to be small and having the best volition for what is good:

Suppose a man goes to a knowing one to ask for confirmation that he is on the right path, and where it leads. Such a man is always full of wishes and questions; and it may always be taken for granted that among all the questions only a few are really objective. Most of them are of a purely personal and earthly nature.

Although a knowing one will only answer such questions reluctantly, because the Message already contains all that any man needs for himself, it nevertheless happens that, on being asked, he will lift the veil a little from the path that may yet

open up for the questioner in the weaving of the Laws. The latter then greedily gathers up what he has been told, and tries as well as he is able to adjust himself accordingly, yet always only as *he himself* imagines it.

The picture of the words he asked for on his visit remains with him, and he holds on to it unperturbed until he thinks the time has come for their fulfillment. However, his thinking is based mainly upon his desires, and formed according to his purely personal conceptions, whose validity he never questions.

Now it happens that a moment, thus expected, often passes without fulfillment! If he is a man of good disposition he will shake his head and ask himself in bewilderment, perhaps in despair, how this can be, since he trusts implicitly in what he has been told, and everything a knowing one says must come true, if he really is so knowing.

He will be in conflict with himself, perhaps consoling himself with the thought that he must first wait and see what happens. In any case, in the first place his faith will probably cool off and be shaken, if he cannot find a reason that enables him to overcome this disappointment.

Yet a man of evil nature will scoff and inveigh against everything associated with this knowing one who has disappointed him, and of course also against the knowing one himself. He will even draw my Message into it, although this merely proves that he himself has never as yet understood it, or that he is unable to summon up confidence in his *own* conviction. In short, that he himself is nothing spiritually, and remains subject to all fluctuations of earthly circumstances. Such a man stamps himself as belonging to the chaff.

Then he no longer remembers that he was formerly convinced of the Truth of my Message and able personally to perceive its values on and within himself. Thereupon he also lays aside the Message, even though it has given him very much.

He will try to raise doubts in other people. What he himself has recognized as good and that he has perhaps experienced

inwardly, he will not mention. Moreover, he will try to make it appear as just the opposite. It does not occur to anyone to examine and scrutinize himself properly first, and to enquire whether the reasons for the impossibility of fulfillment of what has been said might not lie with himself and his actions.

Just *that*, however, would be the right thing! For every non-fulfillment is always solely owing to the fault of the one who is so disappointed by it.

After all, he may change even within an hour of the conversation, thus making the fulfillment impossible. Unless he reaches, by himself, what is awaiting him on his path, that is, what Providence has in store for him, there cannot be complete fulfillment. Instead some other experience awaits him; for the experience as such, comes without fail, only its forms change through his own attitude. Thus joy may turn to sorrow or sorrow to joy, but *either* will bring him the pre-ordained *experiences of his spirit*.

The specific milestones along the earthly journey will be fulfilled for every *spirit*. Thus the outward manifestations, that is, the causes that give rise to them, adjust and change according to the inner life of the one concerned.

The earthly wanderer, however, always observes only the outward appearances, *the form* that remains subject to change! Therefore he incurs disappointments and doubts for himself.

Try to imagine the following picture: A man is travelling on a road, which if he continues upon in the same direction, will bring him to Vienna.

If he asked someone who knows the country well:

“Where will this journey take me?”

that person would naturally *have* to say:

“To Vienna!”

He might also mention a few towns through which the traveler would pass on the way.

If, however, for some reason or other the traveler changes his direction even before reaching any of the destinations mentioned, he will not then arrive at Vienna, although he has

been told the truth, but at some other place, perhaps Paris, Zurich or Rome.

As soon as he changes his direction, however slightly he turns off the road, his destination will also change, and with it the fulfillments in their original nature, as they would have been had he followed his first course. Thus he has then no reason to regard the one who has given him the information as an ignorant person, or even as one who only, but deliberately, pretends to know. —

Just as simply as it happens *in this instance*, so it is also with each of man's journeys through his earth-life.

If a man asks where a path leads him, it is quite possible for a knowing one to say what points he will, and indeed must touch on the path upon which he stands *at the time of his question!*

Nothing more can ever be given to a man, than information in accordance with his *present* condition and his *present* course, because, as everyone knows from the Message, man always retains his free will to make his own decisions. Thus even a few minutes after putting his question, he may inwardly take a turn which must at once automatically change his path and likewise his goals.

If someone begins his journey towards Vienna and suddenly alters it towards Rome, he will of course reach Rome and not Vienna.

It is exactly the same with the *spiritual* paths. These operate also in the *World of Gross Matter!* For they are decisive for it.

I have often said that even a Son of God cannot *compel* a man to attain salvation, because the free will of every human spirit to make its decisions will not be annulled.

Many a man imagines himself to have especially great faith, when he thinks that I can see his precise earthly path, and that what I tell him in response to his questions will *have to* happen to him absolutely. While many a man shows himself to be inexpressibly small in his assumption that if some of this does not occur, I could, in his opinion, not be an Envoy of God.

In both cases is shown only ignorance of the working of Creation in accordance with the Holy Laws of God which are in constant *motion* and which instantly pick up on every volition of a human being in order and tie him to its reciprocal effects.

Even in the Judgment it cannot be exactly foreseen how this sacred happening will affect each individual. Therein also lies movement, right up to the last moment. Many a person who thinks of himself as standing safely may yet fall.

The *hour* is exactly ordained for each person; but the *nature* or the effects depends on *his* inner state at the moment of the Judgment. The volition of his spirit with all that still clings to it, will determine the reciprocal action.

However, he who sins against the spirit of the Lord anew has already received his sentence which is urging towards its fulfillment even now, so that salvation is no longer possible for him.

Even as I utter these words I already know that men will again only absorb them in a very limited way, and that they will also immediately force what they have absorbed into a rigid form. Thus what has been said is again promptly robbed of all mobility, and the newly-given Truth quickly distorted by rigid thinking, even before it can come to life within you.

Thus I have to endure this with all my words. People do not absorb them as *I wish!* And knowing this makes one weary. Even if I decided to explain over and over again what I have already said, in the end this would not be enough; the need to explain would be never-ending, because with their narrow thinking, men will always produce some new point that needs clarifying. —

Although man is bound to all the consequences of the decisions of his free volition, he still has enough opportunities to move about on the paths of his life-journeys in Creation, thus also on earth. The how and where and when, with all their effects, are contained in my Message, which in Its form cannot be misinterpreted, provided man makes the effort to fathom my *words* aright, by receiving them *in the way* in which they are given by me.

When you have the Message before you, you must seek to delve into my words exactly according to the arrangement of the sentences and words, for it is that which leads your spirit! I use your language in its *true* sense, as it must be used in order to mould it *alive*, but not as the distorted intellect pronounces to be right and beautiful!

You know that the *name* of a man comprises that person himself. Man actually *is* what his name says, he is not merely called thus. The name, however, is also a *word*. And just the name actually lives and works within itself, so also does *each* word of your language live and work independently!

But all mankind have distorted this, just as they have distorted their intellect. In the first place therefore, it is essential when reading my Word that *you* abstain completely from such harmful intellectual trifling! In so doing you must try not to think in *those* forms which you have established for yourselves, or which others continually seek to establish for you, but you must force yourselves to let the nature of my words, and also the way in which they are grouped together work on you unimpaired, and to perceive them accordingly!

If you carry this out earnestly you will experience wonders, for the *character* of my sentences will convey to you conceptions and pictures entirely different from the same words assembled in your fashion.

So far you have *not* taken the trouble to do this! You have not yet accepted what has become new in my way of speaking; instead you still base your thinking on the usual intellectual grounds, which have been subject to frequent change in recent years, and often before that. Indeed, you even make use of them in the reading of *my* words.

The language, in reality, as well as each individual word, holds so much life within itself that it may not be lightly altered without at the same time weakening its effect! I shall have to teach you first how to understand and use your own language correctly, because through the false reasoning of the brains you have been diverted even from this.

Intuitively you have once more found the absolutely correct expression for what the efforts of your intellect have hitherto desired to bring about, when you say that the purpose is to make your language more fluent and facile, so that it can be read faster and more easily.

Hand in hand with fluency, however, goes dilution! Giving fluency to the language through the efforts of your intellect is nothing more than *dilution* of the language, by which also its power, the vigor in it, is weakened or completely lost.

Quickness and facility of reading concerns only the intellect, making its work easier.

In everything there lies only the urge towards *superficiality*, which, as the crown of the efforts of your intellect over thousands of years, is such an evil characteristic of the present time!

The intuition, your spirit, speaks differently; you can observe this in every sentence that is given to you from the Light. You have received so much of this, and yet have learned nothing from it.

Look to me and attune yourselves to me! This has been my call from the beginning. I bring you the *new*; because *everything* is to become new according to the Holy Will of God; this includes the use of the language which must not be molded for shallow conversation!

However, because the correct manner of speaking now seems strange, many a person objects to it. The one considers it too simple, the other perhaps too affected, or even through clumsiness wrongly applied, and much else; whereas in actual fact it restores the correctness of your language as it really *is* to be used, so that it can live and speak vitally to you, so that it will become capable of touching and opening your souls, and will not merely flatter the weaknesses of your superficial intellect! So that it *swings* in the Sacred Rhythm of the Eternal Laws!

Therefore delve deeply into the character of the language, but with your *spirit*, which demands much more. Above all, take pains to understand me in the Word!

Once you have grasped the words of my Message in their full value, you will also know all the Laws working automatically in Creation. Then there will be no more disappointments for you; because you yourselves will have become knowing ones!

---

## And if humanity asks...

There is something strange about mankind on earth. They lie in Creation like a ponderous, slothful and rotten mass. *Mankind*, who should be weaving therein in the most lively, most mobile, most beautiful and most luminous way, if they would use the abilities with which they have been graciously endowed, aright.

But like lead, they burden everything; dark, gloomy, ready at any time to work with poisonous and destructive envy on *anything* that seeks to rise above their average kind. Hostile to the Light, they lie in wait to defile all that is not willing to travel along their self-made path, which leads to the abyss, to eternal perdition.

Men stand *aloof* from the Lord, because they wish to become lords on earth themselves! And yet they now have the name of God on their lips more than ever before, in order to make use of it for their own ends; to bear it before them as a shield, to indicate thereby a pure volition.

But their inner self bears no relation to the shield thus displayed; for their souls are filled with *distrust*, out of fear lest someone should challenge what they themselves are striving for: Earthly power and earthly influence.

And this distrust dims *every* pure volition; drags people down; makes them unjust, fanatical, and increases the *misuse* of the Holy Name "God"!

Men do not ask about it! Actually they never ask concerning what can really benefit them and what they *should* ask, but only about what is in line with *their* way of thinking. And since today all mankind is inwardly filled only with *distrust*, every question is *also* bound to contain *distrust*, as the result of a psychic state that is fundamentally distorted and depraved.

What a person thinks of his fellow-men, he draws *out from himself* and assumes in connection with *himself*. A really *good* person will always only wish first to find the *good* in others; whereas it is quite self-evident that a malevolent person is able to assume only malevolent *intentions* in his fellowmen, especially in *those* matters which he himself cannot yet understand.

A malevolent human being will interpret everything he does not yet understand, as coming from the malevolent volition of another, because in accordance with his nature, he simply does not expect anything else.

But with a good human being, *the opposite* holds true. He will look at everything first according to *his* nature, which is *good*.

A malicious man can never believe in a good volition; he cannot believe that certain actions could spring from it, because he himself is incapable of it. He will dismiss selfless action as a fairy tale, or even as a lie, because it is alien and incomprehensible to him.

Only the *good man* can believe in it, because he himself is capable of acting likewise.

Thus a person's opinion of his fellow-men is always simply the *reflection of his own inner state*, which he clearly expresses in this way.

Those who speak evil of their fellow-men, and spread it abroad, *must be evil themselves*, or they would not do such things! This is a *Law of Creation*, which swings in *homogeneity*. Through it, your Creator in His Omniscience has also forced every human being to carry openly before him, a mirror in which his own inner life is quite clearly recognizable to the dispassionate observer. This Law, in the great simplicity of its effects, as a help from the Light, has simply not yet been closely observed, because man has never taken the trouble to probe into the logical consequences of God's Laws in Creation.

On his earthly path, he only strives to advance quickly in the material sense, through the amassing of worldly possessions for the so-called pleasant things of life on earth, which however

actually produce only superficiality and with it spiritual decline, because they lead to lazy comfort but never bring about ascent.

Man rushes through the life-span graciously allotted to him, looking neither left nor right, solely in order to reach *earthly goals*. Thereby he learns nothing from that part of Creation around him in which he is permitted to live, and in which he should also work accordingly.

Otherwise he would also long ago have recognized this law, which always clearly shows him his fellow-man as he *really* is. And such helpful recognitions would advance him further on his earthly path than all his haste. They would spare him much suffering and many disappointments, and as a result, things on earth would also have to be different from what they are today!

Learn at last, you men, to know the Laws of God in Creation, and you will be helped!

Yet to do this, you would have to *exert* yourselves, and give up the demanding attitude to which you have become accustomed as a result of your conceit, which is hostile to God! Then, *distrust* would not today rule among all mankind and brandish the whip over you! Distrust is solely the fruit of spiritual indolence. If your *spirit* were only *astir* in the way demanded of you by the Will of God, and if you had not set up in place of your spirit the earth-bound intellect, which must remain only a tool of your spirit, then distrust could not have gained the prominence on earth that it holds today.

Distrust is now the *worst* fruit of mankind's false volition and wrong ways. As the *final* result of your association with Lucifer's henchmen, distrust now wields the whip! Wherever you look, distrust nests today; not only within nations and churches, in trade or commerce, but even in the very core of family life; the sacred hearth of marriage.

Even where only *two* are together: distrust brandishes the whip over you! It has grown out of you; it hovers around you and over you with loathsome avidity, burying its talons deep

into your souls, and it will even yet drive you to tear one another to pieces!

And it is this distrust, as the worst of the plagues which you have brought on yourselves, that will drag many among this mankind, indeed the greater part of them, along with it in its downfall; into the horror of disintegration, the eternal death!

A flash of lightning will strike it mortally, but in its death-throes it will not let you go, but will hold you fast in its million-fold claws. They will grip even harder in the rigidity of death, and souls clasped in their embrace will no longer be able to escape, unless they *themselves*, in their despair, once more make a great effort, amid a thousand pains, to tear themselves away even at the last moment and set themselves free. This tearing away, however, demands a tremendous development of will power, and inflicts deep wounds upon your souls!

Not many of this mankind will still be able to muster so much strength, and others will dread the grievous wounds and the pain which this tearing away will cause them.

And so through sluggish inactivity they sink; sink into the bottomless pit; into eternal night, where however, torments await them *a thousand fold* worse than the pains of a voluntary tearing away would be. — But then, it is definitely too late! They have indulged in this distrust at the crossroads where the Grace of God has *once more* placed them.

*The indolence of their spirit* now brings mankind to the final downfall, through its last repulsive fruit, which is unworthy of humanity and hostile to the Light: distrust!

Therein lies the Judgment: *They themselves* are no longer able to receive God's last Grace! Thus all the *spiritually indolent* human beings, who are found useless in the Judgment, will ask:

“How can Abdruschin-Immanuel *prove* that He is the Son of Man?”

But only the *indolent* in spirit, those who refuse to make any personal effort towards their own salvation, will ask this or similar questions. Indeed they are ruled by their *distrust!* They

are irretrievably enslaved to it. They are no longer able to search in the *Word themselves*, with earnest alertness of the spirit, not merely of the intellect. They are already too weak in spirit for this. In accordance with the immutable Law of God, the Word of Life, the Living Word, *which likewise demands life to be able to receive it*, can and will give nothing to the spiritually indolent! For he who does not seek earnestly for values in it, will find nothing. *But he who seeks will find!*

The Message contains and gives *everything*. For the human spirit it is inexhaustible. The most simple human being, as well as the most eminent scholar can find in it what he seeks. There is nothing in Creation which he would not find and recognize in this Message, as soon as he is inwardly capable of receiving these values.

Even the greatest human knowledge hitherto existing, can be further extended from it, without ever reaching a limit. The human spirit must first really seek in it in humility, and be prepared to receive with gratitude. Conceit, however, bars the way to any possibility of receiving, for the spirit that wishes to force itself to seek.

But the time is no longer far off, when undreamt-of treasures from the Word of the message will be joyfully transmitted through human spirits of *all* classes, to a listening humanity. And it will give you ever-new material for every field of *real* knowledge, for the soul and for the body, as well as for your thoughts and deeds, here on this earth.

Until then, however, the indolent in spirit must be separated from the alert. They will be separated through themselves, so that henceforth they can no longer hinder or confuse what is in accordance with the Will of God.

Whoever seriously and without conceit reads the Word of my Message, that is, whoever genuinely seeks in It, will also find therein every recognition for himself personally and no longer asks: "How will Imanuel prove that he is the Son of Man!" —

It is the Will of God that the human spirit should *awaken* from the slumber and the self-imposed indolence which has led

it away from the Light and which caused it to fall into the Darkness.

It is solely the fault of *mankind!* Had they not frivolously distanced themselves from the connection with the Light; had they not cut themselves off through their stubborn persistence and the conceit of their ridiculous would-be knowledge, then nobody would have any difficulty in recognizing the one who is sent by the Light.

However, in the sad history of the evolution of the entire mankind on earth, there have so far always been only a few who have actually recognized and therewith also acknowledged Envoys from the Light.

*The fault of mankind!* Certainly not of the Light. Thus this same mankind would now demand that the Light should alter Its Primordial Laws because of *their* faults, so that while they still remain entangled in them, they may easily recognize who is the Envoy of the Light, without any effort on their part!

Through their spiritual indolence they no longer even realize what *arrogance* toward God this question contains.

Just let them continue on the path that leads them to perdition. They do not want it otherwise. Turn away from those who ask such questions, and remember this:

Once they also approached Jesus *in this way*, when they had already nailed Him to the Cross, and demanded of Him: "If Thou be the Son of God, save Thyself and come down from the Cross!"

*By this*, He was to prove once again that He was the Son of God. However, other people would have demanded ever-new proofs in order to believe in His Mission or to be convinced of it. Their wishes would then increase a thousand fold, in spite of which, in the end, nobody would have exerted himself really to believe in it.

Surely you know people well enough, to realize this also for yourselves.

The *words* Jesus had spoken and taught were only of *secondary* importance to them. They would only pay attention

to them, after they had received other proofs. To exert *himself* is always the *last* decision a human being wants to make. He continually postpones it and never does it, because in the end it simply does not come to him voluntarily.

*Therein* lies his weakness which now brings death for him! For at *this* point, the Judgment now sets in.

I say unto you: The living Word, the Message that I have brought, *is* the proof, as it simply cannot be given in a better or more convincing way, for all human spirits!

And he, who through earnest seeking recognizes the Word, is also completely convinced without any other help! *This alone* is able to save him, and help him to strive upwards towards the Luminous Gardens of God, where he may forever live in joyful activity in accordance with the Will of God.

Nothing else! Only he who actually recognizes *the Word* and makes it truly his own, that is, he who really *lives* accordingly, will be saved from eternal death. And such a man does not ask for other proofs. Everything has become self evident to him in the *experiencing* of my Word, which supplies the proof for him therein!

Thus, *man* must exert himself for it in all seriousness and in humility, without conceit, without prejudice. Unless he fulfils this, the Word can give him nothing. It remains closed to him, whereas otherwise It far exceeds the highest expectations for everyone, and pours forth an abundance which brings true peace and true knowledge, and gives happiness!

People will *experience* it, even if they now scoff at it. Their souls shall be loosened by severe shocks and thereby prepared for the fervent desire which wishes to receive. *Then* indeed, will they recognize the wealth of my Message, of which not one word will be changed. *People*, however, will change within a very short time, because now their souls are still too numbed through the stubborn volition of the distorted intellect.

Foolish men, how secure and great you imagine yourselves to be! I say once more: it is not for *you* to demand of God Almighty, but now *He* for once demands *of you*, because His

forbearance is now at an end!

He demands *proof from you*, that in accordance with His All-Holy Will, you have made good use of the abilities He bestowed upon your spirit! And that you are alert in your spirit and able to recognize *in His Word Him* whom He has sent to you!

If you are unable to do this, you have been unworthy of His Grace; you have not used your abilities, which He bestowed upon you so that you could co-operate in Creation, in a manner worthy of a human being; you have buried and wasted your humanity as useless ones in Creation, and will therefore be erased from His Book of Grace; of being permitted to be conscious of yourselves and of Life!

Reflect within, you men! Wake up spiritually! Very soon you will *have* to change; every one of you, through your own experiences, because already the Almighty Hand of God rests above all things, and His Holy Wrath now pours forth for the salvation of those who have not yet entirely succumbed to the Darkness, and who may still be able to come to an awakening.

Make use of the hours now, you earthmen! The shameful distrust, which as the last evil fruit of the false volition of these men has already spread over the whole earth like a plague, will also be completely shattered, through the Wrath of God. The earth will again be free from it!

First however, there comes the confrontation:

Just as arrogantly as at the time of Jesus, mankind demands again: Prove that you are the Son of Man! Mankind will demand it in their typical, earthly, self-created narrow concepts.

However, in His Holy Wrath God now demands: Mankind, I gave you the ability always to recognize all that comes from my Light! Now recognize my Son, or you will be judged and condemned as unworthy of being human and as hostile to the Light! —

You will soon experience the consequence of this yourselves! And if mankind in *its typical* way will ask, then this time *God* will provide the answer according to *His All-powerful* way!

And all the ludicrous conceit of these earthmen will implode into a little pile of dust. —

Thank the Lord when He helps you with His blows that must strike you too in the reciprocal action. Pray and be ready at the hour of humanity's highest distress, to herald the Word which I have given to you!

---

## Let there be Light!

Let there be Light! How far man still is from grasping this great Word of Creating! Far even from the right desire to learn to understand this happening. And yet he has never ceased to occupy himself with it for thousands of years. In *his* way, however. Not in humility does he wish to take a spark of recognition from the Truth, to receive in purity, but only to puzzle out everything himself intellectually.

In the course of doing so he stubbornly tries to substantiate every proposition he sets up in accordance with the nature and need of his earthly brain. This is quite right for *the things of the earth* and for everything gross material, which includes the brain from which the intellect issues; for the intellect is nothing but gross material comprehension. Thus all those who merely submit to the intellect, wanting only those things to be considered justified and correct which can be absolutely substantiated through the intellect, are very *narrow-minded* and inseparably bound to the World of Gross Matter. With this, however, they are also furthest away from true knowledge and from knowledge in general, although just they in particular imagine themselves to be knowing!

Rightly considered, it is in this pitiable role that the whole of science presents itself to us today. Narrowing itself, convulsively suppressing and fearfully rejecting everything which it cannot also press into the limited confines of its so earthbound understanding. They really reject it with fear, because in spite of their rigidity these learned men cannot indeed deny that there exists *more* than merely that which they can classify in the gross material register of the brain, which thus still belongs unconditionally to the gross material plane, to the outermost ramifications at the lowest end of this great Creation!

In their anxiety some of them become malicious and even dangerous towards all those who refuse to be embraced by this rigidity, but who expect *more* from the human spirit. For this reason they not only investigate with their earthbound intellect, but reach out beyond gross material happenings with their *spirit*, just as is worthy of a still healthy human spirit and as remains its duty in this Creation.

The intellectuals want to suppress *alert spirits at all costs*. This has been so for thousands of years. And the darkness, spreading ever more rapidly mainly through intellectuals as a consequence of such gross material narrowness, gradually formed the soil which made it possible for the intellect to expand its power on earth.

Whatever could not be substantiated by the intellect was persecuted, if at all possible was ridiculed, to prevent it from getting a foothold and disquieting the intellectuals.

As a precautionary measure they tried to disseminate as wisdom, that everything which cannot be fathomed and proved by the intellect belongs only to an untenable theory!

For thousands of years this established principle of the intellectuals has been their pride, also their weapon and their shield. It has even been their throne, which is now bound to collapse as soon as the *spiritual* awakening commences! The spiritual awakening shows that this principle has been absolutely wrong, and that with boundless effrontery it was so twisted as just to protect the earthbound narrow-mindedness and to keep the human spirit in idle sleep.

Nobody realized that just this reasoning proved at the same time how far removed intellectual work lies from true knowledge.

Break the narrow bounds drawn around you in such a clever way as to render you incapable of developing beyond the pompous earthly erudition of the human intellect! You will quickly learn to perceive intuitively that it is precisely those things which the intellect can substantiate that belong to *theory*; for only earth-built theory can be substantiated as a structure, *never true knowledge*!

Thus in this matter, too, it is just the contrary of what has been asserted hitherto. Here also everything must now become new, as mankind was promised by the Lord! —

Everything that can be *proved* by the intellect is earthly theory, nothing else! And the scholarship of today is based on this, and presents itself to us *in this way*. But that has nothing to do with intelligence, i.e., with true knowledge! There are scholars who, according to the Primordial Laws of Creation, i.e., according to reality, count among *the most narrow-minded* of human spirits, even though they possess a great reputation on earth and are highly esteemed by men. In Creation itself they play only a ridiculous role. Some of them, however, can become really dangerous to the human spirits of this earth, because they lead them along false and narrow ways on which the spirit is never able to unfold itself. They suppress them, seeking to impose upon them their own scholarship, which is fundamentally nothing but narrow-minded earthly intellectualism veiled with tinsel.

Awake and expand, you human spirits, make room for upward flight. You are not made for the purpose of remaining only in the gross material sphere; you are to *make use* of it, but not to consider it your home.

In these perverted days many a farm labourer is more *spiritually* awake and thus more *valuable* in Creation than a scholar who has entirely lost his pure intuitive perception. It has really a deep meaning when people talk of *dry* intellectual work or of dry scholarship. How often does the most simple person hit unswervingly on the right thing with an expression of the intuitive perception. The expression “dry” here means “without life”, thus dead! There is no life in it. And the saying carries truth within it.

For this reason man will never be capable of grasping with his intellect the high conception of the Holy Words: “Let there be Light!” Nevertheless, or perhaps just because of this, the words “Let there be” leave him no peace of mind! He tries time and again to picture this to himself in order to arrive at the

*how*. Once he knows about the *how* he is soon confronted with the question of: *why*?

Finally he also wants to know *why* God let Creation come into existence at all! Such is man's nature. However, he desires to *fathom* everything himself, but he will *never* succeed in *fathoming* it! For to do so he would have to work with his spirit. In view of the present decisively dominating activity of the intellect, however, the spirit would be quite unable to set to work, because it is too badly confined and tied to what is *gross material only*, whereas the beginning of Creation, as part of an utterly different species, lies so infinitely far above the gross material.

For this reason man in his present state would never have any prospect of divining this, even if he had the inner capacity to do so. But he *has not* the capacity to do so either. The human spirit simply cannot fathom happenings in such heights, because they are far *above* that point where the human spirit can "know" something, i.e., above where it is capable of absorbing anything consciously!

Wanting to fathom these matters can thus never enter into it. Therefore it is of no avail for man to attempt to concern himself with it. He can merely receive it in pictures as soon as he is willing to absorb a knowing of it in true humility. This "knowing of it" is naturally not the knowledge itself, which latter he can never receive.

Thus if he desires seriously but humbly to know something about it, he may picture it to himself. I will describe the process in such a way that he is able to absorb it. To unfold it in its entire greatness before the human spirit, even if only in picture form, is impossible, because *those* modes of expression given to the human spirit to understand things do not suffice. —

In my lecture "Life" I have already explained how, upon the Act of the Will of God expressed in the words "Let there be Light!", the rays shot beyond the border of the Divine Sphere, and how then, as they proceeded downwards, they cooled off

more and more and were bound to manifest. Through the ever diminishing elasticity or pressure caused by the cooling off, various entities could gradually come to personal consciousness, first in the intuitive perception and then also by strengthening themselves little by little in outward activity. However, it is better for me to say that the pressure does not diminish through the cooling off, but that the cooling off takes place through and within the slackening pressure.

I do not need to emphasise that each individual happening, each minute change in the cooling off process, spans immense spaces and distances, which again the human spirit can never understand and conceive.

In that lecture I contented myself with simply saying that the radiations were impelled beyond the boundary of the Divine Sphere through the Act of Will. I did not speak further about the Act of Will itself.

Today I want to go further and explain why the radiations were then *bound* to shoot across the boundary of the Divine Sphere; for everything in the development of Creation happens only because it cannot be otherwise, thus strictly according to the Law. —

From all eternity the Holy Grail was the extreme pole of the direct Radiation of God; a vessel in which the radiation was collected at the last and furthest point in order, by flowing back, to become renewed ever again. *Around* it stood the Divine Castle of the Grail, with its gates shut fast towards the outside so that nothing could penetrate it anymore and there was no possibility of any further cooling off. Everything was guarded and watched over by the “Elders”, i.e., the Eternal Unchangeable Ones who, at the outermost boundary in the Divine Sphere of Radiation, are able to live conscious of their existence. —

Now if man wishes to follow my description aright he must first realize that Will and Deed are always one in the *Divine Sphere*. Each word is directly followed by the deed or, more precisely, each word as such *is* already the deed itself, because

the Divine Word possesses creative power, and thus immediately forms itself into the deed. So it also was with the great Word: "Let there be Light!"

*Only God Himself is Light!* And His Natural Radiation forms what to the human mind is the immeasurable circle of the Divine Sphere, the outermost anchorage of which is and was the Grail Castle from eternity. When God wished that there should also be Light beyond the boundary of the immediate Divine Radiation, there could be no question of a simple arbitrary *extension* of radiation, *but Light had to be placed at the outermost point of the immediate boundary of the Radiation of Divine Perfection*, in order to radiate forth from there through that which had not hitherto been illumined.

Thus God not only uttered the Words "Let there be Light!" according to human conceptions, but it was simultaneously a deed! This was the great happening when Imanuel was sent out or born out from the Divine Sphere! The placing out of a Light-Part from the Primordial Light in order that this Part might radiate and illuminate independently beyond the direct Radiation of God. The beginning of the great development of Creation was the simultaneous consequence of the sending out of a Part of Imanuel.

Thus Imanuel is the cause and the starting point of Creation through His being sent out from the Living Light Itself. He is the Will of God, Who carries the Word "Let there be Light!" living within Himself, Who is this Word Himself. The Will of God, the Living Cross of Creation, around Which Creation could and had to form. Therefore He also is the Truth as well as the Law of Creation, which was allowed to form through Him, from out of Him!

He is the bridge from the Divine outward, the way to the Truth and to Life, the Creative Source and the Power which issues from God. —

It is a new picture which unfolds before mankind, and yet a picture which does not distort anything, but which only sets right what has been distorted in human opinions.

Now you still have the question as to “why”! Why did God send out Imanuel! Although this is a rather strange, indeed presumptuous, question asked by the human spirit, I will nevertheless explain it to you, because so many men on earth feel themselves to be victims of this Creation through imagining that if they can make mistakes God has created them faulty. Their presumption even goes so far as to make a *reproach* of this, with the personal excuse that God only needed to create man in such a manner that he could never think and act wrongly, and therewith the Fall of Man would not have occurred either. But it is only the human spirit’s capacity for free decision which brought about his decline and fall! Had he always heeded and followed the Laws in Creation there could have been *nothing but* ascent, happiness and peace for him; for that is how these Laws wish it to be. When he disregards them he naturally bumps against them, stumbles and falls. —

In the Circle of Divine Perfection the *Divine* alone can partake of the joys of *conscious* existence which the Radiation of God bestows. It is the purest of the pure in the radiation which can take on form, such as Archangels, for example; still further away at the outermost limit of the sphere of radiation also the Elders, who at the same time are the Guardians of the Grail in the Grail Castle within the Divine Sphere.

When this is accomplished that which is most powerful and strong is drawn out of the radiation! From what is left animal forms, landscapes and buildings then arise in the Divine. Therewith the nature of the last remnants changes ever more, but it is subject to the highest tension in the tremendous pressure brought about by the nearness of God, although even here His distance away must still remain vast and incomprehensible to the human spirit.

These last remnants, which as the ramifications and exhausted residues of the radiations can no longer take on form *in the Divine Sphere*, and which float along and surge about at the outermost boundaries of the Divine like little luminous clouds, also contain the spiritual. Under the high

pressure the latter cannot unfold and become conscious. *The strong urge to do so*, however, is inherent in all that is spiritual, and *it is this urge* which like one great petition ascends out of the perpetual surging, which surging cannot at the boundary come to the point of weaving and forming.

And again it was this petition within the unconscious urge to which God yielded in His great Love, which He allowed to be fulfilled; for only *outside* the boundaries of all that is Divine was it possible for the spiritual, in following its urge, to unfold; so as in part consciously to enjoy the blessings of the Divine radiations, to live in them joyfully, and to build up and create a realm for itself which, flourishing and abounding in harmony, may become a monument raised to the honor of God, in gratitude for His Goodness in granting all that is spiritual the opportunity for the freest development and thus for the forming of all their wishes!

In accordance with the nature and laws of the Radiations of God, *nothing but happiness and joy* was bound to ensue for all those becoming conscious therefrom. It simply could not be otherwise, because any darkness is altogether foreign and incomprehensible to the Light itself.

Thus the great deed was a sacrifice of love on the part of God, Who severed and sent out a Part of Imanuel just in order to grant a conscious enjoyment of existence in response to the perpetual petitioning urge of the spiritual.

To attain this the spiritual had to cross the boundaries of the Divine Sphere towards the outside. However, only a part of the Living Light could pave the way for such a happening, because the attraction of the Primordial Light is so strong that all else was held back at the boundary of its own immediate radiation and was unable to proceed further.

Thus there was but *one* possibility to grant the fulfillment of the urge of all that is spiritual: To send forth a Part from out of the Light Itself! Only in Its Power, by using the way of the radiation of this Part of the Light as a bridge, could the spiritual cross the boundary toward becoming self-conscious.

But even this did not suffice, because according to the Law this small Part of the Light would Itself also be drawn back by the Primordial Light. Therefore the Part of the Light had to be *anchored* outside the boundaries of the Divine Sphere, otherwise the spiritual there would have been as good as lost.

Once having crossed the boundary of the immediate Radiation of God, which could only occur with the help of a Part of the Light, the spiritual was no longer subjected to this original power of attraction, because the ever-increasing distance permitted a cooling off and a subsequent partial becoming conscious, because in the cooling off another species came into existence, creating a separating gulf. Only the Part of the Light, being homogeneous with the Primordial Light, always remained connected with the Primordial Light and also directly subject to Its Law of Attraction.

Thus the inevitable consequence would have been the drawing back of this emitted Part of the Light to the Primordial Light, which would have necessitated a constant repetition of the emission, and thus continual interruption of the Act of Grace. This had to be prevented because, with a return of the Part of the Light across the border into the Divine Region to the Primordial Light, the spiritual outside the border would have immediately been left to itself and thus without any support, and without the supply of power it would have become unable to live. This would have meant the destruction of everything in existence outside.

Now for this reason the Primordial Light, God, connected the Part He sent out from Imanuel with a part of the purest extraction from all that is spiritual, which acted as an anchorage of the Part of the Light with everything outside the border. This was a sacrifice of love on the part of God for the sake of the spiritual, which was therewith able to become conscious and *to remain so*.

The spiritual and everything issuing from it had thus found a support outside the border of the Divine and an eternal Source of Life, from which it could perpetually develop further.

Simultaneously the bridge, in character similar to a lowered drawbridge, was built therewith from out of the Divine, so that the spiritual could perpetually renew and expand itself.

Thus Imanuel manifesting as "Let there be Light" became the starting-point and perpetual Stream of Life for Creation, the core around which all Creation could form.

First of all there is the Pure-spiritual Region as the Basic Creation, to which Imanuel directly formed the bridge. This made Him the *Outborn* Son of God in the Radiation of Whom the Pure-spiritual World could come to self-consciousness, the Son in Whose Radiation mankind of Primordial Creation developed, from which happening the surname "the Son of Man" originated; *that* Son Who directly stands above the human spirits because they could only develop to consciousness through Him.

In the mystery of the separation and sending forth of a Part of Imanuel this Part remained in the Grail Castle of the *Divine* Region by the Law, corresponding with His origin as King of the Holy Grail. He opened the gate towards the outside and therewith formed the bridge over which the spiritual could pass. He did *not* also *cross the threshold* in person; only His Radiations issued from this border into the space which up till then had been void of Light.

Later, by becoming connected with Pure-spirituality at a time when the Pure-spiritual had become conscious, there arose in the Pure-spiritual itself, Parzival, coming out of Imanuel, always remaining connected to Imanuel through a tie, more accurately put, through an unrendable radiation. *This* is the *way* in which man can imagine this connection. They are Two, and yet They are but One in Their working! The Part of Imanuel in the Divine Part of the Grail Castle at the outermost border of the Divine Region, still standing within it and only forming the bridge, which remains kept open towards the Pure-spiritual Sphere through Him, indeed within Him; and Parzival in the Pure-spiritual Part of the Grail Castle, which came into existence with the spiritual becoming

conscious and with the forming of all the landscapes and buildings connected with this process, both Persons being inseparably linked and working as *one* Person, thus also being One!

Thus it happened that man may and even must think of Parzival, the part of Imanuel in the Pure-spiritual, as being born and growing up as a *child*. For this part belongs to Creation, in which the form of the Divine Laws already experienced a change in the initial cooling-off, which change necessitates a time of childhood and development, albeit in a different way from here. On high, birth itself is also different than it is in gross-materiality here on earth, where in the meantime, through the downward progression of the various regions, the forms of the Laws, in the increasing cooling-off and the resultant continuously repeating process of specific species remaining behind as residue, also experience ever more changes.

Parzival is linked with Imanuel by a tie of radiation, at the same time also by a tie of radiation with Elizabeth, the Queen of Womanhood in the Divine, as His Mother, and thus He forms the permanent anchorage through the radiation connection.

Subsequent Creation could come into existence *through the activity of the Pure-spiritual* Primordial Beings. In descending the process is always a constant but weaker repetition of the Primordial Creation, which proceeds according to the respective laws. As a matter of course the nature of the happening changes according to the respective transformation of the Laws.

There was no longer any direct link from Imanuel for Subsequent Creation, because this only developed as a consequence of Primordial Creation from the volition of the Pure-spiritual Beings. This process, however, was likewise based only on the Love towards the spiritual which, remaining unconscious in the Pure-spiritual Realm, developed the same urge to become conscious as was the case previously with the

Pure-spiritual in the Divine Region. But the power of the spiritual did not suffice to form itself immediately and at once to the state of consciousness in Subsequent Creation, as was possible for the stronger Pure-spiritual to do.

The last precipitation of the spiritual, not being as strong as the Pure-spiritual, had first slowly to develop in Subsequent Creation under the influence of the Prime-Spiritual Primordial Beings.

Since Subsequent Creation grew dark through the slowly developing human spirits and their fall, which was due to the one-sided cultivation of the intellect, it was necessary to intervene. In order helpfully to put right again everything in which mankind had failed, Parzival was linked with the World of Gross Matter in Abdruschin. Therefore Abdruschin was Parzival and therefore also Imanuel through the continued direct connection of the radiations, which cost great preparation and trouble to bring about. Through His Life on earth Subsequent Creation could again be given corresponding Light-Power to clarify, strengthen and help all that is spiritual, and passing through this the entire Subsequent Creation.

However, mankind of Subsequent Creation stubbornly opposed it and in their conceit refused to accept it, because they did not trouble themselves about the Laws in Creation and clung instead to their man-made theories. Nor did they heed the mission of the Son of God, which was to bring them help *before* the World Judgment.

The World Judgment itself is a natural happening, and the consequence of establishing a straight line to the Light, which was accomplished by Parzival's wandering through the parts of the world.

In this wandering the earth was the turning-point, being the outermost boundary in the World of Gross Matter, for due to the spiritual nature of a few men it still offered an anchorage for this. Thus the earth is the last planet that can be saved, although it already belongs to the Realm of Darkness. Whatever lies *even* lower in this respect than the earth, i.e.,

whatever is encompassed even more by the Darkness, is left to disintegration, to which all darkness is bound to fall a prey with everything it holds fast.

The earth has thus become the *last* stronghold of the Light on soil which is hostile to the Light. Therefore the terminal point of the Light is now anchored *here*. The tighter the direct line of the Triune of the Light Activity: Imanuel – Parzival – Abdruschin, stretches from one day to the other, the more tangible and visible becomes the outworking of the power in the Divine Will, which creates order and forcefully straightens everything which mankind has distorted, that is, in so far as it can still be put right. That which *cannot* be made straight will have to break. The Power of the Light never permits of anything intermediate.

Only when this line of the Light is stretched taut and *straight* does the world tremble from the Divine Power, does mankind then recognize Imanuel in Abdruschin!

Such is the process of development in all simplicity. Out of love, the innate desire of all creatures consciously to experience was fulfilled! However, out of love for all those who wish to have happiness and peace by obeying the Natural Laws of this Creation, everything that disturbs the peace therein will now also be destroyed, because it proved unworthy of the permission to be self-conscious. This is the World Judgment, rightfully dreaded! The great Cosmic Turning Point!

The human spirit has no right whatever to ask about the “why” of Creation, for this is a demand upon God which he must not make, because through the voluntary fall of man he *closed himself* to all wisdom and the possibility of higher recognition!

But I gave an explanation in order to counteract the senseless illusions of the intellectuals, so that such human spirits as strive seriously for the Truth, and who are ready to receive it in humility, shall not allow themselves to be led astray by such wanton, blasphemous presumption in the moment of final decision, to be or not to be, for every creature! —

The true seeker will now gain much from knowing about this, for you all cannot live otherwise but in the Law! The *Living Law*!

Whether you are capable of absorbing it is your affair. For I cannot help you with this either. Mankind asked, begged, and I have answered in matters far above the human spirit's ability to comprehend, which are fulfilled vast distances away from him, following the adamant course of Divine Justice and Divine Perfection. Man should bow down in humility!

---

## I send you!

**G**o forth, proclaim and explain my Word in the Light of Truth! So that the Kingdom of God may come to this earth.

Your Kingdom come! How often have these words been spoken since Jesus, Son of God was here on this earth; spoken with passion and zeal, imagined in fervent prayer, with unbearable longing, by those who sincerely struggle for the Light and for enlightenment.

Yet, now that the great hour in the cosmic happening has arrived which is to bring the Kingdom of God to you earthlings, you want to pass it by, or even attack it, because it is not coming in a manner that you had thought in your restricted imagination.

You do not realize what you are doing. But your ignorance does not protect you from the consequences of your actions which you will now have to suffer to the very end, no matter how bitter that end will be, and it may even have to be the end of you!

What you have prayed and pleaded for over thousands of years whenever sickness, worry and destitution knocked on your door to warn and admonish, you shall receive, since the time has been fulfilled. Yet now you regard it as no more than you would regard a beggar who annoys you.

But God is Holy! Holy, too, is the Word He sends to you! He no longer allows that which is Holy to be abused by unfaithful human beings who consider themselves to be more than they are before Him and His sacrosanct Creation which is His work and which He gave to them in His Graciousness! — Holy, too however, is His wrath which humanity's presumptuousness has forced upon itself so that it will be released and will purify

those parts of the world which were poisoned by such wrongdoing.

Retribution will strike all men in Holy Justice in the *exact* way in which they themselves prepared the soil for it and with the *kind* of force they consequently deserve.

Justice! Each of you will receive it depending on the forms which your volition formed within you hitherto. —

Throughout the Heavens and through all the worlds there resounds, crystal clear, inexorable, sharp, the one word: *Justice!* This word is Life. It becomes your Judgment! It approaches with thunderous roar directly and without delay; it pervades and embraces the entire Creation with irresistible force, mighty and great, exalted beyond any human concept... Holy!

*With* this Justice the Kingdom of God now takes a foothold on this earth, in the entire Creation, so that all those who earnestly and in humility strive for the Light may feel happy and secure.

Time will show who belongs to that number! There will be no more “if” and “but” for people of this earth who up until now merely wasted their best time in playful speculation. It will be taken away from them and thus the weapon will be wrested from their hand. They have persisted in turning this weapon upon themselves while wailing and ravaging.

This miracle is brought on by God’s Holy Wrath! You, however, go forth then, proclaim and explain my Message which will bring God’s Kingdom to men on earth.

Make certain that you proclaim and interpret the Message in the *right* way! Do not once again mix the wine with water as has happened before when Jesus walked the earth and even more so when he no longer dwelled on this earth.

You must therefore first of all completely comprehend the Message within yourselves before you are able to tell others about It! Then, if you want to share the Word with others you must use the form in which *I* have given it to you! In this, keep my Will as it is and do not introduce your own will into the same words. —

This requires you to fully understand my Will! When proclaiming my Message you must follow the structure which I gave you strictly and exactly! It contains wise, precisely intended guidance for those human souls that are longing for the Light. Use *this* as a guideline for the work of upbuilding and for the leadership. You must not arbitrarily alter anything, nor pick this or that Lecture from the middle, in the belief that this particular Lecture will be particularly suitable for an enquirer.

It would *appear* that way only in the beginning but soon it would become apparent what you neglected. You must guide the souls step by step, patiently, and without overloading them, just as I have guided you; for they come to you like children, ignorant of all the things that have already become familiar to you.

Do not expect of them that which you are able to give; for you must not forget that I have raised up your spirit for a *higher* level of comprehension than usual for man. You are *specialy gifted* so that now you are able to *fulfill!*

Things that have long become matter of fact for you and that you no longer even mention are great revelations to seekers which they must first learn to fully comprehend before being able to move on in the knowledge.

You must never expect the inquirers to endeavor to grow into the high levels of *your* perception, instead you must meet *them* spiritually, must offer your hand to all who ask on *their* level of comprehension. It is the only way for them to seize the help and use it to move upward.

Nor must you blend any part of Lectures from the current time with partial content of the beginning of the Message; they cannot be combined but must follow one another *in sequence* to form the steps necessary for the right understanding. The order assigned by me absolutely requires constantly increasing maturity; for I start with the beginning of existing comprehension and increase the level of knowledge step by step *in a way* that allows a human spirit to follow me. Then I

expand the various parts of Creation more and more. I separate many things that have up to now remained under a collective general term into new parts which I had not named before.

Only in *this way* was it possible for me, in time, to unfold a picture of great things which a human being can grasp, provided he follows me precisely, not leaving out or skipping lightly over even one step. The smallest gap would make it completely impossible for him!

The structure of my Message is connected with the mystery of Omniscience which knows the human spirits and their capabilities better than you humans are able to know. You must submit to this wisdom implicitly, or you will never reach the goal you strive for!

I do not hand over the Message to you so that you can deal with It as *you* see fit in your efforts to transmit it to humanity, but I *command* that It must remain *immutable* in all that It contains and in the way It is! Whoever will change even the smallest meaning, the smallest word, even with the best intention, is guilty of wrongdoing!

It Is the Holy Word of God, which man may not touch in order to adapt It in a way more convenient for himself or for easier understanding by indolent human spirits!

The structure must remain as I gave it to you. Whoever seeks to tamper with it must be excluded from the Grace of offering to others therefrom. Too much sin has already been committed with the Word of Jesus, where human cleverness tried to screen and sift, only because it failed to comprehend the Word and considered some of It too inconvenient for earthly realization. In consequence man preferred to retain *earthly* concepts, and distorted the Word so as to make It conform to human ways of thinking.

In its structure the Message offers to the human soul continual ascent up to its uppermost perfection! Be mindful of this and never be tempted to deviate from it.

Consider that you are to provide *guidance*! In guiding, one steadily progresses and does not constantly jump back to

places that have long been passed.

Do not treat the Holy Word in the same manner as has been the custom in temples and churches. Do not pick parts from the middle, the beginning or the end alternately in order to discuss, explain and interpret them. Instead follow the one *steady* path that I gave you in the structure. The Word is not to conform to people, but everyone is to conform to the Word! For the Word *is*, but men are yet to *become*.

This time it is up to *man* to approach the Word, it is not up to the Word to approach individuals.

You must comprehend this well, and impress it upon your mind; for *herein lies help* for mankind and success for you. Do not dissect the *Word* but separate *people* into groups which have to allow themselves to be guided by a skilled spirit! *That* will be the right way. Always start at the beginning with each group! Do not accept anyone in between unless he first made every effort to catch up on everything so as to be able to be on the *same* level with the others.

It would be wrong in a group of serious listeners to arbitrarily go back again and again in the progression of lectures for the sake of convenience. Be aware, however: I refer only to those who *teach* and *guide*, those who spread my Word, not to the listeners or readers.

Listeners and readers may, of course, always go back *on their own*, since *from the beginning* every sentence contains necessary knowledge which is not repeated in the same way. Man must not miss any of it.

Man's soul is carefully guided in my Word. It is in the very structure that man finds all the supports necessary for his soul. Therefore the soul must not make any leaps either forward or backward. Of course, it must stand securely on each step before lifting a foot toward the next one. Compliance with this will lead the soul to accomplishing its goal without falling and without delay.

Therefore follow me in this too: Just as I endeavor in my lectures up here to live on *your* present level, so *you* must in

*your* work adapt yourselves to the respective current maturity level of the people who ask for your help if you wish to be successful in really helping them.

It is for this purpose that you were especially gifted and were taught and prepared far from the general world, each one according to his particular nature.

For every maturity level therefore, guard against using material that was already covered previously but also avoid jumping ahead in your explanations. Both ways are confusing, they inhibit rather than support progress, no matter how well intended. You will always cause harm instead of benefit, you will offer stones instead of bread.

Therefore, remain *alive* in the Word *and* in the people. Strive to always keep harmony between these two poles, creating balance *within yourselves* if you wish to spread my Word truly in accordance with my intent!

Never seek the easy way in your activity but remain flexible *within yourselves* as well as *in your environment*; for the Holy Word *is* Life!

Proclamation of the Word is *not* meant to be comfortable *hours of uplifting* for people, but rather *hours of most rigorous work* for their spirit as well as for you who wish to spread the Word!

You are not supposed to uplift men, but to guide them! Guide them upward on a path to luminous heights. This requires effort! There must be no jumping backward or forward, or aimless commingling, merely in order to arbitrarily pick and choose nice passages. A person who wishes to reach a beautiful view point must walk the entire way to it or he cannot enjoy this view! Pay attention to such allegories from Nature. They can be your best guidelines for much or all of your activity.

When you speak use *simple* expressions! Greatness lies only in simplicity. Note however that simplicity must never be confused with indolence. That would be wrong. Indeed, true simplicity requires greatest expenditure of energy from you!

Simplicity also requires unadulterated authenticity; for

without authenticity simplicity would instantly degenerate into ludicrousness. Simplicity in thought, speech and action will never allow for deception nor duplicity for they will find no hiding place in it. Simplicity *must* be genuine through and through; otherwise it cannot exist and *is not* simplicity which is inseparable from Truth.

Only the *Truth* can therefore be spoken in simple and clear words. Everything else needs to be circumscribed with pretty words, pompous phrases, appendages, just to sound important. This also applies precisely to *your* actions and your entire way of living. Only if you can become truly simple in all this will you be truly genuine within!

Do not mistake simplicity for poorness or paltriness! They are very different from each other.

Simplicity manifests beauty of every kind, more than that, it *is* beauty itself. And beauty is naturalness in every form; for what is natural is always beautiful per se. Man alone, through affectation, turns so many things into caricatures because he lost simplicity within himself.

Called ones, there is still much you need to learn and there are many ways in which you have to change. But there is only enough time left for you to *act*, there is no time left for reflecting or slow maturing. Overnight you must now be *ready* in yourselves!

Called ones have accepted the obligation to live *in an exemplary manner* in society, in their profession or business as well as in their families, in short, to live as true human beings, pleasing to God, supporting and uplifting all of Creation whose rich fruits they may enjoy in every form as they are always provided for them at an always richly set table.

If some are not admitted to It in order to satisfy themselves, the fault lies only with people who interfere in wicked ways; for Creation offers everything that humans need, it offers enough for everyone It has received as guest. —

At the same time you are not to only teach the Word, you are to make It come alive *within* you and *about* you! Even *about*

you, in your *outward* appearance! You must *form* yourselves according to the Word.

In him who carries the Living Word within, the Word will, without fail and spontaneously, surge outward and manifest not only in his speech but in all his actions! Such a person will endeavor to ennoble himself, in cleanliness, in his dress, his movements. He will, and indeed he must endeavor to be a *joy* to his fellowmen whether in his work, his daily life, at the table, or in his leisure time, regardless, he will form his whole being in a way that evidences earthly excellence.

This is the duty, the goal for every man *on earth*; it is one of the *reasons* for his incarnation on this earth. He is to abrade himself among his fellowmen. Even though he has to leave his earthly body behind when he continues his journey through Creation.... everything that he acquired in the constraint of the physical body, e.g. self control, nobility of movement, he will *take with him* as the property of his soul.

The inner development of the spirit must keep equal pace with his physical nature, must be in harmony.

It is not possible for a human spirit to be truly noble and mature if he lets himself go in his physical being. If he does, things are not right with his spirit. Under no circumstances!

Most people however have different ideas in this regard; therefore, many remain very careless in their personal manners and in their social intercourse; some even eat their food in such a way as to offend others at the table, because the most basic sense of the esthetic is repulsed. This represents a lack of consideration for others and is definitely not a sign of inner maturity or value.

These are details of great significance for so many important matters, even for spiritual ascent! More than being merely earthly habits, such manners also become attached to the *spirit* impeding its progress! Far too little attention has been paid to these matters. Man simply categorized many manifestations of spiritual flaws under the umbrella of "lack of tact" or "insensitivity".

These things are crucial for many a human destiny; they are obstacles to earthly as well as spiritual ascent. They are *not* trivialities or minor details as they are thought to be, but they all are manifestations of *spiritual* flaws which remain attached even after passing over to the beyond and are capable of forcing the human soul into many intermediate incarnations on this earth, thus delaying, if not totally preventing ascent.

Therefore, men, form yourselves according to the word even *outwardly*, keeping pace with your increasing maturity. Otherwise you lack harmony and you may be pulled back from your ascent despite your best volition!

There is nothing one-sided for man. The spirit cannot mature by itself on earth without pulling along the earthly body in its development! A good-natured person who in his earthly ways still carelessly lets himself go shows that his spirit cannot be considered *good* as well; for being good means being spiritually mature and ready for the lighter regions. This however is not possible without physically striving to keep up with the spirit.

This is possible for *any* socio-economic class without exception; it is possible for the most simple human being; for nothing is required but good volition and the effort to exert self-discipline, for it requires neither time nor money nor anything else; it can be practiced *anywhere* and at *any time*, at work or at mealtime, as well as during hours of rest or of entertainment and diversion. There is not one moment in life when it could not be practiced.

Therefore, let your outward conduct bear witness now to your spirit, which has actually been thirsting for this for a long time!

He who does not strive to accomplish this will join those who are like him and therefore have the same vibrations as he does, which he cannot disturb. This will create a certain kind of harmony, even among this kind; it is easier for them to ascend because they are not held down by anger which their careless behavior arouses in others.

Then, when you have fulfilled all of this, and *only then* can

you approach seekers in the right way and properly present yourself! You will then be *the way* seekers expect you to be! In this way you *help* those who are striving for the Light of Truth, who yearn for It! You give them much indeed, for your *outward appearance* is what they see and judge *first!*

At first people see *only* your outward appearance! Your dress, your entire demeanor, the way you conduct yourself in social interaction. Therefore, transform your outward appearance accordingly so as to fulfill the Word in this way also. It is the *bridge* which people must cross in order to find their way to your soul and to the treasure of your spirit which you wish to offer!

Then, when people are ready to open their souls before you, do not overwhelm them with *your* knowledge, called ones! Men want the *Holy Word*, not *your* knowledge. Bear this in mind!

You have been richly gifted with much knowledge so that you will be able to *work* in this knowledge. It was given to you to *use* in your *service*, not for you to pass on to people as *knowledge!* The knowledge is to make your service easier for *you*, it is only to be *used* by you for the benefit of men, it is not to be left to them. Attempts to do so would have to lead to revenge upon you and prove wrong, because people would have no idea what to do with it.

In fragmented form they would attempt to use the lofty gifts only for self-serving purposes, just as they have always done. And this is not intended.

The abilities you received for use in the service of the Grail must be sacred to you! This contains everything I have to say to you on this subject. More harm and new misfortune would come to humanity from such partial knowledge.

Therefore, only *work* in your knowledge and your understanding, but do *not teach it!* It is the requirement I give to the called ones for their journey in service. If you fulfill this requirement you will sow blessings, if you do not adhere to it you will spread misfortune, first of all unto yourselves then also onto others.

---

If a called one uses the abilities given to him properly, quietly and faithfully in his work people will be happy, they will quickly recognize and gratefully enjoy all the blessings. However, were he to explain his knowledge to others, be it only in his own enjoyment or satisfaction, they will not understand him, therefore have doubts about his knowledge and turn away from him! Speak to your fellow men through your *activity*, called ones!

Never forget that you received your abilities as a *gift*, that *everything* you are able and *permitted* to do is by God's Grace!

Whatever your earthly needs are will flow to you in abundance if you make the effort. But never presume to use these gifts in *self-serving* thoughts of your intellect, that is for purposes other than the service of the Holy Grail! According to Grail Law, they would become a curse rather than a blessing to you. *You have been endowed so that you may give!* Make this the basis for your activity in the future.

Be mindful of this at all times and let not your intellect set traps for you. Stay firm and free in your endeavor, faithful in service, then, ultimately, humanity's gratitude will joyfully accompany you to luminous heights, where God's Love awaits you who have proven to be *faithful* servants in the vineyard of the Lord!

Go forth, proclaim and explain the Word in the Light of Truth to all human beings who yearn for It. Be examples to them always so that God's Kingdom may come to this earth also!

---

## Easter 1934.

Just as so often in the Spring, raging storms herald anew the resurrection of Nature, so now shall Easter proclaim the resurrection of you and all mankind from the spiritual sleep that has endured for many thousands of years. It shall proclaim the resurrection of your spirit, which has hitherto been enslaved in the earthbound intellect.

The new era will be born in tribulation and pain, and the purification will be ushered in by a great cosmic fever, which will also toss and convulse the diseased body of this earth, so that it seems about to perish, whereas actually this happening leads to recovery.

The old will be extracted, crushed and cast off, because it was false and disturbing in the rhythm of this Creation. It must perish, consumed by scorching fires, and then, from out of the ashes there will arise, through the Grace of God, the new, which, growing in obedience to the Laws, will blossom to full beauty, yielding a rich harvest of the highest values of which the human spirit is capable.

But first the violent storms must come. Purifying fever spasms must first pervade everything in order to destroy the old before the new can arise. And you who are to become strong enough to emerge from it, *need the Grace of God* to enable you to stand upright again, when, after all the storms, the new sun calls you to new life!

You will experience wondrous things within your souls. Weary almost unto death, yet invigorated afresh with indescribable power, you will at one and the same time feel both fainthearted and courageous; sorrowful yet filled with gladness. As after severe thunderstorms, the last raindrops sparkle and glitter like the finest crystals on flowers and

grasses, so will the scalding tears of bitterly lamenting souls suddenly radiate like diamonds, as an expression of purest joy and deepest gratitude!

You will rejoice amid your tears, and trembling you will straighten yourselves in the glowing radiance of the Love of your God! *This* is how you will feel *after* the Judgment. —

Unswerving loyalty is your way thereto, holy faith the key to the gate into the new life; and in selfless love lies the strength you need!

Then, one day, you will hear *those* Easter bells which ring out peace to all who, like convalescents after a long illness, have found their way spiritually home to the Lord, Whose Holy Wrath they had to experience before they recognized Him, so that at last, filled with gratitude for their salvation, they were able to perceive in It His Supreme Love.

The day will also come, when Easter bells ring out joy to a people who, on their presumptuous wrong paths, brought the most severe suffering upon themselves, and only *through this*, learned to look upwards and find at last *that* maturity which will enable them radiantly to lead all humanity on earth in the service of the Lord.

Thus, it will be Easter bells that finally sound fulfillment to all countries; the complete withdrawal of Darkness from the earth, which may then bask in the new Light bestowed upon it, until it is able to free itself for dissolution into the primeval state from which it once developed.

But these bells are now calling to Judgment! Every human being must pass before the Sword of Justice and be struck by its ray, not simultaneously, but within a very definite time, which is short in proportion to the number of people.

*Just once* does each individual have the opportunity to perceive intuitively for himself, the last Grace of God in the Word! In one way or another It passes before him, so that he *can* recognize It, if only he so *wills*. If he does not then cling to It with all his strength, and *make use* of this moment, It never returns to him.

Only a small number of these human beings will still recognize the Grace and make use of it for themselves. The others miss their time; the opportunity that approaches only once. They think that, if all else fails, they will still be able, as hitherto, to turn back to It at any hour. However, it will be a fearful realization when they must come to understand that in losing this, they have irretrievably lost all, and that their names have already been erased from the Book of Life, from *being permitted* to exist in Creation.

For many this realization no longer comes here on earth, but only after they have had to leave their physical bodies. However, they were already foredoomed to eternal death, from which, after disintegration in unspeakable torments of the personal self-consciousness that they were permitted, there is no awakening! —

Only *once*, men, does this grace pass quietly before you, without calling you; for it is *you* who must be on the lookout for It; ardently longing, ever watchful and awaiting It, open to the ray that comes from the Luminous Heights. *Only once* will each of you human beings still be touched by It! Not pleading or enticing, but impersonal, indifferent as to who grasps It or lets it pass by. It is the Will of God that *you* exert *yourselves* for It!

Fear and boundless terror would seize mankind had they the faintest idea of the Sublimity of God, radiantly enthroned in His Unsubstantiated Omnipotence at unapproachable distances, unapproachable even to the purest Archangels in the Divine Sphere!

And many human spirits believe themselves to be partly of Divine origin, or at least expect in the final supreme consummation, to become Divine, perhaps even more so; to become a part of God!

They, who are merely creatures of a *radiation*, able to become conscious only in its very last ramifications, since otherwise they are too weak to bear the pressure of the Light when it has already been cooled down many times. They, who have not the

least conception of God's Creation, much less of God, would bear Divine Sparks within them!

They only wallow in fantastic images which originate in the sultry swamp of their own desires, and they worship and revere their beloved "ego". Their humility is foul blasphemy of the pure Holiness of the Lord! In their arrogant vanity and lurking hypocrisy, they are the most repulsive creatures of this earth.

It is just *these* human creatures who dare to disregard the Will of God in Creation, replacing it with their will, as the only authority and criterion for their thoughts and actions.

This poison has pervaded everything on earth. Nothing that happens here is in accordance with the true Will of God, but only with the volition of men. They have even molded the Will of God merely to suit their wishes, and then boldly assert that the Will of God must be thus and not otherwise, because they think it is so! Their thinking, however, is always influenced by their wishes!

Sinful, wanton blasphemy everywhere. Man has spread this poison wherever he has gone. Wherever he works with his thinking, which can see only himself as the centre and core of all existence and activity, there he has set up *his* will against *God's* Will, and distorted everything with his harmful obstinacy.

In a most offensive way, he takes it for granted that he can usurp the right to make decisions in many a matter, to which he is not entitled according to the Holy Laws of God, which are firmly anchored in Creation, and to which he should have submitted, if he wants peace.

However, that he does not *want* to do! God, according to this very word, is to serve him as a support for his conceit before others for daily and often hourly he impudently asserts that his *own* thoughts and words, as well as his deeds, are willed by God, even calling upon God to bear witness to *his right!*

Each shall now receive his *right*, Sacred Right, but not as he imagines it! And you, who submit faithfully, you shall witness this in the coming time!

Whatever earthman does is false, because he has turned away from God through his own efforts. Everything must first become new, from the ground up, before he can again find grace in the sight of God.

The very concept of God which man has formed is wrong! For even here much can easily be recognized as a product of human conceit, so deeply has it eaten into the human brain. It is *upon this* foundation that the faulty structure of all his thoughts and actions rests. Man no longer knows his God, but has made a convenient idol of Him! No solid structure can be built upon such a false foundation. All that stands upon it is bound to fall.

Even with a *good* volition man is no longer worth helping. Only the inconceivable Love of God is capable, in spite of this, of sending forth an offer of help once more!

This time, however, man will only be given the *opportunity*, nothing more; like throwing a lifebelt to a drowning person, where no other help is possible.

Thus it is with you, you men! You must fight desperately for yourselves, and must see to it that, at the right time, *you* grasp this lifebelt, otherwise you are doomed to eternal death to which you yourselves have pledged yourselves!

This lifebelt is thrown to you, in the Word of God. Only he who clings to it in prayer will be saved, and everything else will have to perish!

Therefore men, fight for your existence with the very best of your volition, or you will soon be overwhelmed by the waves! —

I know that a large part of these people will be and must be lost now, for otherwise health cannot be restored to this world.

God will tolerate only creatures who submit to His Will through which they came into existence in the first place. Nothing else shall enjoy the blessings of Creation any longer. Clarity must be everywhere. What is disruptive will be cut off, and without a supply of power it will have to decay; for there is only *one* maintaining power which is given out of God. And this will no longer be available to those who are disruptive or stubborn!

The Holy Sword of God swings purifyingly in the ray of the highest Light also over this earth now, so that nothing will remain on it which does not recognize the Truth and will joyfully attune itself to It!

Everything which mankind formed as caricatures of justice, conceived by a corrupt intellect which serves only the basest lust for power, will be crushed by the Justice of God! — —

“It is enough! This far and no further!” speaks the Lord, and His Holy Wrath destroys everything which is unworthy of His Blessings!

---

## Unsubstantiate.

The word “substantiate” is an expression of Creation. It is so comprehensive that the human spirit as a particle of Creation will never be able to get a right conception of it.

As the counterpart of substantiate the expression “Unsubstantiate” is named. Less than ever can man imagine what is the meaning of Unsubstantiate. He will always have a confused idea of it, because it is something which must perpetually remain an enigma to him. He cannot even form a conception of it, because there exists no form for Unsubstantiate that comes within the understanding of the human spirit.

However, in order to bring you at least a little closer to an understanding I will for once substitute earthly expressions for the expressions of Creation, although these can only be considered the vaguest shadow in comparison to the reality.

For substantiate imagine *dependent*, and for Unsubstantiate that which alone is *independent*!

According to human thought this gives you the best possibility to approach the matter *objectively*, although it can neither render nor designate *that* which it really is, or how it is; for you would always be unable to comprehend the “*what*”, whereas in this way you can at least approximately envisage the “*how*” to yourselves.

The Unsubstantiate is therefore that which alone is independent, while all else is dependent upon it *in every respect* and is thus called substantiate, of which everything that is spiritual is also a part and likewise everything that is Divine, whereas the Unsubstantiate is only God!

From this you can realize that there is still a great difference between the Divine and God. The Divine is not yet God; for the

Divine is substantiate, but God is Unsubstantiate. The Divine and all else that exists is dependent upon God, it cannot exist without God. God, however, is absolutely independent, if we are to use the earthly conceptions which, however, can naturally not convey what it really is, because earthly or human conceptions cannot span such greatness.

Thus heed this well, God is not Divine, but God is *God*, because He is Unsubstantiate, and the Unsubstantiate is not Divine, but is God!

Christ Jesus once said in simple words:

“I and the Father are *one!*”

Thus He was not Divine, for that would mean Substantiate, rather He was God-Son, coming from the *Unsubstantiate*.

Pertaining to Him the expression “The Divine One” is therefore wrong if you humans want to look at it correctly. Divine are the Archangels and the Elders in the Divine Realm. Jesus, however, was and is God-Son!

This is a simple, unshakable fact, since He originated from the *Unsubstantiate*, thus from God Himself, not from the immediate radiation of God, which is *Substantiate* and which may be referred to as *Divine*.

The core of the Son of God is Himself a part of the *Unsubstantiate*. You see that the sacrifice which God the Father offered to all of mankind is much greater and that the crime of this mankind and of Lucifer is much more egregious for waging a most base battle against God, from whom *all, without exception*, must remain totally *dependent*.

The consequence of the most Holy Wrath affects the evil doers with the fullest force which is not to be mitigated!

You however, who were permitted to become acquainted with my Word which comes from the *Unsubstantiate*, will now be able to recognize the full greatness of your task, as well as the magnitude of all the Grace thus granted you.

## How the Message should be absorbed.

**M**an on earth makes *one* great mistake when seeking for spiritual knowledge: He wants to strive forward with leaps and bounds instead of proceeding step by step in calmness and sure certainty. No sooner is he aware of some impulse that wants to direct him to seek for spiritual values than he already asks about the last things, things far beyond the capacity of a human spirit to comprehend.

He thereby renders himself incapable from the very outset of absorbing anything. Perplexed and discouraged, he soon gives up the search. Quite often even resentment arises in his soul and he derides, mocks and scorns other seekers, facing them with enmity. But such hostility is actually based on the feeling of a depressing recognition that he was himself incapable of finding values in the spiritual. The *knowledge of his impotence* lets him who is joined by envy and jealousy become an enemy.

A person who scoffs is not superior but merely embittered. Scorn and ridicule hold an open confession of personal inadequacy, personal weakness, of inability to grasp a matter which a scoffer lacks the capacity to understand. Or it is envy that speaks from him. Envy because another person can comprehend something which remains incomprehensible to him.

It is also characteristic of the human spirit that when he fancies he possesses a greater knowledge he does not indulge in mockery and scorn. If he is really convinced of his knowledge he has no incentive to malice and enmity. —

But fear can also cause a human spirit to be filled with hatred. Especially fear of being treated with disdain in public opinion, fear of it becoming known that the personal knowledge he so proudly displayed in the past will receive a jolt through

some matter which *he* himself is incapable of following, or which he cannot follow without designating his hitherto imagined knowledge as deficient, if not wrong.

For a human spirit on earth *this* is then the *most potent* incentive for attacking, for scorn and mockery, indeed for the most repulsive kinds of hostility that do not shrink from lying and slandering, and which finally even degenerate into acts of violence if there is no other way of achieving success.

It is the same in the smallest things as in the greatest. The more influence a person exerted with his supposed knowledge upon his fellow-men, the more they are informed as to his pseudo-knowledge, the more energetically will he always close himself to new recognitions when they come from an alien source, the more desperately will he also work against them.

Many a person on earth would gladly open himself to new knowledge, even if it is opposed to his hitherto imagined and false pseudo-knowledge, so long as nobody knows of his old views.

But when his fellow-men know about it then his vanity does not permit him to throw in his lot with a new knowledge which changes his own, for in doing so he would show that he has so far been wrong. He then rejects it, sometimes even against his innermost conviction, which often gives him anxious hours!

Out of cowardice he then seeks for high-sounding words to cover up his vanity, and the subtle intellect helps him to do so. It then allows him to declare in a dignified manner that he considers himself responsible for those who have so far followed him along his path. Out of "love" for the others he rejects the new knowledge so that no disquiet will arise in that peace which the souls of his believers found in their past thinking.

Damnable hypocrites who speak thus. For their much-praised peace is nothing but *slumber*, which holds the human spirit fettered and prevents it from bestirring itself according to God's Law of Movement, from unfolding the spirit so that its

wings will grow for the flight to the Luminous Heights, from which those slumbering peacefully must remain far removed!

But many people gladly run after such mischievous detractors of God's Laws, because the comfort they teach is so alluring to the indolent human spirits! It is the broad and all-too-comfortable road to damnation, to the regions of disintegration. Not without purpose did the Son of God Jesus point so often to the hard, stony and narrow path to the Height and warn against the broad road of comfort! He knew the slothful indolence of these human spirits only too well, and the temptations by Lucifer's henchmen who make use of this weakness!

Man must bestir himself if he wishes to reach the Luminous Heights. Paradise awaits him, but it does not come down of itself unless he strives for it. To strive does not mean just to think, to plead and to beg as you are doing today. To strive means to *act*, to *exert oneself* to get there!

But men only beg and then imagine that they will even be carried aloft by the very hands through which, in their hatred, they once thrust nails! Only *the path* is shown and will be shown to all of you, you indolent ones, but you yourselves must walk upon it! You must exert yourselves to do so.

How often did Christ say this, and yet you believe that you can be forgiven your sins without difficulty, immediately, if only you pray for it. You live according to *your* wishes and desires, and even beg for Divine Help to do so. And again you expect this help to be only in *that* form which *you* wish for, thus even making conditions about it.

Indolence and presumption wherever you look. Nothing else. *This* also is spiritual laziness, when in the very beginning of your spiritual awakening you already ask, leaping forward, for the last things. In doing so you only want to see at the outset whether it will pay to walk along the path which will cost so much toil. Indeed you have no idea how ludicrous a person appears when putting such questions to Him Who can give you

the answer. For such questions can only be explained by One Who comes consciously from Above, One Who was in the things that for you are the Highest, which, however, in fact are the first things and must not be called the last things.

And He Who comes from Above also knows that not a single one of the human spirits can even divine these things, much less absorb them *knowingly*.

*I brought you the Message which earthmen need if they want to ascend spiritually!* Just examine it aright! At best, however, you find it beautiful... and immediately ask about things which in any case you will never be able to understand. And which are therefore of no use to you either.

But when once you have inwardly absorbed the entire Message aright, and have experienced every word of it within yourselves, once you have lived it through in order to transform it into deeds as a matter of course in your existence on earth, then it will become your own like the flesh and blood you need for the fulfillment of your wandering on earth.

If you act *in this way* it follows that you will no longer ask these questions; for then you will have become *knowing*, as knowing as a human spirit is capable of becoming. And with this the nonsensical wishing also simultaneously ceases; for through the knowledge you have become truly humble, have cast off the weaknesses of your human vanity, of haughtiness, of the conceit of your own pseudo-knowledge, and all the many faults which a human spirit has acquired.

Thus whoever asks these and similar questions still sleeps on in the indolence of his spirit, only imagining he is thereby emphasising alertness of spirit and the strong urge to seek. He is no different from a child who wants to run a race before it has even learned to walk!

Neither can you pick out individual passages from the Message just as they suit you or interest you; for interest is not sufficient for spiritual learning, it extends only to the intellect, not to the spirit, which requires more.

*You must take all or nothing.*

It is true that genuine seeking can arise out of interest, but not easily, only very seldom. Zeal is also harmful, for it induces one to make jumps that paralyse the powers. Stride forward calmly, word by word and sentence by sentence, not reading and not learning, but trying to absorb everything I gave you in pictures just as in life. Dig yourselves into all of the depths of my words, and then, indeed only then, will you be able to get a faint idea that you hold the Word of Life in your hands, the Word which lives Itself, which was not composed by a human spirit, of anything that was learned or thought out.

Only when you thus force yourselves to life in God's Law of harmonious Movement can the Word come to life within you, enabling you to ascend into the Luminous Heights which are your real home. But before that can happen you must shatter all the walls around you which, during thousands of years, your spiritual indolence permitted to become so very rigid, which constrict the wings of your spirit and keep them down in such a manner that the rigid dead dogma satisfies you, indeed even seems great to you; with which dogma you today seek to serve *that* God Who Himself is the *Life* with an empty form *only!*—

Nevertheless I have also finally explained to you in descriptions that which you call the last things, but which in reality are the *first*, so that in the whole existence there no longer remains any question for you to ask. I gave it to you as a *reward*; for in order to recognize the descriptions you must have taken the *trouble beforehand* to absorb the entire Message word by word, making it live within you! Whoever neglects to do this work will never be able to understand me, even if he thinks he does.

Therefore avoid anything erratic, but fathom each of my words from the beginning, and sentence by sentence. No person is able to exhaust the value of the Message here on earth, for it is intended for all parts of the World. Do not pick out certain passages of the Message at random. It is *one whole*, indivisible, like God's Laws of this Creation. No human spirit can alter or

---

distort anything without being harmed in the process. Nor can you introduce anything into it from outside either; you cannot insert anything alien which is more pleasant to you into individual passages, no matter whether it originates from a known teaching or comes from yourselves.

You must leave my Message unchanged from the first to the last word if it is to benefit you. You must first experience it *within yourselves* so as to form your outward life in accordance with it! If you do this you will proceed in the right way, and Luminous Heights will open themselves before your spirit in order to permit you to pass through to the highest realm of joyful activity of the blessed human spirits, which you call Paradise. There you will obtain a faint idea of the Pure Spiritual, and will perceive the Power of the Divine as reward which I have described to you. But then you will no longer desire to ask any questions, for in your happiness you are without a wish! Then the intellect will no longer torment you, because you experience everything.

---



## Contents.

1. The Holy Word.....	1
2. In the land of twilight.....	10
3. Resurrection Morn!.....	17
4. Ponderers.....	22
5. Voluntary martyrs, religious fanatics.....	27
6. Servants of God.....	30
7. The instinct of animals.....	34
8. The kiss of friendship.....	36
9. The woman of subsequent Creation.....	40
10. The distorted tool.....	44
11. All that is dead in Creation shall be awakened, so that it may pass Judgment upon itself!.....	57
12. The Child.....	59
13. Woman and her vocation.....	67
14. The Kingdom of the Millennium.....	78
15. The necessary balance.....	84
16. Jesus and Imanuel.....	89
17. Christmas!.....	94
18. Omnipresence!.....	102
19. Christ said...!.....	106
20. Submissiveness.....	118
21. Ethereal briars.....	125
22. Indolence of the spirit.....	136
23. "Motion" – A law of Creation.....	142
24. The physical body.....	152
25. Temperament.....	161
26. Behold, man, how you should wander through this Creation so that threads of fate will not hinder but further your ascent!.....	168
27. The Star of Bethlehem.....	177

28. A New Law.....	183
29. Class consciousness, social order.....	191
30. Duty and loyalty.....	203
31. Strive for conviction!.....	208
32. The beauty of the peoples.....	213
33. Man, how do you <i>stand</i> !.....	218
34. It is fulfilled!.....	228
35. Let Easter arise within you, man!.....	232
36. At the boundary of gross matter.....	243
37. Earthman before his God.....	252
38. The recognition of God.....	257
39. Substantiality.....	271
40. He, who for the sake of another, does not wish to know my Word, him I will not know in the hour of his need!.....	280
41. The little elemental beings.....	288
42. In the gross material workshop of the elemental beings.....	298
43. A soul wanders.....	309
44. Woman and man.....	322
45. Distorted souls.....	337
46. Man's spirit guide.....	349
47. Threads of light above you.....	363
48. Sounds of Christmas swing admonishingly through the universe.....	375
49. The Primordial Queen.....	386
50. The cycle of radiation.....	397
51. Shun the Pharisees!.....	412
52. Possessed.....	421
53. Ask, and it shall be given unto you!.....	433
54. Thanks.....	442
55. Disappointments.....	453

56. And if humanity asks.....	462
57. Let there be Light! .....	471
58. I send you!.....	485
59. Easter 1934.....	496
60. Unsubstantiate.....	502
61. How the Message should be absorbed. ....	504









